A PROGRESSIVE COURSE IN LATIN

A BOOK FOR THE SECOND YEAR

STEBBINS AND TONSOR

A. AND A. SHULGIN
1483 SHULGIN ROAD
LAFAYETTE, CA 94549

DELPHI AND THE HEIGHTS OF PARNASSUS

A PROGRESSIVE COURSE IN LATIN

A BOOK FOR THE SECOND YEAR

BY

CHARLES M. STEBBINS, A.M.

TEACHER OF ENGLISH AND LATIN IN ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

AND

CHARLES A. TONSOR, JR., PH.D.

CHAIRMAN OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

1427 UNION STREET

STEBBINS AND COMPANY

BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

Copyright, 1928,
BY CHARLES M. STEBBINS

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

THIS second year book in the *Progressive Course in Latin* series contains several outstanding features of vast importance to both teachers and pupils, features that will facilitate both the preparation of lessons and the conduct of the recitation.

Unifying the Work. — First of all, the pupil's work is unified and is all brought together in such a way that his time is not wasted in searching in several different portions of the book for the various kinds of information that he needs. This concentration of the work in translation, syntax, derivation, vocabulary, and prose composition, constitutes also a saving of a large amount of the teacher's time in preparation, and particularly conserves the time of the recitation period. The arrangement here presented will secure better results from pupils, if for no other reason than that it frees them from the unnecessary waste of their time, and centers their attention while engaged in the work of preparation.

The Subject Matter. — Another outstanding feature of the book is that it presents the substance of the various books of Caesar in a form abridged in such a way that it is in the words of Caesar, and presents a connected story of the major events in each of his campaigns. The abridgment is done so effectively that it destroys absolutely the use of the English translation on the part of the pupils. This constitutes a gain the value of which can hardly be estimated.

In accordance with the recommendation of the revised course of study of the state of New York, the account of the attempted migration of the Helvetians is adapted to meet the needs of pupils of the third half year, but the complete text of Book I is

given later in the book. The remaining selections required by the New York syllabus are given in full and contain only slight modifications in connection with unusual passages, and these are made only to bring the text into proper limits for lesson units.

Sight Reading. — The portions not required by the course of study in any school are particularly well adapted for reading at sight, since the lessons are accompanied by a vocabulary of unusual words and idioms, and are prepared for on the page preceding the text in each case by a vocabulary of required words from the list of the College Entrance Board and of the New York Board of Regents.

On the whole the authors believe that this will prove to be the most usable book on the market for second year work, and that its use will result not only in a better understanding of Latin but in a greater liking for it on the part of pupils.

THE AUTHORS

BROOKLYN, August 1, 1928.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
A Sketch of Julius Caesar	i
The Present Subjunctive — Purpose Clauses	1
The Past Progressive Subjunctive — Result Clauses	4
The Ablative Absolute	7
The Argonauts	10
The Perfect Subjunctive — Noun Clauses with the Subjunctive	26
The Past Perfect Subjunctive — the Indirect Question	29
The Argonauts (*Continued*)	32
Indirect Discourse	50
The Gerund and Gerundive	54
Temporal Clauses with **Cum**	57
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book I (abridged)	63
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book II (abridged)	119
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book III (abridged)	153
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book IV (abridged)	163
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book V (abridged)	195
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book VI (abridged)	217
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book VII (abridged)	245
Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book I (complete)	274
Latin Idioms Related to the Text	303
Summary of Forms	325
Syntactical Summary	346
Special Word List and Exercises	395
Vocabulary	1
Index	81

LIFE OF CAESAR

100–44 B.C.

Early Life. — Although the year of Caesar's birth is not known for a certainty, the date July 12, 100 B.C., is the one most commonly accepted. He was a member of the Julian gens, a patrician tribal group that traced its ancestry back to Aeneas, the legendary founder of the nation. "My aunt Julia," said Julius, in an address at her funeral, "on her mother's side traced her ancestry back to kings, on her father's side to the immortal gods. . . . Her mother's family are descended from Ancius Marcus (fourth king of Rome). From Venus the Julii are sprung, and to that clan our family belongs."

Caesar came into life at a period when there was an intensely bitter struggle at Rome between two political parties, the aristocratic party, called **Optimatēs,** and the democratic, or popular party, known as the **Populārēs.** During the boyhood of Caesar the political and military leader of the Optimates was Sulla, while Marius was the political and military leader of the Populares. Although Caesar's family was one of the most distinguished among the aristocratic clans of Rome, he himself was inclined from boyhood to favor the Populares. Little is known about the actual details of Caesar's boyhood, but he doubtless received the type of education customary for Roman boys of the period, which included Greek, public speaking, and philosophy.

Appointment as Flamen Diālis. — As a result of his strong inclination toward the popular party, Marius, its leader, brought about the election of Caesar as *flamen diālis*, priest of Jupiter, in 86 B.C., when he was only fourteen years old, if the year 100 B.C.

is the correct date for his birth. This office conferred upon its holder both great dignity and great privileges. Among the privileges was a seat in the senate, and the services of a lictor.

His Marriage. — Caesar married, when seventeen years of age, Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, who was a political ally and friend of Marius. This union naturally united Caesar more closely to the popular party, and at the same time aroused stronger enmity among the Optimates. Sulla, their head, came into the ascendency the following year. He was highly incensed at this defection on the part of an aristocrat to the popular cause in Rome, and, removing Caesar from the office of flamen, confiscated his property, and ordered him to divorce his wife. This Caesar refused to do, and was compelled to flee from the city, because Sulla planned his death. As flamen diālis Caesar's religious duties had brought him into official relations with the Vestal Virgins. They, evidently impressed by the character of the young man, united their influence with that of Caesar's friends and secured his recall. Sulla was reported to have said, as he granted the pardon, that this young man would sometime be the destruction of the aristocracy, as in him there was many a Marius.

First Military Service. — Caesar, however, after his recall, with Sulla in power, knew that he could expect no advancement at Rome and probably did not regard it as a safe place for himself. Therefore, in 81 B.C., he went into Asia Minor to do military service under Tiberius, the praetor. In the war against Mithridates he rendered distinguished service and received the oak wreath, or, **corōna cīvica,** an honor that could be bestowed only as a result of unusual bravery and that gave evidence of great and exceptional service. Soon afterward, in the year 78 B.C., he learned of the death of Sulla and returned to Rome.

Prosecution of Dolabella and Antonius. — Shortly after his return to the city an opportunity came which resulted in increasing Caesar's popularity with the people. Gnaeus Dolabella, praetor in Macedonia, was accused of extortion, and Caesar

conducted the prosecution. Although Dolabella was acquitted by a jury made up of members of his own party, Caesar's reputation as a friend of the people was greatly enhanced. In the following year Caesar prosecuted Gaius Antonius, also praetor, on a charge of extortion while governor of Greece, and with like results.

Caesar and the Pirates. — The fame that Caesar had won as a speaker in these legal cases induced him to continue his studies in oratory. Accordingly he set out for Rhodes to study under Apollonius Molo, an eminent teacher. On the way there the ship was captured by pirates and Caesar was held for a ransom amounting to about $56,000. He proved an interesting captive while waiting for the ransom to be brought. He joined in sports with his captors and evidently amused them by his conversation, in which he told them, as if in jest, that when he got his freedom he would return and crucify them all. To this promise he was true. With the dispatch that characterized his whole life, he collected a force, surprised the pirates, captured most of them, had them tried and executed.

Unofficial Military Service. — While at his studies in Rhodes he learned that affairs were progressing favorably for Mithridates. In this circumstance he gave evidence of that initiative so characteristic of him. Without a commission or authority, he raised a volunteer army and, taking the field, won a military success over the king's general, forcing him into retreat.

The Quaestorship in Spain. — During a period of nearly fifteen years, Caesar devoted himself to politics, filling one office after another. In 68 B.C. he was *quaestor*, an office which in Caesar's time corresponded to that of paymaster, and accompanied Vetus to Spain. He supervised the provincial stores and the accounts of the governor. This office was the first step in the course toward the consulship.

Caesar as Aedile. — In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected an aedile, of whom there were two. These officers had charge of public buildings, markets, and games. During the term of his office,

through extravagant expenditure of his private funds on public improvements and amusements, Caesar greatly increased his popularity with masses. He also greatly increased his personal indebtedness. He is said to have remarked that he needed two million sesterces in order to be worth nothing.

The Praetorship. — In 62 B.C. Caesar became praetor, an office which in his day was not an easy one to fill, owing to the bitterness that raged between the two stormy political parties. The functions of the praetor were those of judge, and in spite of the difficulties in his way, Caesar appears to have filled the office with ability and dignity.

During the following year he was propraetor in Farther Spain, where he served with distinction. Here he gained his first experience as governor, and had the opportunity to conduct a successful military campaign against several tribes bordering on the Atlantic. He re-organized the government of the province, putting it on a more efficient basis. During this period Caesar borrowed from Crassus, the wealthiest man in Rome, money enough to pay off his other creditors, who were becoming clamorous.

The First Triumvirate. — When he returned to Rome in 60 B.C. Caesar was decreed a thanksgiving by the senate, for his victorious campaign in his provinces. At the time Pompey was the popular idol because of his victories in the East. The latter was, however, deficient in the qualities essential to political leadership. As a result, he was unable to win from his own party, the Optimates, the honors that he coveted, or the recognition that he had earned. Caesar, who had already become associated with Crassus, the Roman financier, found conditions favorable for bringing about an alliance so powerful that it could control Rome. He won Pompey to his plan of uniting their influence with the purpose of obtaining desired ends at Rome. Crassus was brought into the arrangement, and this group of men, entirely unofficial, became, and remained for years, the dominant force in the affairs of the empire.

The Consulship. — In 59 B.C., as a result of the influence of the triumvirate, Caesar was elected consul, with little opposition. The aristocratic party devoted its energies to securing the election of Marcus Bibulus as his colleague. But the energy, efficiency, and power of Caesar so eclipsed Bibulus that the consuls were frequently spoken of as Julius and Caesar instead of Caesar and Bibulus. During his year as consul Caesar secured for Pompey the recognition that he deserved as a result of his services to the state, and brought about the passage of a law by which certain public lands, long held by members of the aristocratic party, were distributed to veterans. The passage of this decree added to the bitter hatred with which the Optimates regarded Caesar, but increased greatly his popularity among the common people.

The Proconsulship. — It was a custom among the Romans that a retiring consul should receive an appointment as governor of a province, under the title of proconsul, for one year. By an agreement of the triumvirate Caesar received the governorship of Gaul for five years, and began his service in 58 B.C. Later the period was extended to ten years.

The Civil War. — At the time of the formation of the triumvirate Caesar had given his daughter Julia to Pompey in marriage. During the years of Caesar's governorship in Gaul, the hatred of the Optimates had grown bitterer in proportion as his success and ability grew in Gaul. His daughter Julia, wife of Pompey, had died in 54 B.C., and Crassus had been killed in battle in 53 B.C. Pompey, who could brook no rival, now severed from all ties that bound him to Caesar, was won over to the opposition. During the nine years of his proconsulship that had passed Caesar had not been able to return to Rome, because the law forbade the governor of a province with an army under his command to enter the city during the period of his governorship. Finally, in 49 B.C., his enemies secured the passage of a decree to the effect that Caesar should disband his army, lay down his governorship, and return to Rome. Caesar foresaw

that it meant death to obey. He, however, agreed on condition that Pompey would disband the two legions he was holding outside the city walls. Pompey declined. With a single legion, Caesar crossed the Rubicon and marched toward Rome. He was hailed by the people everywhere. But among the aristocratic party at Rome there was terror. The two legions under Pompey's command had both served under Caesar in Gaul; and Caesar's soldiers were always devoted to him. Pompey knew that he could not rely on their obedience to his orders. He therefore sailed to Greece. The enemies of Caesar went with him.

When Caesar arrived at Rome he therefore found no opposition. It was rather a triumphal march. Within eleven days he had made all arrangements for the conduct of affairs in Italy, and he proceeded to Spain, where he defeated the Pompeian army there in 49 B.C. The army that he had dispatched to Africa under the command of Curio was destroyed by the Pompeians. The decisive struggle of the war took place near Pharsalus, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Caesar's army was not more than half the size of Pompey's. But it was composed of veteran legions, devoted to their commander, and they were skillfully directed. It was a hard fought battle, but in the end the tried legions under the tried commander drove the Pompeians before them as they had driven tribes of Gaul in many a contest. Pompey, foreseeing the result of the battle, fled long before the victory of Caesar was complete. He escaped to Egypt, where he was murdered.

After a campaign in Egypt, Caesar returned to Rome, but had been there only a few months, when he was compelled to take the field again by the Pompeians, who had collected a strong force in Africa under Scipio and Labienus, the once trusted officer of Caesar in Gaul. In April 46 B.C. he won a decisive victory over his enemies, and found himself master of the Roman dominions everywhere.

He returned to Rome and devoted himself to reforms in gov-

ernment, which he brought about in accordance with legal procedure. His plans were of such a nature as to have been of great benefit to mankind for ages had he been able to carry them out fully. But in 45 B.C. Pompey's sons collected an army in Spain, and Caesar set out to meet it. He totally defeated it at Munda.

Upon his return to Rome he was heaped with honors, and was made dictator for life by the senate. His use of absolute power was in marked contrast to the custom of his day. He showed such generosity toward his former enemies that the senate decreed that a temple should be erected and dedicated to "Caesar's Mercifulness."

After this, however, his usefulness to the world at a time when it was sorely needed, was not of long duration, for on March 15, 44 B.C., while entering the senate he was attacked by a band of conspirators and slain.

Any just estimate of Caesar's character must take into account the nature of the times in which he lived. When this is done, most of his faults shrink into minor details as compared with his excellencies. His courage, foresight, ability as a general or civil administrator, mercifulness, and devotion to the welfare of good government must always command the respect of mankind.

DEPARTURE OF THE ARGONAUTS

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Clauses of Purposes

1. The Subjunctive Mood. — The indicative mood records events and ideas as facts, the truth of which the narrator does not doubt. The subjunctive, on the contrary, is used to record events and ideas which the narrator does not positively know to be true, which are reported on the authority of some other person, or which the narrator regards as merely probable or possible.

2. Translating the Subjunctive. — The subjunctive has almost disappeared from the English language. Only a few uses remain in conditional clauses and noun clauses after verbs of wishing. It is therefore necessary to translate the subjunctive sometimes by the English indicative, sometimes by an infinitive, and sometimes by a verb phrase introduced by *may*, *might*, *should*, or *would*.

3. The Present Subjunctive. — To form the present subjunctive of the first conjugation drop the **-ō** of the first principal part and add **-ē** and the personal endings. For the other conjugations drop the **-ō** and add **-ā** and the personal endings. The **-ē** and **-ā** become short in the usual places.

vocem	**moneam**	**mittam**	**iaciam**	**audiam**
vocēs	**moneās**	**mittās**	**iaciās**	**audiās**
vocet	**moneat**	**mittat**	**iaciat**	**audiat**
vocēmus	**moneāmus**	**mittāmus**	**iaciāmus**	**audiāmus**
vocētis	**moneātis**	**mittātis**	**iaciātis**	**audiātis**
vocent	**moneant**	**mittant**	**iaciant**	**audiant**

To form the passive substitute the passive personal endings.

4. The Present Subjunctive of *Sum*. — The following is the present subjunctive of **sum,** with meanings that are sometimes used:

I am, may be, to be, **sim**	*we are, may be, to be,* **sīmus**
you are, may be, to be, **sīs**	*you are, may be, to be,* **sītis**
he is, may be, to be, **sit**	*they are, may be, to be,* **sint**

5. The Subjunctive in Clauses Expressing Purpose. — The plan or purpose of an act may be expressed by a relative pronoun or **ut,** *to, that, in order to, in order that,* or **nē,** *lest, that not,* and the subjunctive.

1. *He will send the boys to help,* **puerōs mittet quī iuvent**; literally, *he will send the boys who may help.*
2. *They come to help,* **veniunt ut iuvent**; literally, *they come that they may help.*
3. *He hurries lest he be late,* **properat nē tardus sit.**

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

6. All words in this vocabulary should be thoroughly learned:

pain, distress, **dolor, -ōris,** m.	*opinion, purpose,* **sententia, -ae,** f.
death, **mors, mortis,** f.	*appearance, sight,* **speciēs, -ēī,** f.
envoy, lieutenant, **lēgātus, -i,** m.	*no one, nobody,* **nēmō,** indecl.

retain, occupy, possess, hold, **obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus**
offer, present, furnish, **praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus**
snatch away, take from, rescue, **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus**
drive out, expel, dispel, **expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus**

EXERCISES

7. Write complete sentence answers to the following:

1. What is the speaker's mental attitude toward what is recorded in the indicative? 2. What is generally implied by the subjunctive? 3. How may the Latin subjunctive be

translated into English? 4. How is the present subjunctive of the first conjugation formed? 5. How is the present subjunctive of the remaining conjugations formed? 6. In what ways may purpose clauses be introduced? 7. Why is the subjunctive used to express purpose?

8. Translate the following into idiomatic English:

1. Amūlius frātrem expellit ut rēgnum obtineat. 2. Rōmulus manum conligit ut pāstōrēs et cīvēs dēfendat. 3. Patrēs servōs mittunt quī agrōs exerceant. 4. Multīcīvēs in fugam sē recipiunt nē ab hostibus capiantur. 5. Amīcī nocte puerum auferunt ut eum perīculō līberent. 6. Ducēs nūntiōs mittent quī pācem cōnfīrment. 7. Incolae nāvem aedificant quā in Graeciam nāvigent. 8. Nautae omnia parābunt ut māne solvant. 9. Hominēs vere agrōs arant ut autumnō frūctūs et frūmentum habeant.

9. Answer the following in Latin, using purpose clauses:

1. Cūr Rōmulus manum conligit?
2. Cūr dominus in agrōs servōs mittit?
3. Cūr in Italiam multī hominēs iter faciunt?
4. Cūr mūrī circum urbēs aedificantur?
5. Cūr hominēs nāvēs magnās faciunt?

10. In translating be sure that all infinitives expressing purpose are converted into purpose clauses:

1. The king presents an appearance of sorrow that his real joy may not be perceived. 2. We shall destroy the abode of the robbers that our flocks may be freed from danger. 3. We hurry to the fields to work. 4. The envoy comes to bring letters from the king. 5. Amulius will drive out his brother in order to possess the throne. 6. You ought to hurry in order to rescue the boy from great danger. 7. I shall send the boys to carry letters. 8. Hurry lest you be late. 9. The leader is sending men to take the town.

THE PAST PROGRESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Clauses of Result

11. Formation of the Past Progressive Subjunctive. — To form the past progressive subjunctive add the personal endings to the second principal part of any verb, the final **-e** being lengthened except before **-m, -r,** and **-t** final, and before **-nt,** whether final or not.

vocārem	**monērem**	**mitterem**	**iacerem**	**audīrem**	**essem**
vocārēs	**monērēs**	**mitterēs**	**iacerēs**	**audīrēs**	**essēs**
vocāret	**monēret**	**mitteret**	**iaceret**	**audīret**	**esset**
vocārēmus	**monērēmus**	**mitterēmus**	**iacerēmus**	**audīrēmus**	**essēmus**
vocārētis	**monērētis**	**mitterētis**	**iacerētis**	**audīrētis**	**essētis**
vocārent	**monērent**	**mitterent**	**iacerent**	**audīrent**	**essent**

To form the passive use the passive personal endings.

12. The Sequence of Tenses. — The word *sequence* from **sequor,** *follow,* as used in the term, sequence of tenses, refers to the agreement between the tense of the main verb and that of the verb in the dependent clause.

13. The Use of Tenses in Purpose Clauses. — Both the present and past progressive subjunctive denote incompleted action. If the main verb denotes present or future time, the verb in the purpose clause must be present.

1. *I hurry to see my friends,* **properō ut amīcōs meōs videam.**
2. *I shall send Quintus to help,* **Quīntum mittam quī iuvet.**
3. *I have called him to help,* **eum vocāvī ut iuvet.**

If the main verb denotes past time, the verb in the purpose clause must be in the past progressive subjunctive.

1. *He was hurrying to help the men,* **properābat ut virōs iuvāret.**
2. *He hurried to see them,* **properāvit ut eōs vidēret.**
3. *I had sent him to carry water,* **eum mīseram quī aquam portāret.**

14. The Subjunctive in Clauses Expressing Result. — The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used in dependent clauses to express the result of an action or a condition. It is translated by the indicative.

Such result the Romans regarded as merely probable.

1. *The king is so kind that all love him,* **rēx tam benīgnus est ut omnēs eum ament.**
2. *The danger was so great that they took the boy away,* **tantum erat perīculum ut puerum ēriperent.**
3. *The women sought peace so earnestly that they ended the battle,* **fēminae pācem sī ācriter petīvērunt ut proeliī fīnem facerent.**

The sequence of tenses is the same as in purpose clauses except that, if the result extends over to the time when the statement is made, the perfect tense is used.

The river was so deep that we have been unable to cross, **flumen erat tam altum ut trānsīre nōn potuerimus** (perfect subjunctive).

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

15. Memorize the following words:

so great, so much, **tantus, -a, -um**
how great, how much, **quantus, -a, -um**
so, so much, **tam,** adv.
force, strength, **vīs, vīs,** f.
such, so great, **tālis, tāle**
learn, know, find out, **intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus**
send out, let go, dispatch, **dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus**
feel, acquire, learn, **percipiō, percipere, percēpī, perceptus**
report, bring back word, **renūntiō, -āre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātus**

EXERCISES

16. Write answers to the following questions:

1. How is the past progressive of the subjunctive formed?
2. What change is made in the final vowel of the infinitive?
3. What tenses of the subjunctive denote incompleted action?

4. What is the rule for the sequence of tenses in purpose clauses? 5. How is the result of an action or condition expressed in Latin? 6. How can a purpose clause be distinguished from a result clause? 7. Why is the subjunctive used to express result?

17. Explain the kind of dependent clauses and translate:

1. Tullius erat tam benīgnus ut ab omnibus amārētur. 2. Cupiditās rēgis erat tanta ut frātrem suum expelleret. 3. Puerum esse mortuum renūntiant nē rēx rem vēram intellegat. 4. Rēx rēgnum tantā vī occupāverat ut magnopere verērētur. 5. Amīcum Delphōs mīsit quī ōrāculum cōnsulat. 6. Tantum erat perīculum ut rēx sacrificium facere cuperet. 7. Omnēs in partēs nūntiōs dīmittit quī diem conveniendī nūntient. 8. Tantus hominum numerus convēnit ut rēx esset laetissimus. 9. Puerī in silvīs tam diū mānsērunt ut parentēs servōs mitterent quī eōs vocārent.

18. Answer in Latin, using clauses of purpose or result:

1. Quam altum erat flūmen?
2. Cūr flūmen nōn trānsiistī?
3. Quālis erat cupiditās rēgis?
4. Cūr amīcum Delphōs mittit?
5. Quamdiū puerī in stagnō nātābant?

19. In translating convert infinitives that express purpose into clauses of purpose:

1. We are so short that we cannot see. 2. The chief was so fierce that all feared him. 3. So great was the king's joy that he declared a holiday. 4. The leader will send out messengers to name a day for assembling. 5. He seized the kingdom with so great force that he had many enemies. 6. We shall send envoys to bring back word concerning all these matters. 7. So great is the depth of the river that no one can cross without boats. 8. Romulus was so wise that all loved him. 9. He sent messengers to consult them.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

With the Present and Perfect Passive Participles

20. The Nominative Absolute in English. — A noun or a pronoun may be used with a participle to form a special construction which is called a *nominative absolute*. The name implies that it is without grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence, but in reality it is usually the equivalent of an adverbial clause.

21. The Ablative Absolute in Latin. — In Latin the absolute expression is used more frequently than in English, but is in the ablative case because it is regarded as having an adverbial relationship with the predicate as a whole.

1. *The ship having been completed* (*when the ship had been completed*), *they sailed for Greece*, **nāve perfectā, ad Graeciam nāvigāvērunt.**
2. *A fire having been made* (*as soon as a fire had been made*), *they prepared food*, **īgnī factō, cibum parāvērunt.**
3. *The walls having been built* (*after the walls are built*), *they will cultivate the fields*, **mūrīs structīs, agrōs colent.**

22. The Present Participle in Absolute Expressions. — The present participle is used with a noun or pronoun to form an ablative absolute. As the verb **sum** has no present participle, an ablative absolute may consist of a noun and an adjective or of two nouns, with *being* understood.

1. **Rōmulō regnante** literally means *Romulus reigning*, but is translated, *when Romulus is* (*was*) *reigning, since Romulus is* (*was*) *reigning, while Romulus*, etc.
2. **Rōmulō rēge,** *Romulus being king, when Romulus is* (*was*) *king, since Romulus is* (*was*) *king*, etc.
3. **Patre īnsciente,** literally means *the father not knowing*, but is translated, *without the father's knowledge.*

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

23. All words in special vocabularies are to be thoroughly mastered.

hill, **collis, -is,** m.
fear, alarm, **timor, -ōris,** m.
desire, **cupiditās, -ātis,** f.
advice, plan, purpose, **cōnsilium, -ī,** n.
short, brief, **brevis, -e**
equip, arm, incite, **armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus**
undertake, assume, undergo, **suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus**
send away, dismiss, lose, **āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus**

EXERCISES

24. Write complete sentence answers:

1. Of what does a nominative absolute consist? 2. Of what is the absolute expression usually the equivalent in meaning? 3. Of what does the ablative absolute consist? 4. What two Latin participles are used in the ablative absolute? 5. When is the participle wanting in the ablative absolute expression? 6. In what ways may **īgnī factō** be translated?

25. Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Difficultāte superātā, cīvēs erant laetī. 2. Duce spectante, omnēs dīligenter labōrābant. 3. Negōtiō susceptō, virī excēdere parāvērunt. 4. Rōmulō dūcente, et cīvēs et mīlitēs erant satisfactī. 5. Nāve armātā, dux et sociī solvērunt. 6. Monte ascēnsō, distantiam maximam vidēre poterāmus. 7. Hīs rēbus factīs, diem conveniendī dīxit. 8. Ratiōne captā, Rōmulus pāstōrēs convocāvit.

26. Use ablative absolute expressions in answering:

1. Quandō Titus solvit?
2. Quandō domum vēnit?
3. Quandō puerī lūsērunt?
4. Quandō est magister benīgnus?
5. Quandō īgnem fēcistī?
6. Quandō ad vīcum iistī?
7. Quandō cīvēs urbis erant laetī?
8. Quandō prandēmus?

27. Translate into Latin, being careful to translate dependent clauses by the ablative absolute:

1. The men having been warned, the messenger departed. 2. When the teacher is looking on the boys are good. 3. As soon as the ships have been equipped we shall sail for Italy. 4. The senators having been consulted, the king sent messengers to announce the matter to the citizens. 5. When Marcus was king, the inhabitants were brave. 6. A day for assembling having been named, the king sent out envoys to inform the inhabitants. 7. As soon as we had ascended the hill we could see the town. 8. The hill was so very high that we arrived at the top with great difficulty.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

28. The Special Vocabulary from this point on is for the lesson on the page that follows it.*

the one, the other, **alter, -era, -erum**
learn, find out, know, **cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus**
take away, remove, carry off, **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus**
lead in, induce, influence, **indūcō, -ere, indūxī, inductus**
die, **morior, morī, mortuus sum**
olden, ancient, **antīquus, -a, -um**
swiftly, quickly, **celeriter**, adv.

* NOTE. — Special Vocabularies consist of words contained in the required list of the College Entrance Board and also in the required list of the New York State Board of Regents for the first and second years. They should be thoroughly mastered. Some of the more difficult words appear twice.

Iāsōn Magnō ē Perīculō Ēripitur

29. Erant antīquissimīs temporibus in Thessāliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Ex hīs Aesōn rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam, ut ipse timōre līberārētur, in animō Iāsonem, fīlium Aesonis, interficere habēbat.

30. Cōnsiliō ēius tamen cognitō, amīcī Aesonis noctū ex urbe Iāsonem abstulērunt, ut puerum ex tantō perīculō ēriperent. Diē posterō rēgī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, hāc rē audītā, magnum gaudium percipiēbat; at simulāns sē dolōre magnō effectum esse causam mortis puerī cognōscere cupīvit. Illī tamen eī fabulam fictam dē puerō nārrāvērunt, nē rem vēram intellegeret.

Peliās Magnum Sacrificium Nūntiat

31. Post tempus breve Peliās timōre magnō adficī coepit, et, nē rēgnum suum tantā vī occupātum āmitteret, amīcum Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs properāvit, et causam veniendī nūntiāvit. Ōrāculum respondit nūllum esse eō tempore perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam dē virō gerente ūnum calceum quī ad rēgiam paucīs annīs ventūrus erat.

Thessālia* (1), **-ae,** f., *Thessaly*, a country of northeastern Greece.
Aesōn (2), **-onis,** m., *Aeson.*
Peliās (2), **-ae,** m., *Pelias.*
Iāsōn (6), **-onis,** m., *Jason*, a fabulous hero of Greece.
rem vēram (13), *the truth.*
Delphī (16), **-ōrum,** m. plu., a town in Greece, noted for the oracle of Apollo.
calceus (19), **-ī,** m., *shoe.*
annīs (20), explain the abl.

* Note. — The figures refer to lines in the text.

32. The Time When or Within Which. — The time when or within which an action takes place is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

1. *At night we often make a fire,* **nocte saepe īgnem facimus.**
2. *Next month I shall go to Rome,* **mēnse proximō Romam ībō.**
3. *Within a few days he will come,* **paucīs diēbus veniet.**

COMPOSITION

33. Translate into Latin:

Within a few years Pelias drives out his brother and intends to kill his son, in order to free himself from fear. Friends, however, learn his plan, and rescue the boy by night. In a few days it is announced to the king that the boy is dead. Pelias pretends to be afflicted with great grief on account of the boy's death.

QUESTIONNAIRE

34. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quandō erant duo frātrēs?
2. Uter rēgnum obtinuerat?
3. Uter alterum expulit?
4. Quid etiam in animō facere habēbat?
5. Cūr puerum interficere cupiēbat?
6. Quid amīcī puerī fēcērunt?
7. Quandō puer ēreptus est?
8. Quid rēgī nūntiātum est?
9. Ā quibus id nūntiātum est?
10. Quid Peliās percēpit?
11. Quid Peliās simulāvit?
12. Quid amīcī Aesonis dē puerō nūntiāvērunt?
13. Quis timōre adfectus est?
14. Quō rēx amīcum mīsit?

35. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

offering, **sacrificium, -ī,** n.
plan, account, **ratiō, -ōnis,** f.
willing, gladly, **libenter,** adv.
immediately, at once, **statim,** adv.
commit, intrust, begin, **committō, -ere, commīsī, commissus**
set up, station, decide, **cōnstituō, -ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus**
perish, be killed, **pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus**

Iāsōn Alterum Calceum Gerēns ad Rēgiam Venit

36. Post paucōs annōs Peliās sacrificium magnum facere cupiēbat; nūntiīs igitur in omnēs partēs dīmissīs, certam diem conveniendī cōnstituit. Diē cōnstitūtā ex agrīs undique magnus hominum numerus convēnit. Apud hōs fuit Iāsōn, quī in regiōne remōtā ā puerō apud centaurum habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit, alterum calceum in flūmine trānseundō āmīsit.

37. Flūmen eō tempore tam celeriter currēbat ut Iāsōn nūllō modō calceum āmissum recipere posset. Is igitur alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit Peliae, quī, Iāsone vīsō, subitō timōre adfectus est; hunc enim intellēxit esse hominem ōrāculō dēmōnstrātum. Statim, ratiōne captā, Iāsonī negōtium dare cōnstituit ut eum ex rēgnō mitteret.

Peliās Iāsonī Negōtium Dat

38. Erat rēx nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus aureum, quod Phrixus ōlim ibi relīquerat. Peliās igitur cōnstituit Iāsonem mittere, quī vellere potīrētur; perīculum enim tantum erat ut optāret illum in itinere peritūrum esse. Iāsone vocātō, rēx eum certiōrem dē cupiditāte suā velleris aureī obtinendī fēcit. Iāson rem esse difficillimum bene intellegēbat; erat tamen tam fortis ut negōtium libenter susciperet.

conveniendī (3), *of assembling;* translate, **for assembling.**

ā puerō (5), *from boyhood.*

dum (6), conj., *while,* followed by the historical present.

enim (11), conj., *for;* it never stands first in its clause.

Aeētēs (15), **-ae** (acc. **-ēn**), m., *Aeetes,* king of Colchis.

Colchis (15), **-idis** (acc. **-ida**), *Colchis,* a country east from the Black Sea.

vellus (16), **-eris,** n., *fleece.*

aureus (16), **-a, -um,** *golden.*

39. The Instrument or Means of Action. — The instrument or means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

1. *Pelias was afflicted with fear,* **Peliās timōre adfectus est.**
2. *Jason was the man pointed out by the oracle,* **Iāsōn erat homō ōrāculō dēmōnstrātus.**

COMPOSITION

40. Study the text carefully before translating:

Desiring to make a sacrifice, the king dispatched messengers in all directions to announce the day for assembling. Among those who came together was Jason. In crossing a river he had lost one shoe. On account of his bare foot, the king knows that he is the man pointed out by the oracle.

QUESTIONNAIRE

41. Answer with complete sentences in Latin:

1. Quid Peliās post paucōs annōs facere cupiēbat?
2. Quōs dīmīsit?
3. Quō nūntiōs dīmīsit?
4. Cūr nūntiōs dīmīsit?
5. Quot hominēs convenērunt?
6. Quandō iī convenērunt?
7. Quis cum reliquīs vēnit?
8. Quō modō rēx adfectus est?
9. Quālem ratiōnem rēx cēpit?
10. Ubi Aeētēs habitābat?
11. Quid eī commissum erat?
12. Quis id ibi relīquerat?
13. Quō Peliās Iāsonem mīsit?
14. Quō cōnsiliō eum mīsit?
15. Quid Peliās optābat?
16. Quid Iāsōn intellegēbat?
17. Quid libenter suscēpit?

42. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

a certain, certain, **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**
use, experience, **ūsus, -ūs,** m.
about, nearly, **circiter,** adv.
become or *be accustomed,* **cōnsuēscō, -ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus**
desist from, cease, **dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus**
carry through, endure, **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus**

Iāsōn Sibi Sociōs Adiungere Petit

43. Sōlus tamen Iāsōn proficīscī nōluit, quod Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab rēgnō Peliae aberat. Omnēs in partēs igitur dīmīsit nūntiōs, quī itineris causam docērent et diem certam conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā ad rēs parandās quae ad nāvem aedificandam pertinent animum advertit, et omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad nāvēs armandās comportārī iussit. Paucīs diēbus hae rēs omnēs parātae erant. Intereā Iāsōn animum advertit ad rem petendī hominem quī nāvem aedificāret.

Iāsōn Argō Negōtium Nāvem Aedificandī Dat

44. Erat eōdem tempore in Thessāliā quīdam Argus, quī tantam rērum nauticārum scientiam habēbat, ut Iāsōn eī negōtium nāvem aedificandī daret. Omnibus rēbus comparātīs, Argus, quae operī praeerat, nōn sōlum diē labōrābat, sed etiam noctū labōre nōn dēsistēbat. Tantā cum dīligentiā vērō opus aedificandī mātūrāvit ut nāvis circiter decem diēbus esset perfecta. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam eae quibus nostrō in marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus. Ut ea vim tempestātum perferret, tōta ē rōbore facta est. Iāsōn eam diem conveniendī ex partibus omnibus, quam cōnstituerat cum nūntiīs, expectāvit.

tamen (1), *however;* it never stands first in its clause.

nōlō (1), **nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling, not to wish.*

igitur (3), *therefore, then;* it never stands first in its clause.

Argus (10), **-ī,** m., *Argus.*

praesum (13) is used with the dative of indirect object.

ad (16), *for.*

paulō (17), abl. of degree of difference.

ūtor (18), **ūtī, ūsus sum,** *use;* it takes the abl.

45. The Dative of Purpose or Use. — The purpose or use of a thing is often expressed by the dative. It may be accompanied by another dative denoting the person benefited or injured, called the dative of reference.

1. *They were a protection to the camp,* **erant castrīs praesidiō.**
2. *He provided everything useful (for a use) in equipping a ship,* **omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad nāvēs armandās comparāvit.**

COMPOSITION

46. For grammatical constructions study the text:

Jason wishes friends who will be a protection to him. He therefore sends out messengers to explain the cause of the trip. He gives the job of building the ship to Argus, who works with so great diligence that the ship is finished within ten days. This being completed, Jason awaits the appointed day.

QUESTIONNAIRE

47. Answer with complete sentences in Latin:

1. Cūr Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī nōluit?
2. Quid Iāsōn fēcit?
3. Cūr nūntiōs dīmīsit?
4. Quid intereā is iussit.
5. Quid comportārī iussit?
6. Ubi Argus habitābat?
7. Quālis erat Argus?
8. Quis operī praeerat?
9. Quō modō is labōrāvit?
10. Cūr tantā cum dīligentiā labōrāvit?
11. Quō cōnsiliō opus aedificandī mātūrāvit?
12. Quī nāvibus angustiōribus ūtī cōnsuēverant?

48. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

speed, swiftness, **celeritās, -ātis,** f.
district, **regiō, -ōnis,** f.
reserve, assistance, **subsidium, -i,** n.
known, noted, **nōtus, -a, -um**
delay, **commoror, commorārī, commorātus sum**
select, choose, **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**
undergo, suffer, **subeō, subīre, subiī, subitus**

Multī et Clārissimī Virī Conveniunt

49. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, ea diēs vēnit quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae mōverat, undique ad locum cōnstitūtum conveniēbant. Magnopere Iāsōn gāvīsus est, ubi eam multitūdinem virōrum fortium vīdit; in hōc numerō enim ferunt Herculem fuisse et Orpheum, citharoedum clārissimum, et Thēseum et Castorem et multōs aliōs, quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit, et sociōs sibi adiūnxit.

Iāsōn et Sociī cum Gaudiō Solvunt

50. Satisfactus dē hīs rēbus omnibus Iāsōn tamen paucōs diēs commorātus est, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret. Quibus factīs Argō (ita enim in honōrem Argī, quī tantā cum celeritāte eam aedificāverat, Iāsōn nāvem novam et pulchram appellāverat) dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus magnō cum clāmōre omnium solvit. Gāvīsus est maximē Peliās, quī crēdēbat sē nunc perīculō vacuum esse. Arbitrātus est perīcula subeunda marī terrāque esse tanta, ut Iāsōn numquam in Thessāliam revenīret. Ad rēgiam igitur contentus cum amīcīs revertit.

novitās (3), **-ātis,** f., *novelty.*
Herculēs (6), **-is,** m., mythical Greek hero, son of Jupiter.
Orpheus (6), **-ī,** a Thracian bard whose music could move rocks and trees, and charm wild beasts.
citharoedus (7), **-ī,** *harpist.*
Thēseus (7), **-ī,** m., *Theseus,* a mythical king of Athens.
Castor (7), **-oris,** m., *Castor.*
Argō (14), **Argūs** (acc. **Argō**), f., *Argo,* the ship of Jason.
revenīret (21), explain the mode.

51. Indirect Statement. — In reporting a thought or statement we frequently do not quote the original words, but instead give the substance of them in a statement introduced by *that*. In Latin this indirect statement is expressed by an infinitive with a subject in the accusative.

Direct statement: They said, "*The boy is dead.*"
Indirect statement: They said *that the boy was dead*, **dīxērunt puerum mortuum esse.**

COMPOSITION

52. In translating be careful about indirect statements:

1. He says that messengers have been sent out. 2. It was said that many were moved by the hope of glory. 3. Jason saw that a great number of the best known men had come together. 4. He thought that these men were ready to undergo dangers. 5. Pelias thought that the danger was so great that Jason would never return.

QUESTIONNAIRE

53. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quae diēs vēnit?
2. Per quōs ea diēs ēdicta erat?
3. Quā rē multī mōtī sunt?
4. Quālēs virī convēnērunt?
5. Quot ex hīs Iāsōn dēlēgit?
6. Quamdiū Iāsōn commorātus est?
7. Cūr commorātus est?
8. Quis Argō dēdūxit?
9. Cūr Peliās gāvīsus est?
10. Quid Peliās crēdidit?

54. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

sun, **sōl, sōlis,** m.
touch, reach, **attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus**
step forward, go forward, advance, **prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum**
feel, realize, **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**
throw down, hurl down, **dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus**
again, **rūrsus,** adv.

Argonautae Īnsulam Cysicum Attingunt

55. Nōn multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in nāvī vehēbantur quam Argus aedificāverat) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt. Ibi ē nāvī ēgressī, ut urbem spectārent, ab rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt, quī eōs ad rēgiam condūxit. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt. Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur. Argonautae in terram prōgredī cōnstituērunt, ut tempestātem idōneam exspectārent.

Incolae Argonautās esse Hostēs Arbitrantur

56. Incolae īnsulae tamen Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, quod nox erat obscūra, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Argonautae autem eōs quī oppugnābant nūllō modō agnōscere poterant. Ācriter igitur in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen incolae Cyzicī prīmā lūce sē errāre sēnsērunt, et arma abiēcērunt, et Argonautās hospitiō excēpērunt. Et Argonautae et incolae ob mortem rēgis magnō dolōre affectī sunt. Hāc in pūgnā paucī Iāsonis sociī vulnerātī sunt; hīs in nāvem portātīs Iāsōn tempestātem idōneam exspectābat.

vehō (2), **-ere, vexī, vectus,** *bear, carry;* in pass., *ride, sail.*

Cyzicus (3), **-ī,** f., a city in Asia Minor.

hospitium (4), **-ī,** n., *hospitality;* **hospitiō** without **cum** used as abl. of manner.

sōlis occāsus (6), **-ūs,** m., *sunset, west.*

coörior (8), **coörīrī, coörtus,** *arise, spring up.*

agnōscō (15), **-ere, agnōvī, agnitus,** *recognize.*

lūce (18), explain the abl.

57. Partitive Genitive. — Words denoting a part of an object or quantity are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or quantity.

1. *They had proceeded two thousand of paces,* **duo mīlia passuum prōgressī erant.**
2. *Three fourths of the men had disembarked,* **trēs partēs virōrum ē nāve ēgressī erant.**

COMPOSITION

58. Give the syntax of dependent clauses and translate:

1. It is reported that they reached the island Cyzicus. 2. A large part of the men disembarked to see the city. 3. It is said that they were hospitably received by the king of that district. 4. Afterward Jason thought they ought to set sail again. 5. The inhabitants thought they were hostile.

QUESTIONNAIRE

59. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quam īnsulam attigērunt?
2. Quid ibi fēcērunt?
3. Cūr ē nāvī ēgressī sunt?
4. Quō modō exceptī sunt?
5. Quō rēx eōs condūxit?
6. Quandō rūrsus solvērunt?
7. Quid coörtum est?
8. Quō dēiectī sunt?
9. Quid incolae arbitrātī sunt?
10. Quō modō pūgnātum est?
11. Quis cum aliīs dēcucurrit?
12. Cūr Argonautae magnō cum dolōre affectī sunt?

60. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fail, revolt, rebel, **dēficio, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus**
seek, inquire, **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus**
start, set out, **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum**
follow, **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
follow closely, overtake, **cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum**
lift up, raise, remove, destroy, **tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**

Argonautae Cōpiam Aquae Quaerunt

61. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus est (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs Argonautae exspectāvērunt, ut novam aquae cōpiam obtinērent; ā nautīs enim Iāsōn cognōverat aquam quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere. Quam ob rem Iāsōn mīsit quōsdam ex Argonautīs quī fontem quaererent.

Hylās ab Nymphīs Rapitur

62. Sociī quī ab Iāsone missī sunt, in terram ēgressī, quaesītum aquam profectī sunt. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae fontem colēbant, iuvenī vīsō, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret. Ille tamen negāvit sē hoc factūrum esse. Nymphae fōrmā praestantissimā igitur inductae puerum vī abstulērunt. Comitēs ēius, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre adfectī diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs et Polyphēmus, quī vestīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

postrīdiē (1), adv., *the next day;* **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** *the next day after that.*

ancorās sustulit (3), idiomatic English is, *he weighed anchor.*

Mȳsia (4), **-ae,** f., a country of Asia Minor.

Hylās (11), **-ae,** m., *Hylas.*

praestāns (11), **-antis,** adj., *conspicuous, remarkable.*

nympha (12), **-ae,** f., *nymph,* a guardian spirit of springs, streams, etc.

Polyphēmus (18), **-ī,** m., Polyphemus.

63. The Future Active Infinitive. — The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle and **esse.** The participle agrees with the subject of the infinitive.

vocātūrus esse, *to be going to call* **missūrus esse,** *to be going to send*
tentūrus esse, *to be going to hold* **audītūrus esse,** *to be going to hear*

In indirect statement the future infinitive is translated by *shall* or *will* after a present or future tense, and *should* or *would* after a past tense.

1. *He says that he will come,* **dīcit sē ventūrum esse.**
2. *He said that he would come,* **dīxit sē ventūrum esse.**

64. COMPOSITION

1. Jason thought the weather would be suitable the next day. 2. Jason says that they will proceed. 3. They waited a few hours to obtain a new supply of water. 4. The nymphs will try to persuade Hylas to stay with them. 5. Hylas says that he will not do this. 6. Jason said that he would not wait longer for Hylas.

QUESTIONNAIRE

65. Answer in complete sentences:

1. Quid tempestātem cōnsecūtum est?
2. Quid Iāsōn fēcit?
3. Quamdiū ante noctem Argō prōgressa est?
4. Quam terram attigit?
5. Cūr ibi exspectāvērunt?
6. Quamdiū exspectāvērunt?
7. Quid dēficiēbat?
8. Quōs Iāsōn dīmīsit?
9. Cūr eōs dīmīsit?
10. Quid Hylās quaesīvit?
11. Quid Nymphae colēbant?
12. Quid nymphae cōnātae sunt?
13. Quid Hylās sē factūrum esse negāvit?
14. Quā rē nymphae inductae sunt?
15. Quid nymphae fēcērunt?
16. Quī Hylam cōnsecūtī sunt?
17. Quid tandem cognōvērunt?

Argonautae in Thrāciā in Terram Ēgrediuntur

66. Inde Argonautae ad oppidum Salmydēssum in Thrāciā cursum tenuērunt. Ibi ab incolīs certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc quōdam suppliciō adficī, quod olim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Mōnstra quaedam, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant, ā Iove missa erant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, quotiēns ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum adpositum statim auferēbant.

Argonautae Harpȳiās Expellunt

67. Phīneus simul atque audīvit eōs in fīnēs suōs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eīs Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō rēs suae essent et praemiīs magnīs prōmissīs, Argonautīs negōtium dedit ut remedium reperīrent. Hoc illī libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt. Cēnā adpositā, Harpȳiae intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs eās petiērunt; hoc tamen vīdērunt nihil prōdesse. Tum duo ālīs īnstrūctī dēsuper impetum fēcērunt. Harpȳiae reī novitāte perterritae statim fūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

Salmydēssus (1), **-ī,** m., a town in Thrace.
Thrācia (1), **-ae,** *Thrace,* a country north of Greece.
Phīneus (3), **-ī,** m., *Phineus.*
quotiēns (7), rel. adv., *as often as.*
accumbō (8), **-ere, accubuī, accubitus,** *recline* (at table).
adpōnō (8), **-ere, adposuī, adpositus,** *serve* (food).
intrō (19), **-āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *enter.*
prōdesse (21), from **prōsum**

68. Noun Clauses after *Nōn Dubitō*, etc. — Negative statements of doubt are followed by **quīn**, *that*, and the subjective, forming noun clauses.

1. *I do not doubt that he will come*, **nōn dubitō quīn veniat.**
2. *There is no doubt that they were brave*, **nōn dubium est quīn fortēs essent.**

COMPOSITION

69. Give the syntax of dependent clauses and translate:

1. There was no doubt that Phineus was in great danger. 2. He did not doubt that the Argonauts would bring him relief. 3. Jason did not know what sort of creatures Harpies were. 4. The king told Jason how (in what manner) the Harpies carried off the food. 5. The leader of the Argonauts did not doubt that he could frighten the Harpies.

QUESTIONNAIRE

70. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quō cursum tenuērunt?
2. Quis ibi erat rēx?
3. Ā quibus Argonautae certiōrēs factī sunt?
4. Quid etiam Argonautae repperērunt.
5. Cūr Phīneus suppliciō adfectus est?
6. Cūr is gāvīsus est?
7. Quid Phīneus sciēbat?
8. Quid nōn dubitābat?
9. Quem ad nāvem mīsit?
10. Cūr nūntium mīsit?
11. Quid eīs dēmōnstrāvit?
12. Quod negōtium rēx Argonautīs dedit?

71. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

kindness, **beneficium, -ī**, n.
influence, favor, thanks, **grātia, -ae**, f.
wind, **ventus, -ī**, m.
safety, **salūs, -ūtis**, f.
sea, **mare, maris**, n.
run together, rush, **concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursūrus**
struggle, hasten, **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentūrus**

Phīneus Iāsonem dē Symplēgadibus Docet

72. Hōc factō, Phīneus, magnopere gāvīsus est, quod tantō perīculō līberātus est, et, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritās grātiās referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Iove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant, et sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant.

Argō per Symplēgadēs Fēlīciter Perducta Est

73. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō prōvectus mox ad Symplēgadēs adpropinquāvit: tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit, et priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā; tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt. Hōc vīsō Argonautae nōn dubitābant quīn per spatium medium nāvem perdūcere et eōdem tempore rūpēs ēvītāre possent; et, intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; sciēbant enim nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

autem (4), *now*, introductory adverb.
ingentī magnitūdine (5), desc. abl.; translate like a gen.
nē quis (6), *that no one*.
quid faciendum esset (9), *what had to be done*.
sublātis (10), from **tollō**.
esset (10), for the use of the subjunctive see § 89.
prōvectus (11), from **prōvehō**.
rēctā viā (13), abl. of means, translate *directly*.
cōnflīxērunt (14), from **conflīgō**.

74. Noun Clauses in Apposition. — A noun clause with **ut** and a subjunctive may be used in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

1. *Pelias employs Jason to get possession of the golden fleece,* **Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dat ut vellere potiātur;** literally, *he gives Jason the job that he etc.*
2. *He gives him this task with the intention that he shall never return,* **hoc negōtium eī dat hōc cōnsiliō, ut numquam reveniat.**

COMPOSITION

75. Determine the type of clause before translating:

1. Jove places the rocks there with the design that no one shall go to Colchis. 2. Pelias had employed Jason to bring back (**refero**) the golden fleece. 3. Jupiter caused (**facio**) the rocks to float (that the rocks etc.). 4. The Argonauts do not doubt that they will pass through unharmed. 5. Phineas employs Jason to rescue himself from danger.

QUESTIONNAIRE

76. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid rēx Iāsonem docuit?
2. Cūr id docuit?
3. Quālēs erant rūpēs?
4. Quis rūpēs posuerat?
5. Ubi rūpēs nātābant?
6. Quō cōnsiliō hae rūpēs positae erant?
7. Quō modō prōvectus est?
8. Quō mox adpropinquāvit?
9. Ubi Iāsōn stetit?
10. Quid Iāsōn ēmīsit?
11. Quid columba āmīsit?
12. Quid Iāsōn, hōc vīsō, nōn dubitābat?

77. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

condition, terms, **condiciō, -ōnis,** f. *end, territory,* **fīnis, fīnis,** m.
bring together, **cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; sē cōnferre,** *hurry*
put down, put aside, abandon, **dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus**
put before, propose, **prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus**
hand over, **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus**

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The Subjunctive in Noun Clauses

78. Formation of the Perfect Subjunctive. — The active voice of the perfect subjunctive is formed from the third principal part. The tense sign **-eri** and the personal endings are added to the perfect stem. Except in the first person singular it is like the future perfect indicative.

The passive voice of the perfect subjunctive is formed by using the fourth principal part with the present subjunctive of **sum.**

Singular

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vocāverim	**vocātus sim**	**monuerim**	**monitus sim**
vocāveris	**vocātus sīs**	**monueris**	**monitus sīs**
vocāverit	**vocātus sit**	**monuerit**	**monitus sit**

Plural

vocāverimus	**vocātī sīmus**	**monuerimus**	**monitī sīmus**
vocāveritis	**vocātī sītis**	**monueritis**	**monitī sītis**
vocāverint	**vocātī sint**	**monuerint**	**monitī sint**

79. The Subjunctive in Noun Clauses. — Most verbs that imply an imperative as the original form of the expression take an object clause in the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē.**

1. *He asks that the letters be sent,* **rogat ut epistulae mittantur.**
2. *I will advise them not to remain,* **monēbō nē maneant.**
3. *He commanded the boys to close the gates,* **puerīs imperāvit ut portās clauderent.**

80. The Noun Clause. — Both in English and Latin a noun clause is a clause that performs the function of a noun.

It may be used as subject, object, or appositive. Only subject and object clauses are considered in this lesson.

A noun clause expressing result may be used with **ut** or **ut nōn** in the following cases:

1. As object of verbs of doing, like **efficiō.**
   He causes the boys to prepare their lessons, **efficit ut puerī pēnsa parent.**
2. As subject of an impersonal verb, like **accidit, ēvenit, sequitur.**
   It happened that Romulus was away, **accidit ut Rōmulus abesset.**
   It came about that he could not remain, **ēvēnit ut nōn manēre posset.**

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

81. All the verbs in this list may be followed by noun, or substantive, clauses:

happen, occur, **accidō, accidere, accidī, ——**
bring about, cause, effect, **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus**
persuade, **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus**
beg, **petō, petere, petīvī, petītus**
allow, grant, **permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissus**
warn, advise, **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**
enjoin upon, order, command, **imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus**
influence, **addūcō** or **indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus**
ask, demand, **rogō, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātus**

EXERCISES

82. Write well-worded answers to the following:

1. How is the perfect subjunctive formed in active and passive? 2. How may the perfect subjunctive be translated? 3. In what mood are the verbs in indirect discourse? 4. What is a noun clause? 5. In what mood is the verb in noun clauses? 6. What are the verbs that require noun clauses to complete them? 7. What verbs may take noun clauses

as subjects? 8. How do result clauses differ from purpose clauses when used negatively? 9. What is an appositive clause?

83. Write the perfect subjunctive of the following:

1. **Stō,** in the active. 3. **Mittō,** in the passive. 5. **Faciō,** in the passive.
2. **Sum.** 4. **Rogō,** in the active. 6. **Petō,** in the active.

84. 1. Accidit ut Iāsōn alterum calceum āmittat. 2. Peliās Iāsonī persuāsit ut vellere potīrī cōnārētur. 3. Ēvēnit ut tempestās subitō coörtā esset. 4. Rēx Argonautīs persuādet ut sibi auxilium ferant. 5. Puerī ex magistrō petīvērunt ut pēnsa faciliōra faceret. 6. Magister ex puerīs petit ut pēnsa māiōre cum dīligentiā parent. 7. Puerīs quī pēnsa cum cūrā parant magister permittit ut in stagnō nātent. 8. Cupiditās rēgnī Peliam indūxit ut frātrem expelleret. 9. Iāsōn sociōs nōn monuit nē longius īrent. 10. Iāsōn quibusdam ex sociīs imperābit ut cōpiam aquae quaerant.

85. Let each answer contain a noun clause:

1. Quid Iāsōn suīs imperat?
2. Quid Nymphae Hylae persuādēre cōnātae sunt?
3. Quid dē patre rogāvistī?
4. Quid pater tē monuit?
5. Quid eō tempore accidit?
6. Quid tibi magister permīsit?
7. Quid magister puellīs imperāvit?

86. In translating be careful to note that certain infinitives must be converted into dependent clauses in Latin:

1. He asks that you hurry. 2. It happened that he could not come. 3. I will ask him to send (that he send) these letters by messenger. 4. We shall persuade our friends to come. 5. He had asked that they help. 6. He commanded his men to hurry the work. 7. The senators influenced the king to send ambassadors. 8. Shall we allow the boys to sail on the river today? 9. The teacher demands that the boys prepare their lessons daily.

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The Indirect Question

87. Formation of the Past Perfect Subjunctive. — The active voice of the past perfect subjunctive is formed by adding **-isse** and the personal endings to the perfect stem, the **-e** being lengthened in the usual places.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vocāvissem	**vocātus essem**	**monuissem**	**monitus essem**
vocāvissēs	**vocātus essēs**	**monuissēs**	**monitus essēs**
vocāvisset	**vocātus esset**	**monuisset**	**monitus esset**
vocāvissēmus	**vocātī essēmus**	**monuissēmus**	**monitī essēmus**
vocāvissētis	**vocātī essētis**	**monuissētis**	**monitī essētis**
vocāvissent	**vocātī essent**	**monuissent**	**monitī essent**

88. Translation of the Past Perfect Subjunctive. — The past perfect subjunctive is translated just like the past perfect indicative in most cases, but in certain types of clauses may be rendered by *should have* or *would have*.

89. The Indirect Question. — An indirect question is a dependent noun clause introduced by an interrogative word and usually used as subject or object of a verb.

1. Direct question: *Where does he live?*
   Indirect question: I know *where he lives*, **sciō ubi habitet.**
2. Direct question: *To whom was he writing?*
   Indirect question: I was asking *to whom he was writing*, **rogābam cui scrīberet.**
3. Direct question: *To whom has he given rewards?*
   Indirect question: I will inquire *to whom he has given rewards*, **quaeram quibus praemia dederit.**
4. Direct question: *What had he done?*
   Indirect question: I was inquiring *what he had done*, **quaerēbam quid fēcisset** (past perfect subjunctive).

90. Tenses in Indirect Questions. — The present and past progressive subjunctive in indirect questions denote incomplete action, whereas the perfect and past perfect denote completed action.

A. To express incompleted action —

1. Depending on a verb denoting *present* (or future) time use the *present* subjunctive.
2. Depending on a verb denoting *past* time use the *past* progressive subjunctive.

B. To express completed action —

1. Depending on a verb denoting *present* time use the *present perfect* subjunctive.
2. Depending on a verb denoting *past* time use the *past perfect* subjunctive.

VOCABULARY

91. The following verbs are frequently followed by clauses of indirect question:

learn, know, **cognōscō**	*know,* **sciō**
say, tell, **dīcō**	*inquire, seek to know,* **quaerō**
find out, discover, **reperiō**	*announce,* **nūntiō**
know, **intellegō**	*bring back word,* **renūntiō**

know not, understand not, **nēsciō, nēscīre, nēscīvī, nēscītus**
ask, request, **rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus**

EXERCISES

92. Write complete sentence answers to the following:

1. How is the past perfect subjunctive formed in the active voice? In the passive voice? 2. How may the past perfect subjunctive be translated? 3. What is a noun, or substantive, clause? 4. What is an indirect question? 5. Which tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action? 6. What is the rule for the sequence of tenses in indirect questions? 7. What does the word *sequence* mean?

93. Write the past perfect subjunctive of the following:

1. **Stō**, in the active. 3. **Mittō**, in the passive. 5. **Iaciō**, in the passive.
2. **Sum.** 4. **Rogō**, in the active. 6. **Sciō**, in the active.

94. Translate and explain the mood and tense of verbs:

1. Nēsciō cūr in provinciam properet. 2. Nēsciō cūr in provinciam properāverit. 3. Rogant cūr nōn vēneris. 4. Nūntius repperit quid ēvēnisset. 5. Magister puerīs nūntiābat quid iī facere dēbērent. 6. Hī nōn scīre cupiunt quid magister dīcat. 7. Rēx Argonautīs dēmōnstrāvit quō modō Colchida attingere possent. 8. Iasōn percēpit quantō cum perīculō negōtium susciperet. 9. Iasōn sociīs imperāvit ut fontem quaererent nē sine aquā essent.

95. Use indirect questions in answering the following:

1. Quid magister effēcit?
2. Quid nūntius reperiet?
3. Quid māter rogāvit?
4. Quid pater quaesīvit?
5. Quid intellēxistī?
6. Quid Iāsōn percipiet?
7. Quid nēscīs?
8. Quid scīre cupis?

96. Note the indirect questions before translating:

1. I do not know where my books are. 2. Did he tell you where he lives? 3. He realizes with how great care he ought to do the work. 4. He inquired how many men had set out with Jason. 5. We shall find out where they have gone. 6. The envoy reported what he had learned. 7. We do not know how long our friends will remain. 8. Can you tell what happened? 9. The king asked why they had come.

97. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

bring to, bring forward, **adferō, adferre, adtulī, adlātus**
doubt, hesitate, **dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus**
alarm, terrify, **perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritus**
find, discover, **reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus**
know, **sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**

Argonautae ad Colchida Perveniunt

98. Post haec Argonautae summam in spem vēnērunt et rēmīs magnō cum studiō contendērunt, et, brevī spatiō intermissō, ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Nāve eō adpulsā, in terram ēgressī sunt, et statim ad rēgiam Aeētae sē contulērunt. Ubi eō pervēnērunt rēgem certiōrem quam ob rem ad Colchida iter fēcissent et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Hīs rēbus audītīs, rēx īrā commōtus est, et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum; Argonautās autem monuit ut spem velleris aureī potiendī dēpōnerent.

Iāsōn Quōsdam Labōrēs Suscipit

99. Tandem tamen rēx, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum esse eā condiciōne, ut Iāsōn labōrēs difficillimōs prius perficeret. Iāsōn, etsī intellegēbat quō cōnsiliō Aeētēs eam rem prōposuisset, dīxit tamen sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse. Tum rēx quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs iūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Iāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

rēmīs (2), explain the abl.
Phāsis (3), **-is**, f., *the Phasis*, a river of Colchis.
īrā (8), explain the abl.
vellere (10), explain the abl.
eā condiciōne (13), explain the abl.
speciē (18), explain the abl.
ēdō (18), **ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus** *give forth, emit.*
dracō (19), **-ōnis**, m., *dragon, snake*
serō (20), **serere, sēvī, satus**, *sow*; **serendī**, supply **erant.**

100. Ablative of Description. — The ablative with an adjective in agreement may be used to express quality or kind.

1. *A man of great foresight,* **vir prūdentiā magnā.**
2. *Two bulls of terrible appearance,* **duo taurī speciē horribilī.**

COMPOSITION

101. In translating be careful about Latin usages:

1. Men of great courage do not fear. 2. Jason was of such great size that he did not fear. 3. Jason picked men of singular courage for his associates. 4. Boys and girls of great foresight prepare their lessons very carefully. 5. Jason was of so great strength that he undertook the task.

QUESTIONNAIRE

102. Whenever possible use the ablative of description:

1. Quam in spem Argonautae vēnērunt?
2. Quō modō contendērunt?
3. Quō iī vēnērunt?
4. Quālis erat Aeētes?
5. Dē quā rē Iāsōn rēgem certiōrem fēcit?
6. Quid ab eō postulāvit?
7. Quid rēx respondit?
8. Quid rēx tamen scīvit?
9. Cūr sententiam mūtāvit?
10. Quid prōmīsit?
11. Quālēs labōrēs Iāsonī perficiendī erant?
12. Quālēs erat taurī?
13. Quālis vir erat Iāsōn?
14. Quid serendum erat?
15. Cūr Iāsōn id suscēpit?

103. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

increase, augment, **augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus**
finish, exhaust, **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**
put down, put aside, **dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus**
strengthen, encourage, affirm, **cōnfīrmō, -āre, -fīrmāvī, -fīrmātus**
enter upon, begin, **ineō, inīre, iniī, initus**
turn back, return, **revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus**

Mēdēa, Fīlia Aeētae, Iāsonem Adamat

104. At accidit ut rēx Colchidis fīliam Mēdēam, virginem vī magnā corporis et animī, habēret. Ea erat in rēgiā eō tempore, quō Iāsōn ab patre postulāvit ut vellus aureum trāderet; et statim illum adamāvit. Ubi ea igitur Iāsonem tantum perīculum subitūrum esse cognōvit, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hōs labōrēs prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut dux Argonautārum morerētur. Sententiā ita rēgis cognitā, Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat, hoc cōnsilium iniit, quō cōnsiliō Iāsōn sine perīculō magnō sibi labōrēs, quōs rēx prōposuisset, vī auctā cōnficeret.

Mēdēa Mīrum Quoddam Unguentum Parat

105. Mediā nocte Mēdēa clam ex urbe ēvāsit et in montēs fīnitimōs petītum mīrās quāsdam herbās properāvit. Hīs carptīs, ad rēgiam revertit, et tum sūcō expressō unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfirmāret. Hōc factō clam Iāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Iāsōn, etsī paene omnēs magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praecēdēbat (vīta enim omnis in venātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium Mēdēae tempore tantī perīculī nōn neglegendum esse.

adamō (4), **-āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *fall in love with.*
aegrē ferēbat (5), *disliked.*
ut . . . morerētur (7), give the syntax of the clause.
vī (11), explain the syntax.
auctā (11), from **augeō.**
alō (15), **alere, aluī, altus,** *feed, supply.*
unguentum (15), **-ī,** n., *ointment.*
oblinō (18), **-ere, -ēvī, -litus,** *smear.*
in venātiōnibus (20), *in hunting;* lit., *hunting expeditions.*

106. Ablative of Specification. — The ablative is used to specify the respect in which a statement is true.

1. *Men differ with respect to size,* **virī magnitūdine differunt.**
2. *Jason excelled all in physical strength,* **Iāsōn omnēs vīribus corporis praecēdēbat.**

COMPOSITION

107. Translate into idiomatic Latin:

1. Medea excelled in the strength of body. 2. She also excelled in craft (**dolus**) and in the knowledge of medicine. 3. She was of so great strength of mind that she went out of the city alone at midnight. 4. This state excels the other Gauls in valor. 5. They were very strong in body and mind.

QUESTIONNAIRE

108. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Cui erat fīlia?
2. Quālis virgō erat Mēdēa?
3. Quid Iāsōn postulāvit?
4. Ā quō id postulāvit?
5. Quis eum postulantem audīvit?
6. Quem Mēdēa adamāvit?
7. Quid rēx prōposuerat?
8. Cūr eōs prōposuerat?
9. Quid Mēdēa habēbat?
10. Quid cōnsilium ea iniit?
11. Cūr hoc cōnsilium iniit?
12. Quō Mēdēa properāvit?
13. Quid in monte carpsit?
14. Quid domī fēcit?
15. Quālis erat vīs unguentī?
16. Quō modō Iāsōn omnibus praecēdēbat?

109. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

accept, receive, **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**
kill, put to death, **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus**
arise, rise, **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**
impose, put on, **impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus**
drag, draw, **trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus**
be strong, avail, **valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus**

Iāsōn Ūnum Labōrem Perficit

110. Ubi ea diēs vēnit quam rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Iāsōn ortā lūce cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē libenter contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō taurī inclūsī erant: tum portīs āpertīs taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, hīs rēbus vīsīs, magnopere mīrātus est cūr taurī nihil contrā Iāsonem valuissent; nēsciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus adspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Magnum erat Mēdēae gaudium sēcrētum; pater tamen ēventum aegrē ferēbat.

Iāsōn Dentēs Dracōnis Serit

111. Hōc labōre cōnfectō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit: quōs ubi accepit, in agrum quem arāverat, magnā cum dīligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur. Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat: imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn lassitūdine exanimātus et exspectāns ut virī armātī gignerentur, quiētī spatium breve sē trādidit.

lūce (2), explain the abl.
repperit (3), from **reperiō.**
inclūsī (4), from **inclūdō.**
mīror (6), **-ārī, -ātus,** *wonder.*
valuissent (7), explain the reason for the subj.
cōnfēcerit (10), explain the mode.
sparsit (15), from **spargō.**
eī (19), give the syntax.
interficeret (20), explain the reason for the subj.
exanimō (21), **-āre, -āvi, -ātus,** *exhaust, kill.*
gignerentur (22), why subj.?

112. Subjunctive by Attraction. — A dependent verb is sometimes attracted into the subjunctive when it depends on another subjunctive.

1. *The nature of the teeth is such that in the place where they are sown armed men will spring up,* **dentium nātūra est tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī sint virī armātī gignantur.**
2. *The king commands him to kill the armed men who will spring up,* **rēx eī imperat ut interficiat virōs armātōs, quī gignantur.**

COMPOSITION

113. Translate into idiomatic Latin:

1. He advises that those who are absent prepare their lessons carefully. 2. He hears the men who had arrived shout with great joy. 3. The king demands that Jason plow the field with the bulls that he has yoked. 4. Jason asks the king what he wishes to be done next. 5. The ointment is of such strength that it heals.

QUESTIONNAIRE

114. Give complete sentence answers in Latin:

1. Quid faciendum est?
2. Quō Iāsōn sē contulit?
3. Quibuscum eō sē contulit?
4. Quandō eō iit?
5. Quid in stabulō repperit?
6. Quō taurōs trāxit?
7. Quid deinde fēcit?
8. Quō modō id fēcit?
9. Quantam dīligentiam is praebuit?
10. Quandō opus cōnfēcit?
11. Quid ab rēge postulāvit?
12. Quid in agrum sparsit?
13. Quid etiam faciendum est?

115. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

sword, **gladius, -ī,** m.
mid, middle of, **medius, -a, -um**
on or *from all sides,* **undique**
wound, **vulnus, -eris,** n.
arouse, **excitō, excitāre, excitāvī, excitātus**
hurl, throw together, **coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus**
foretell, **praedīcō, praedīcere, praedīxī, praedictus**

Iāsōn Labōrem Secundum Perfacile Cōnficit

116. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit: nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod Mēdēa dedisset nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum ubi saxum erat concurrērunt; quemque enim cupiditās repentīna id saxum sibi habendī cēpit; quā rē magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et plūrimīs hōc modǫ occīsīs reliquī volneribus cōnfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

Mēdēa Fugā Salūtem Petit

117. At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est: intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem sentiēbat sē sine perīculō magnō in rēgiā diūtius nōn manērè posse; fugā igitur salūtem statim petere cōnstituit. Omnibus rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ex urbē ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit.

hōrās (1), give the syntax.
esset (3), explain the subjunctive.
galea (4), **-ae,** f., *helmet.*
dedisset (6), see § 118.
inter sē (11), *one another.*
nūllō negōtiō (13), *without difficulty.*
quīn . . . tulisset (16), explain the use of the subj.
fugā (18), explain the abl.
nocte (20), explain the abl.
īnsciēns (20), **-entis,** *not knowing, unaware.*
quam celerrimē (21), see § 124.

118. Dependent Clauses in Indirect Statements. — These clauses regularly take the subjunctive.

1. *The boys say they staid in the woods because they were tired,* **puerī dīcunt sē in silvīs mānsisse, quod dēfessī essent.**
2. *He thinks that men who work all day are weary,* **putat virōs quī diem tōtum labōrent dēfessi sint.**

COMPOSITION

119. Translate into idiomatic Latin:

1. Jason said he would sleep while they waited. 2. He learns that the matter has happened just as it was predicted. 3. He saw in all parts of the field men of immense size. 4. He knew that the men whom he saw had sprung from the dragon's teeth. 5. He thinks the advice should not be neglected.

QUESTIONNAIRE

120. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quamdiū Iāsōn dormiit?
2. Quandō excitātus est?
3. Quid excitātus cognōvit?
4. Quālēs erant virī?
5. Quō modō erant iī armātī?
6. Quid Mēdēa docuerat?
7. Quid Iāsōn putābat?
8. Quid Mēdēa praecēperat?
9. Quid virī armātī fēcērunt?
10. Quid quisque cupiēbat?
11. Quid ortum est?
12. Cūr pugnāre coepērunt?
13. Quō modō pugnāvērunt?
14. Quō modō rēx adfectus est?
15. Quid rēx intellegēbat?
16. Quid is nōn dubitābat?
17. Quid Mēdēa nocte fēcit?

121. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

difficulty, **difficultās, -ātis,** f.
garrison, guard, **praesidium, -ī,** n.
step out, go out, **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum**
urge, encourage, exhort, **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**
throw forward, throw, **prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus**
suitable, **idōneus, -a, -um**
after, conj., **postquam**

Mēdēa Dēmōnstrat Quō in Locō Vellus Sit

122. Ubi Mēdēa eō vēnit, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ēius auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā ablātūrum. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt ubi Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit.

Iāsōn et Mēdēa Vellus Capiunt

123. Nāve eō adpulsā, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et sociīs ad mare relictīs, quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās contendit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis: nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem custōdiēbat. At Mēdēa rāmum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum adpropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit: deinde, dum dracō dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

obsecrō (2), **-āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *beseech, implore, adjure.*
prōsum (3), **prōdesse, prōfuī,** *be useful, benefit.*
timēret (6), explain the subj.
ablātūrum (7), supply **esse.**
praesidiō (12), see § 45.
nāvī (12), see § 45.
suspendō (14), **-ere, -dī, -pēnsus,** *hang, hang up.*
nātūrā (16), explain the abl.
pedem referō (23), *withdraw.*

124. *Quam* with the Superlative. — *Quam* is used with the superlative of an adjective or adverb to express the highest degree possible.

1. *As large a number as possible,* **quam maximus numerus.**
2. *The first possible, as soon as possible,* **quam prīmum.**
3. *As quickly as possible,* **quam celerrimē.**

COMPOSITION

125. Pay strict attention to Latin idioms:

1. Medea hurried to Jason as soon as possible. 2. With his companions he hastened from that place as quickly as possible. 3. Medea possessed the greatest possible skill in medicine. 4. They proceeded through the woods so quickly that they soon saw the fleece. 5. The place was fortified as well as possible.

QUESTIONNAIRE

126. Give complete sentence answers in Latin:

1. Quō Mēdēa properāvit?
2. Quid ea fēcit?
3. Quid ea obsecrāvit?
4. Quō modō id obsecrāvit?
5. Cūr Mēdēa vēnerat?
6. Quō modō ea excepta est?
7. Quid Iāsōn hortātus est?
8. Quid Iāsōn promīsit.
9. Ubi nāvis dēducta est?
10. Quid Mēdēa dēmōnstrāvit?
11. Ubi sociī relictī sunt?
12. Quō Iāsōn et Mēdēa contendērunt.
13. Ubi vellus vīdērunt?
14. Quō modō id custōdiēbātur?
15. Quid Mēdēa fēcit?

127. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

someone, anyone, **aliquis, aliqua, aliquid,** pron.
chance, accident, **cāsus, -ūs,** m.
soldier, **mīles, mīlitis,** m.
in vain, **frūstrā,** adv.
enough, quite, **satis,** adv.
lose hope, despair, **dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātūrus**
began, undertook, **coepī, coepisse, coeptus** (perfect stem only)

Iāsōn et Mēdēa ad Argō Reveniunt

128. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō anxiō reditum Iāsonis exspectābant: intellegēbant enim id negōtium esse summī perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē ēius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Hīs rēbus cōgitātīs, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent: et dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēns: et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset ēius reī, ad locum concurrunt. Ubi eō vēnērunt, Iāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis ēius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter rettulērunt quī rēs tam fēlīciter verterant.

Argonautae ad Thessāliam Solvunt

129. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt, et sublātīs ancorīs prīmā vigiliā solvērunt: neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam dēdūcī iussit, et mīlitibus impositīs fugientēs īnsecūtus est.

animō (2), explain the abl.
mātūrandum sibi (6), supply **esse**; lit., *it must be hurried by them;* trans., *they must hurry.*
refulgeō (9), **-ēre, -fulsī,** *gleam.*
Iāsonī (11), explain the dat.
lūmen (12), **-inis,** n., *light.*
satis (18), *quite, altogether.*
animō (20), explain the abl.
dolōre (22), explain the abl.
exārdēscō (22), **-ere, exārsī, exārsus,** *blaze out, break out.*

130. Dative of Agent. — With the future passive participle the dative of apparent agent is used to denote the person on whom the obligation rests.

1. *The field must be plowed by Jason,* **ager Iāsonī arandus est.**
2. *The bulls must be yoked by him also,* **taurī eī etiam iungendī sunt.**

COMPOSITION

131. Study the constructions in the text:

1. Knowing these things, the men feel that they must hurry. 2. They must bear aid (aid must be borne by them) to their leader. 3. He must be sought by them at once. 4. This thing had to be done by them as quickly as possible. 5. Jason said that the ship must be launched by the men at once.

QUESTIONNAIRE

132. Give complete sentence answers in Latin:

1. Quī ad mare relictī erant?
2. Quid īī exspectābant?
3. Quāle erat negōtium?
4. Quid sociī intellegēbant?
5. Quamdiū frūstrā exspectāvērunt?
6. Quā dē rē dēspērābant?
7. Quid cēnsuērunt?
8. Quid subitō cōnspiciunt?
9. Quō concurrērunt?
10. Quī ad eōs adveniēbant?
11. Quid erat causa lūminis?
12. Quō modō ducem suum recēpērunt?
13. Quid deinde fēcērunt?
14. Quandō solvērunt?
15. Quālī animō in eōs erat Aeētēs?

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

133. These words are to be learned for permanent use:

size, **magnitūdō, -inis,** f. — *almost,* **paene,** adv
thought, idea, **opīniō, -ōnis,** f. — *above,* **suprā,** adv.
hinder, **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī (iī), impedītus**
interrupt, discontinue, **intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**
step forward, advance, **prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum**

Mēdēa Cōnsilium Īnfandum Capit

134. Argonautae, qui sciēbant rem in discrīmine esse, omnibus vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; quod tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī erat magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgredī poterant. Quam ob rem nōn dubitābant quīn ā Colchīs sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adicī posset. At, ubi Mēdēa vīdit quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā īnfandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

Argonautae Thessāliam Attingunt

135. Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō, ut membrīs ēius in mare coniectīs cursum Colchōrum impedīret; sciēbat enim Aeētēn, membrīs fīlī vīsīs, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse; sed nāvem dētentūrum ut membra fīlī conligerent. Neque opīniō eam fefellit; omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea conligenda nāvem dētinērī iussit; dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ex cōnspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus longius prōgredī animō dēmissō domum revertit.

rem (1), *situation.*
discrīmen (1), **-inis,** n., *crisis, danger, peril.*
magnitūdine (3), explain the case.
caperētur (5), why subj.?
īnfandus (8), **-a, -um,** *awful.*
impedīret (13), why subj.?
conligerent (15), why subj.?
fefellit (16), from **fallō.**
ubi prīmum (17), *as soon as.*
dēstitērunt (21), from **dēsistō.**
nihil (22), *in no way, not at all.*

136. Gerundive of Purpose. — The gerundive construction (the future passive participle and a noun or pronoun in agreement) is used with **ad** to express purpose.

1. *They come to seek peace,* **ad pacem petendam veniunt.**
2. *We remained to see the harbor,* **ad portum videndum mānsimus.**

COMPOSITION

137. Translate into idiomatic Latin:

1. Medea showed Jason what must be done to accomplish these things. 2. Jason selected Argus to build the ship. 3. They will stay a few days to see the city. 4. They prepared everything for building the walls. 5. They knew they must row as fast as possible. 6. The Argo was of great size.

QUESTIONNAIRE

138. Study the text for Latin usages before answering:

1. Quō modō contendēbant?
2. Quālis erat nāvis?
3. Quid nōn dubitābant?
4. Quī quam celerrimē prōgressī sunt?
5. Quid dēpositum est?
6. Quāle cōnsilium Mēdēa cēpit?
7. Cūr id cōnsilium ea cēpit?
8. Fefellitne eam opīniō?
9. Quō modō omnia ēvēnērunt?
10. Quid Mēdēa spērāverat?
11. Quid Aeētēs iussit?
12. Intermīsēruntne labōrem Argonautae?
13. Quō īī advēnērunt?
14. Quid Aeētēs fēcit?

139. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

speech, speaking, **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** f.
doubtful, **dubius, -a, -um**
life, **vīta, -ae,** f.
whence, **unde,** adv.
be near, be present, **adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus**
talk, speak, **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**
remain, hold out, **permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūrus**
promise, **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**

Peliās Rēgnum Iāsonī nōn Trādit

140. Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad rēgem Peliam statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur: Peliās enim pollicitus erat, vellere ab Iāsone relātō, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum. Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū tacitus permānsit; deinde ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, hoc rēgnum tamen ad suprēmum meum diem obtinēre magnopere cupiō, neque dubium est quīn ea dies adsit; tum, cum ego ē vītā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē factūrum quid ille rogāsset.

Mēdēa Mortem Rēgī per Dolum Īnferre Cōnstituit

141. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta cōnstituit mortem rēgī per dolum īnferre. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōnfectum neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis, hīs audītīs, ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? At Mēdēa respondit sē medicīnae scientiam summam habēre et iīs dēmōnstrātūrum quō modō rēs fierī posset. Cōnsilium cēpit, quō cōnsiliō puellae īnscientēs patrem interficerent. Eā rē cōnfectā, fīliae maximō dolōre adfectae sunt.

trāditūrum (6), supply **esse**.

taceō (6), **tacēre, tacuī, tacitūs,** *to be silent;* **tacitus, -a, -um,** *silent.*

rogāsset (12), for **rogāvisset**; explain the subjunctive.

rēgnī (13), explain the gen.

mortem rēgī . . . inferre (14), lit., *to bear death to;* trans., *to bring about the king's death.*

aetāte (16), explain the abl.

posset (21), explain the mode.

142. Purpose with the Gerund. — Purpose may be expressed by the genitive gerund with **causā** or by **ad** and the accusative gerund. The genitive may take an object.

1. *He took a day to deliberate,* **diem ad deliberandum sūmpsit.**
2. *We came to see,* **videndī causā vēnimus.**

COMPOSITION

143. Translate into idiomatic Latin, using gerunds:

1. Jason returned to Pelias to obtain the throne. 2. Pelias, however, was desirous of keeping the throne. 3. The king was not strong enough to endure the work of ruling. 4. Medea adopted this plan to get the throne. 5. Medea had the knowledge for accomplishing this thing. 6. She will not take a day to deliberate.

QUESTIONNAIRE

144. Study the idioms of the text before answering:

1. Quō Iāsōn pervēnit?
2. Unde olim perfectus est?
3. Quō statim sē contulit?
4. Cūr eō sē contulit?
5. Quid rēx pollicitus erat?
6. Quid Iāsōn postulāvit?
7. Quid Peliās respondit?
8. Quid is nōn dubitābat?
9. Quid Iāsōn respondit?
10. Quō modō Mēdēa rem tulit?
11. Quā rē ea adducta est?
12. Quid ea facere cōnstituit?
13. Quis aetāte confectus est?
14. Quid Mēdēa habēbat?
15. Quid ea dēmōnstrāvit?
16. Quāle cōnsilium ea cēpit?
17. Quid fīliae rēgis fēcērunt?

145. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

citizen, **cīvis, -is,** m. and f.
wrong, **iniūria, -ae,** f.
name, **nōmen, -inis,** n.
scarcely, **vix,** adv.
flee, **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus**
feel, realize, **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**
hope, **spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus**
suspect, **suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum**

Mēdēa Veste Īnfectā Glaucēn Dēlet

146. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse; at cīvēs, ubi cognōvērunt quō modō Peliās periisset, Iāsonem et Mēdēam ex rēgnō expulērunt. Post haec ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē, quae erat tam pulchra ut Iāsōn eam in mātrimōnium dūcere cuperet. Quam ob rem Mēdēam uxōrem ab sē dīmittere in animō habēbat. At Mēdēa, rē cognitā, tantam iniūriam ulcīscī cōnstituit. Vestem igitur summā arte contextam parāvit: hanc venēnō quōdam īnfēcit. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn mīsit. Nihil malī suspicāns Glaucē eam statim induit. Vix vestem induerat, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum ē vītā excessit.

Mēdēa Fugit et Iāsōn Nāve suā Interficitur

147. Mēdēa sē tantō in perīculō esse arbitrātus est ut ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstitueret. Auxilium igitur ex Sōle petīvit, quī, precibus suīs commōtus currum quendam mīsit, cui dracōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat subitō dēlapsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

periisset (3), explain the mood.
Creōn (5), **-ontis,** m., *Creon,* a ruler of Thebes.
Glaucē (6), **-ēs** (acc. **-ēn**), *Glauce.*
contextam (10), *woven;* from **contexō.**
induō (12), **-duere, -duī, -dūtus,** *put on.*

148. *Cum* with the Indicative. — Time clauses introduced by **cum,** *when*, are in the indicative when referring to present or future time, or when the **cum** clause states a fact simply to fix the time of the main clause.

1. *When the teacher is present, pupils work,* **cum magister adest, discipulī labōrant.**
2. *When our friends shall have arrived, we shall rejoice,* **cum amīcī nostrī advēnerint, gaudēbimus.**
3. *Sextus lived in Rome when Romulus was king,* **Sextus Rōmae habitābat, cum Rōmulus rēx erat.**
4. *Scarcely had she put the robe on when she felt pain,* **vix vestem induerat, cum dolōrem sēnsit.**

COMPOSITION

149. Explain each temporal clause and translate:

1. When Caesar was in Gaul, there were many inhabitants. 2. When Romulus was king, the city was small. 3. Scarcely had he arrived when he came to the forum. 4. When mother is at home the maids prepare good food. 5. When Jason was killed, Medea was in Athens.

QUESTIONNAIRE

150. Study the text for usage before answering:

1. Quid Mēdēa spērābat?
2. Obtinēbatne ea rēgnum?
3. Quī eam expulērunt?
4. Quem cīvēs expulērunt?
5. Quō ea sē contulit?
6. Quis erat rēx Corinthī?
7. Quot fīliae erant rēgī?
8. Quid Iāsōn cupiēbat?
9. Cūr id facere cupiēbat?
10. Quid Mēdēa fēcit?
11. Ad quem vestem mīsit?
12. Quis nihil suspicāta est?
13. Indueratne ea vestem?
14. Quid ea statim sēnsit?
15. Quid ēvēnit?
16. Quid Mēdēa arbitrāta est?
17. Quid ea fēcit?
18. Quis ēi auxilium dedit?

INDIRECT STATEMENT

151. The Infinitives in English. — In English there are only two tenses of the infinitive, the present and the perfect, *to call* and *to have called*, *to be called* and *to have been called*. The infinitive in English is usually introduced by the sign *to*, but after verbs asserting the action of the senses *to* is omitted.

1. He ordered the servant *to open* the door.
2. I saw the slave *kindle* the fire.
3. Romulus is said *to have been cared for* by a wolf.

152. The Infinitives in Latin. — In Latin the infinitive has three tenses, present, perfect, and future, in both voices. The following are the present infinitives of all conjugations.

Active	Passive
to call, to be calling, **vocāre**	*to be called,* **vocārī**
to warn, to be warning, **monēre**	*to be warned,* **monērī**
to send, to be sending, **mittere**	*to be sent,* **mittī**
to hurl, to be hurling, **iacere**	*to be hurled,* **iacī**
to hear, to be hearing, **audīre**	*to be heard,* **audīre**

153. Verbs that Assert Action of the Senses. — In both English and Latin, verbs that assert action of the senses take an objective or accusative and an infinitive.

1. *I saw men run,* **virōs currere vīdī.**
2. *We heard the boys call,* **puerōs vocāre audīvimus.**
3. *They felt the ship move,* **nāvem movēre sēnsērunt.**

154. The Indirect Statement. — In reporting a statement of someone else, we frequently do not quote the exact words, but instead give the substance of them in a statement introduced by the conjunction *that*. This is called an indirect statement.

In Latin the indirect statement is expressed by means of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case.

1. *He says that the way is long,* **dīcit viam esse longam.**
2. *He reported that the ship was sailing,* **nūntiāvit nāvem solvere.**
3. *He said that they desired new walls,* **dīxit ēs mūrōs novōs cupere.**

155. Translating the Future Infinitive. — When used in indirect discourse the future infinitive is translated by *shall* or *will* after a present tense, and *should* or *would* after a past tense. The literal meanings given below cannot be used.

vocātūrus esse, *to be about to call* **vocātum īrī,** *to be about to be called*
missūrus esse, *to be about to send* **missum īrī,** *to be about to be sent*

1. *He says that he shall found a city,* **dīcit sē urbem conditūrum esse.**
2. *He said that the slaves would finish the work,* **dīxit servōs opus cōnfectūrōs esse.**
3. *He thinks the work will be finished,* **putat opus confectum īrī.**
4. *He heard that the walls would be* (or, *were to be*) *enlarged,* **audīvit mūrōs amplificātum īrī.**

156. Translating the Perfect Infinitive. — When used in indirect discourse the perfect infinitive must be translated by the past, present perfect, or past perfect tense.

vocāvisse, *to have called* **vocātus esse,** *to have been called*
iēcisse, *to have hurled* **iactus esse,** *to have been hurled*

1. When the main verb is present, the perfect infinitive is translated by the past or present perfect in English.

He says that Romulus founded (or, *has founded*) *a city,* **dīcit Rōmulum urbem condidisse.**

He says that a city was founded (or, *has been founded*) *by Romulus,* **dīcit urbem conditam esse ab Rōmulo.**

2. When the main verb is imperfect, historical perfect, or past perfect, the perfect infinitive is translated by the English past perfect.

He was informing me that a city had been founded by Romulus.
Mihi indicābat urbem conditam esse ab Rōmulō.
He said that Romulus had founded a city.
Dīxit Rōmulum urbem condidisse.

157. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

language, **lingua, -ae,** f.
merchant, **mercātor, -ōris,** m.
also, **quoque**
continually, **continenter**
differ, postpone, **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus**
wage, carry on, **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**
look at, face, **spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus**

EXERCISES

158. Translate into English:

1. Gallia est in partēs trēs dīvīsa. 2. Dīcit Galliam in partēs trēs dīvīsam esse. 3. Celtae ūnam partem incolunt. 4. Dīxit Celtās ūnam partem incolere. 5. Dīcit Celtās partem tertiam Galliae fuisse. 6. Celtae linguā Rōmānōrum Gallī appellābantur. 7. Scīmus eōs appellātōs esse Gallōs 8. Cīvitātēs Galliae inter sē mōribus et lēgibus differunt. 9. Caesar dīxit cīvitātēs Galliae lēgibus differre. 10. Scīmus Gallōs inter sē mōribus distulisse. 11. Mercātōrēs inter Belgās nōn ībunt. 12. Dīcit mercātōrēs inter Belgās nōn itūrōs esse. 13. Intellēximus Celtās Gallōs appellātōs esse. 14. Caesar dīxit Belgās cum Germānīs continenter contendisse.

QUESTIONNAIRE

159. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid scīs?
2. Quid magister dīxit?
3. Quid intellēxistī?
4. Quid māter arbitrātur?
5. Quid puer putābat?
6. Quid puella dīcit?
7. Quid pater iussit?
8. Quid respondistī?

160. Translate into Latin:

1. Father says that Julia is coming. 2. He says she will come tomorrow. 3. We learned that Quintus had come already. 4. We think that the boys are working in the fields. 5. Mother said that the servants would help us. 6. The teacher says that this lesson is not difficult. 7. We fear he will prepare a difficult lesson tomorrow. 8. We know that the letters have been sent. 9. They say that a ship will arrive from Greece soon. 10. We believe that the ship will bring letters for us. 11. Do you think that letters will be brought to us? 12. Claudia says that she will prepare a large supply of food. 13. I know that she prepares good food. 14. I think that they used to live in the province.

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

161. The Gerund. — The gerund is a verbal noun, formed from the future passive participle. It has four cases, as follows:

Gen.	**vocandī,** *of calling*	**monendī,** *of warning*
Dat.	**vocandō,** *for calling*	**monendō,** *for warning*
Acc.	**vocandum,** *calling*	**monendum,** *warning*
Abl.	**vocandō,** *by* (etc.) *calling*	**monendō,** *by* (etc.) *warning*

162. Uses of the Gerund. — The uses of the cases of the gerund are as follows:

1. The genitive case is used to modify a noun or an adjective.

   The difficulty of climbing was great, **difficultās ascendī erat magna.**

   We were desirous of helping, **cupidī iuvandī erāmus.**

2. The dative case is used, though rarely, after certain adjectives.

   Water is useful for drinking, **aqua est ūtilis bibendō.**

   The place is suitable for building, **locus est idōneus aedificandō.**

3. The accusative is used only as object of a preposition, usually **ad,** often translated *for*. It expresses purpose.

Stones were gathered for building, **saxa ad aedificandum comportāta sunt.**

4. The ablative is used with or without prepositions.

We learn to write by writing, **scrībere scrībendō discimus.**
We derive pleasure from learning, **discendō voluptātem capimus.**

163. The Gerundive Construction. — We have seen that the gerund may be used with an object. However, another construction is more common. It consists of a noun and the future passive participle in agreement. This construction is used chiefly in the genitive, accusative, and ablative cases, in both singular and plural.

Gerund	Gerundive
Desirous of seeing the city.	*Desirous of seeing the city.*
Cupidus urbem videndī.	**Cupidus urbis videndae.**
We learn by reading books.	*We learn by reading books.*
Librōs legendō discimus.	**Librīs legendīs discimus.**

164. Gerundive of Purpose. — By far the most common use of the gerundive construction is the accusative with **ad,** which is used to express purpose.

1. *They came to seek peace,* **ad pacem petendam vēnērunt.**
2. *He was chosen to accomplish these things,* **ad hās rēs cōnficiendās dēlēctus est.**

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

165. Learn thoroughly the following vocabulary:

execution, **supplicium, -ī,** n.
command, power, rule, **imperium, -i,** n.
reckoning, plan, reason, **ratiō, -ōnis,** f.
sharply, eagerly, **ācriter**
lead through, conduct, **perdūco, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus**
give up, surrender, hand over, **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus**
expose, put out, **expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus**

EXERCISES

166. Write complete sentence answers:

1. What cases of the gerund may be used with an object? 2. What is a gerundive construction? 3. In what cases is the gerundive chiefly used? 4. How is the gerund used to express purpose?

167. Translate into Latin and explain which constructions are gerunds and which are gerundives:

1. Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt. 2. Cupidī Rōmulum capiendī latrōnēs ratiōnem cēpērunt. 3. Rēs omnēs sunt parātae ad mūrōs amplificandōs. 4. Magister puerīs docendīs discit. 5. Ea, quae ad urbem condendam pertinent, sunt parāta. 6. Voluptās librōrum legendōrum est magna. 7. Spatium ad eās rēs cōgitandās sūmpsimus. 8. Latrōnum sēdem expugnandō Rōmulus terram tūtam fēcit. 9. Rōmae multōs diēs ad pulchra aedificia videnda mānsērunt. 10. Dux ad montēs explōrandōs dēlēctus est.

168. Write answers in Latin to the following questions:

1. Quis erat cupidus sēdis latrōnum comperiendī?
2. Quī ratiōnem frātrēs trādendī cēpērunt?
3. Ad quem iī erant cupidī Remum et Rōmulum perdūcendī?
4. Quibus latrōnēs in silvīs īnsidiātī sunt?
5. Quis, Numitōre expulsō, imperium tenuit?

169. Translate into Latin, being careful to make proper use of the gerund or gerundive:

1. The messengers came to bring letters. 2. Romulus wandered about in the mountains for the sake of finding the abode of the thieves. 3. They finally laid an ambush for him and his brother. 4. They were ready to hand them over to the king for execution. 5. By adopting this plan, they helped Numitor. 6. For the sake of founding a city Romulus collected a band.

DEPONENT VERBS

170. Deponent Verbs. — Some verbs in each conjugation are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are called deponent (from **dē-pōnere,** *to put aside*) because they have put aside their active form. These verbs are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive is active in form.

171. Principal Parts of Deponent Verbs. — There are only three principal parts of deponents, which are of course passive in form. Learn the following:

try, attempt, **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
encourage, exhort, **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**
roam, wander about, **vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum**
fear, dread, **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
promise, **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
follow, **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
set out, depart, **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum**
suffer, permit, allow, **patior, patī, passus sum**
rise, arise, be born, originate, **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**
help oneself, profit, use, **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**
enjoy oneself, delight in, enjoy, **fruor, fruī, frūctus sum**
become powerful, get possession of, **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

NOTE. **Potior** sometimes takes the genitive instead of the ablative.

172. The Ablative with Special Verbs. — The ablative is used with the deponent verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor** as if it were a direct object.

1. *We shall enjoy peace,* **pāce frūēmur.**
2. *The boys are not using the boats,* **puerī lintribus nōn ūtuntur.**
3. *They have gotten control of the city,* **urbe potītī sunt.**

The ablatives in the foregoing sentences are really not direct objects, but ablatives of means. The following would be the literal translation of the sentences:

1. *We shall enjoy ourselves by means of peace.*
2. *The boys are not profiting* (*serving themselves*) *by means of the boats.*
3. *They have become master in* (or, *by means of*) *the city.*

173. Active Forms of Deponents. — Deponent verbs have the following active parts:

1. PRESENT PARTICIPLE: **cōnāns,** *trying;* **verēns,** *fearing.*
2. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE: **cōnātūrus,** *about to try,* etc.

3. GERUND:	**cōnandī,** *of trying*	**verendī,** *of fearing*
	cōnandō, *for trying*	**verendō,** *for fearing*
	cōnandum, *trying*	**verendum,** *fearing*
	cōnandō, *by trying*	**verendō,** *by fearing*
4. SUPINE:	**cōnātum,** *to try*	**veritum,** *to fear*
	cōnātū, *to try*	**veritū,** *to fear*

174. Irregular Adjectives. — A few adjectives have a genitive singular in **-īus** and the dative singular in **-ī.** In all other respects they are declined like **altus** or **noster.**

one, **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**

Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**

VOCABULARY

175. Learn the following:

one another, **alius, alia, aliud**
no, none, **nūllus, -a, -um**
whole, entire, **tōtus, -a, -um**
any, **ūllus, -a, -um**
neither (*of two*), **neuter, neutra, neutrum**
one (*of two*), *the other,* **alter, -a, -um**
some, **nōnnūllus, -a, -um**
sole, alone, **sōlus, -a, -um**
which (*of two*), **uter, utra, utrum**
each (*of two*), **uterque, utraque, utrumque**

EXERCISES

176. Write completely worded answers to the following:

1. What is a deponent verb? 2. Which verbs in the list belong to the first conjugation? 3. Which verbs belong to the third conjugation? 4. What is the ending of the present passive infinitive in the third conjugation? 5. What parts of deponent verbs are active in form? 6. What are the irregular case endings of certain adjectives in this lesson?

177. Write synopses of verbs as indicated below:

1. **Cōnor** in the first person singular. 2. **Vereor** in the third person singular. 3. **Sequor** in the first person plural. 4. **Patior** in the third person plural. 5. **Orior** in the third person singular.

178. Translate into English, being careful to distinguish between regular passive verbs and deponents:

1. Uter āgnum rapere cōnābātur? 2. Uterque duōs āgnōs rapere conātus est. 3. Virī atrōcēs per silvās propinquās agrīs vagābantur. 4. Rōmulus ad mūrōs indicandōs arātrō ūtētur. 5. Prīncipēs sē praemia idōnea suīs obtentūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. 6. Virī fortēs mare altum nōn verentur. 7. Agricolae frūctibus agrōrum fruuntur. 8. Is crās cum suīs sēdem latrōnum petītum proficīscētur. 9. Ūllōs lupōs hodiē secūtus est? 10. Hominēs atrōcēs per gregēs nostrōs vagārī nōn patiēmur. 11. Hic vir in cīvitāte suā imperiō potīrī cōnātus est. 12. Sōl initiō hōrae prīmae orītur.

179. Answer the following in complete Latin sentences:

1. Uter frāter rēgnum obtinēbat?
2. Quid Rōmulus sē factūrum esse pollicitus est?
3. Quid amīcī Aesonis facere cōnātī sunt?
4. Quis Iāsonem ad nāvem secūta est?

180. Translate into Latin, being careful about the form of deponent verbs:

1. Which of the brothers used to wander through the glades? 2. Each wandered often through the woods and remote places. 3. In crossing the river they used boats. 4. I shall try to form a plan for protecting the herds. 5. Three leaders were trying to get the control of all Gaul. 6. The next day at dawn he set out to attack the place. 7. Bad water must not be drunk. 8. We enjoyed seeing the city greatly. 9. Caesar used the messengers as guides.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM*

181. Two Types of Temporal Clauses. — Both in English and in Latin there are two types of temporal clauses:

A. The pure time clause.

B. The descriptive time clause.

182. The Pure Time Clause with *Cum*. — A **cum** clause that aims solely to explain in some way the time when the action of the main clause took place, is a pure time clause, and always takes the indicative. It may be in any tense.

1. *When spring is here we are happy,* **cum vēr adest sumus beātī.**
2. *When he was approaching Pompeii, Vesuvius broke out,* **cum Pompēiīs appropinquābat, Vesuvius prōrūpit.**
3. *When he comes (shall come), it will be spring,* **cum veniet, vēr aderit.**
4. *When he arrived, we were out of the city,* **cum advēnit, ab urbe aberāmus.**

183. The Descriptive Time Clause. — The second type of **cum** clause does not aim primarily to explain the time of the action of the main clause, but to describe the circumstances under which that action took place. There is always a slight cause and effect relationship between it and the main clause. This type of clause must by its very nature be in the past progressive or past perfect tense. The verb is translated as if it were indicative.

When the king saw these things, he wondered greatly, **cum rēx haec vidēret, magnopere admīrātus est.** (The king wondered not simply when he saw these things, but because he saw them.)

When they (had) arrived in Colchis, they set out for the palace, **cum in Colchida advēnissent, ad rēgiam profectī sunt.** (Here also is a cause and effect relationship. The setting out for the palace was a result of their arriving.)

184. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

part, **pars, partis,** f.
law, **lēx, lēgis,** f.
refinement, **hūmānitās, -ātis,** f.
beginning, **initium, -ī,** n.
war, **bellum, -ī,** n.
daily, **cotīdiānus, -ā, -um**
separate, divide, **dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus**
live, dwell, **incolō, incolere, incoluī**

EXERCISES

185. Write sentence answers to the following:

1. What are the two kinds of temporal clauses? 2. What is the function of the pure time clause? 3. In what tenses may the pure time clause be used? 4. What is the purpose of the descriptive time clause? 5. In what tenses may it be used? 6. How is the verb in the descriptive time clause translated?

186. Translate into English and explain the mode of each subordinate verb:

1. Cum sententiam Peliae intellēxisset, puerum ē perīculō ēripuērunt. 2. Cum Iāsōn ad rēgiam vēnit, erat iuvenis. 3. Cum haec gererentur, Aeētēs admīrābātur. 4. Cum Argō cōnfecta esset, omnēs gāvīsī sunt. 5. Cum nūntius oppidō appropinquābāt, sōl ortus est. 6. Cum nūntius oppidō appropinquāret, portās aperīrī vīdit. 7. Cum ad portās vēnisset, libenter acceptus est. 8. Cum lēgātō epistulās dedisset, praemia idōnea accēpit. 9. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, in multās cīvitātēs erat dīvīsa. 10. Cum eō vēnisset, multae

cīvitātēs ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt. 11. Cum Caesar in Galliam esset, multī nūntiī ad eum vēnit. 12. Cum in Galliam iit, terra in partēs trēs dīvīsa est. 13. Cum hās rēs facerēmus, rōbustī crescēbāmus. 14. Cum urbī appropinquābāmus, sōl ortus est. 15. Cum puerī opus cōnfēcissent, in silvās properāvērunt. 16. Cum pēnsa parāta essent, in flūmine nāvigābant.

187. Use **cum** clauses in answering the following:

1. Quandō surrēxistī?
2. Quandō Rōman vīdit?
3. Quandō advēnērunt?
4. Quandō lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt?
5. Quandō Peliās timōre adfectus est?
6. Quandō Mēdēa ad Iāsonem fūgit?
7. Quandō vocābās?

188. Decide which are pure time clauses and translate:

1. When we were in the fields we worked hard. 2. While we were in the mountains the sun rose. 3. As we were approaching the town, we could see the people on the walls. 4. When they had written the letters, they sent them by a messenger. 5. When they came near, they hurled spears. 6. When they had hurled the spears, they withdrew (**sē recipere**). 7. When they came to the river, they sought boats. 8. While they were looking for boats, troops arrived. 9. When the troops had arrived, many of the enemy surrendered (**sē trādere**). 10. When Numa was king, Rome was not a very large city. 11. When he arrives, we shall rejoice. 12. When the sun had risen, they set out.

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

JULIUS CAESAR, BY ROSSELLINO

C. JŪLĪ CAESARIS DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ COMMENTĀRII RĒRUM GESTĀRUM

By being elected consul for the year 59 B.C., Caesar had attained the highest political advancement to be acquired in Rome. When this highest honor came to him, Caesar was only forty, an age at which his interest in social and political matters had become a dominating influence in his life. He therefore sought additional opportunities for the exercise of his political abilities, and through the influence of his powerful alliance with Pompey and Crassus he was appointed to the governorship of Gaul for five years. This territory consisted of the districts then known as Cisalpine Gaul, the Province, and Illyricum, and included what is now northern Italy, and a portion of southeastern Transalpine Gaul, in size about one seventh part of modern France.

In the spring of 58 B.C., soon after his appointment as proconsul, or governor, of Gaul, word was brought to Caesar that the Helvetians, who occupied a large part of what is modern Switzerland, a warlike tribe, unfriendly to the Roman people, were about to migrate through the Province with a view to settling in the fertile fields of southwestern Gaul. Caesar realized that this would be a source of great trouble to both Gauls and Romans, and accordingly hurried from Rome into Transalpine Gaul, where he raised as large an army as possible, and marched to the vicinity of Geneva, to forestall the intention of the Helvetians. The persistence of the Helvetian leaders led to war, which resulted in their utter rout and partial destruction.

The prestige resulting from this initial display of Caesar's military ability led the chiefs of some of the most important tribes to seek his assistance against German invaders. Out of this grew the second campaign of the year, in which the Germans were disastrously beaten.

DĒ BELLŌ HELVĒTICŌ

Gallia est in Nātiōnēs Trēs Dīvīsa

189. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī linguā nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque saepe mercātōrēs ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

Fīnēs Nātiōnum Trium

190. Una pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum et attingit etiam flūmen Rhēnum. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur et pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

lingua (3), **-ae,** f., *dialect;* explain the ablative.
hūmānitāte (7), explain the ablative.
effēminō (8), **-āre,** *weaken, enervate.*
animus (8), **-ī,** m., *character.*
continenter (10), *continually.*
initium capit ā (13), *begins at.*
Garumnā (14), explain the ablative.
flūmine (14), explain the ablative.
īnferior (16), **-ius,** *lower.*

191. Ablative of Specification. — The respect in which a statement is true is expressed by the ablative.

All these differ in language, **hī omnēs linguā differunt.**

The Belgians excel the rest in bravery, **Belgae virtūte reliquōs praecēdunt.**

COMPOSITION

192. Translate into Latin:

Gaul was at that time divided into three parts. The inhabitants of these three parts differed in customs and laws. The Belgians were the bravest of all, because they were far from the refinement of the province. Besides they used to fight in daily battles with the Germans who lived across the Rhine. Caesar says that the Belgians and Germans fight almost daily.

QUESTIONNAIRE

193. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot in partēs Gallia erat dīvīsa?
2. Quō erant incolae hārum partium?
3. Quid Rōmānī Gallōs appellābant?
4. Quō modō hī differēbant?
5. Quī erant fortissimī?
6. Cūr erant iī fortissimī?
7. Ubi Germānī incolēbant?
8. Quibuscum Gallī continenter bellum gerēbant?
9. Quōs Belgae praecēdēbant?
10. Cūr reliquōs praecēdēbant?
11. Quotiēns Belgae proeliīs contendēbant?
12. Quālem partem Celtae obtinēbant?

194. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

rank, nobility, **nōbilitās, -ātis,** f.
control, rule, **imperium, -ī,** n.
reputation, fame, **glōria, -ae,** f.
on all sides, **undique,** adv.
persuade, convince, **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus**
bound, hem in, **contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus**
lie open, stretch, extend, **pateō, patēre, patuī**
think, believe, **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**

Orgetorīx Coniūrātiōnem Facit

195. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx, quam ob rem inter eōs fuit potentissimus. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgni cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitāti persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. Dīxit perfacile fūtūrum esse tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent.

Helvētiī Fīnēs Lātiōrēs Petunt

196. Eīs hōc facilius persuāsit ut ex fīnibus exīrent, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvetiī continentur; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā fīnibus Germānōrum dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus et minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre poterant; quā ex parte, quod erant hominēs bellandī maximē cupidī, magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

longē (1), *by far.*
dītissimus (1), *wealthiest.*
coniūrātiō (4), **-ōnis,** f., *conspiracy.*
cīvitātī (4), ind. obj.; trans. like a dir. obj.
virtūte (7), explain the case.
hōc (8), abl. of cause; translate with **quod,** *for the reason that.*
parte (9), *side.*
tertiā (12), supply **parte.**
rēbus (15), abl. of cause.
prō (17), *in proportion to.*
bellī (18), explain the case.

197. *Cum* in Causal Clauses. — **Cum** meaning *since, whereas, because,* is used with any tense of the subjunctive to denote the reason for an action.

Since they excel all in valor, they hope to get control of all Gaul **cum virtūte omnibus praestent, tōtīus Galliae potīrī spērant.**

COMPOSITION

198. Translate into Latin:

1. Since their territories are narrow, they desire to go out. 2. Since they were hemmed in on all sides by nature, they did not wander widely. 3. Since they were not able to wage war, they were afflicted with resentment. 4. Because they have a great reputation for valor, they consider their lands too narrow. 5. Their lands are so narrow that they cannot wander widely.

QUESTIONNAIRE

199. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quālis erat Orgetorīx?
2. Quid cupiēbat?
3. Quid fēcit?
4. Quid cīvitātī persuāsit?
5. Quid perfacile esse arbitrātus est?
6. Cūr id arbitrātus est?
7. Quī reliquīs praestābant?
8. Quid dux eīs persuāsit?
9. Cūr Helvētiīs id facile persuāsit?
10. Quid unā ex parte Helvētiōs continēbat?
11. Quid ab Germānīs Helvētiōs dīvidēbat?
12. Cūr Helvētiī dolōre adficiēbantur?
13. Quālis glōria eīs erat?

200. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

authority, influence, **auctōritās, -ātis,** f.
mission, embassy, **lēgātiō, -ōnis,** f.
friendship, **amīcitia, -ae,** f.
talk, argument, **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** f.
leadership, **prīncipātus, -ūs,** m.
lead to, influence, **indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus**
appoint, choose, **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**
carry out, complete, perform, **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus**

Helvētiī Domō Exīre Cōnstituunt

201. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre: iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Orgetorīx Lēgātiōnem ad Cīvitātēs Suscipit

202. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque persuādet Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat, ut idem cōnārētur, atque eī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Illīs probat id esse perfacile factū, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn Helvētiī tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possent. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

adductī (1), trans. by the simple past part., *influenced.*
iūmentum (3), **-ī,** n., *pack-animal.*
coëmō (4), **-ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus,** *buy up.*
biennium (6), **-ī,** n., *two years.*
dūxērunt (6), *considered.*
dux (8), pred. nom. with pas. verb.
occupāret (12), explain the mode.
plūrimum possent (19), *were most powerful.*
rēgnō occupātō (20), *when they have seized.*

203. Verbs of Urging and Commanding. — Verbs of urging and commanding take an indirect object of the person and a substantive clause with **ut** and the subjunctive.

He persuaded them to go out, **eīs persuāsit ut exīrent.**
He commands the boys to get ready, **puerīs imperat ut parent.**

COMPOSITION

204. Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar commanded the messengers to hurry. 2. Orgetorix persuades Casticus to seize the royal power. 3. He likewise persuades Dumnorix to attempt the same thing. 4. The leaders command the citizens to make ready. 5. Aroused by the influence of Orgetorix they undertake the matter. 6. He persuaded them that it was very easy to do.

QUESTIONNAIRE

205. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī adductī sunt?
2. Ā quō permōtī sunt?
3. Quid cōnstituērunt?
4. Quot carrōs coëmere cōnstituērunt?
5. Quālēs sēmentēs fēcērunt.
6. Quandō in animō proficīscī habēbant?
7. Quis dux dēlēctus est?
8. Quid Orgetorīx fēcit?
9. Quō profectus est?
10. Cui prīmō persuāsit?
11. Quid eī persuāsit?
12. Cui etiam persuāsit?
13. Uter fuit Haeduus?
14. Cui cīvitātī fuit Casticus?
15. Quid Orgetorīx nōn dubitābat?

206. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

custom, habit, **mōs, mōris,** m.
cause, case, **causa, -ae,** f.
trial, **indicium, -ī,** n.
chain, fetter, **vinculum, -ī,** n.
dependent, vassal, **cliēns, -entis,** c.
death, **mors, mortis,** f.
arouse, urge on, **incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus**
set on fire, burn, inflame, **incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus**
snatch away, rescue, escape, **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus**

Coniūrātiō Orgetorīgis Cognōscitur

207. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Möribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Oppidīs Incēnsīs Helvētiī Proficīscuntur

208. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, incendunt oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, fīnitimīs, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque incēnsīs, ut ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant, sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

indicium (1), *information, spies.*
dictiō, (3), **-ōnis** f., *pleading.*
iūdicium (3), **-ī,** n., *trial.*
obaerātus (5), **-ī,** m., *debtor.*
eōdem (6), adv., *to the same place.*
exsequī (7), *to follow up.*
cōnārētur (8), explain the mode.
ut (9), *as,* with the indicative.
sibi . . . cōnscīverit (10), *he decreed death to himself, committed suicide.*
nihilō (11), adv., *by no means;* with **minus,** *nevertheless.*
combūrō (16), **-ere, -ussī, -ūstus,** *burn up, burn.*
reditiō (16), **-ōnis,** f., *return.*

209. Appositive Clauses. — Appositive clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut, nē,** or **quīn** preceded by a negative, may be used to explain a noun or pronoun.

1. *Suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide,* **suspīciō nōn abest, quīn sibi mortem cōnscīverit.**
2. *They attempt to carry out their plan, (namely) that they go out,* **cōnsilium suum efficere cōnantur, ut exeant.**

COMPOSITION

210. Translate into Latin:

1. They adopt a plan for going (that they may go) out of their territories. 2. Suspicion was not wanting that Orgetorix had formed a conspiracy. 3. They set fire to their houses with the idea that there might be no hope of return. 4. There is no doubt that Dumnorix aided (**iuvō**) them. 5. Orgetorix brought all his family that through them he might escape.

QUESTIONNAIRE

211. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid ēnūntiātum est?
2. Quibus rēs ēnuntiāta est?
3. Quid fēcērunt?
4. Quid Orgetorīx fēcit?
5. Quī sunt incitātī?
6. Quis sē ēripuit?
7. Quālis erat suspiciō?
8. Quibus erat suspiciō?
9. Quid iī facere cōnstituērunt?
10. Cūr exīre cupiēbant?
11. Quid incendērunt?
12. Cūr ea incendērunt?
13. Quī idem conātī sunt?
14. Quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant?

212. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

one by one, **singulī, -ae, -a**
ford, **vadum, -ī,** n.
by which route, where, **quā,** adv.
spirit, courage, **animus, -ī,** m.
subdue, make peace, **pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus**
think, believe, **exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātus**
permit, allow, suffer, **patior, patī, passus sum**

Itinera Duo Erant ex Helvētiā

213. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per fīnēs Sēquanōrum, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, quā vix carrī singulī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent. Alterum iter dūcēbat per prōvinciam nostram. Id erat multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī ā populō Rōmānō nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

Helvētiī in Animō per Allobrogēs Iter Facere Habent

214. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvetiōrum fīnibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns trāns flūmen Rhodanum ad Helvetiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur; eōs invītōs vī cōgere in animō habēbant. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

omnīnō (1), *in all, only.*
domō (1), explain the case.
ūnum (2), (way).
Iūra (3), **-ae,** f., a mountain range west of Helvetia.
nōn nūllīs (9) = **nōnnūllīs,** *some.*
vadō (9), explain the case.
fīnibus (12), explain the case.
esse (14), explain the inf.
bonō animō (14), *of friendly spirit;* explain the ablative.
in (15), *toward.*
ut . . . paterentur (16), *to allow;* explain the mode.
Kalendae (19), **-ārum,** f., *Kalends;* the first day of the month; **ante . . . Aprīlēs,** *March 28.*

215. The Infinitive as an Object. — The infinitive either with or without a subject accusative may be used as object of such verbs as **cupiō,** *wish;* **dēbeō,** *owe, ought;* **iubeō,** *order:* **patior,** *permit.*

1. *We shall allow them to go through our territories,* **eōs per fīnēs nostrōs īre patiēmur.**
2. *He orders them to hurry,* **eōs properāre iubet.**

COMPOSITION

216. Translate into Latin:

They were able to go out by two ways. Since the one through the territories of the Sequani was difficult, the leaders prepared to go out by the other route. They hoped that the Allobroges would allow them to pass through their territories. If the Allobroges are unwilling, they intend to compel them by force.

QUESTIONNAIRE

217. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot itinera erant?
2. Quāle erat ūnum?
3. Quō alterum dūcēbat?
4. Quō modō carrī ūnō itinere dūcendī sunt?
5. Quid impendēbat?
6. Utrum facilius erat?
7. Quā rē facilius erat?
8. Utrum erat difficilius?
9. Utrum vadō trānsībātur?
10. Quid erat oppidum extrēmum Allobrogum?
11. Quid ex eō locō pertinēbat?
12. Quō is pōns pertinēbat?
13. Quī nūper pācātī erant?
14. Quid Helvētiī cōnātī sunt?

218. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

consent, approval, **voluntas, -ātis,** f.
arrival, **adventus, -ūs,** m.
chief man, **prīnceps, -ipis,** m.
evil deed, **maleficium, -ī,** n.
command, demand, levy upon, **imperō, -āre, imperāvī, imperātus**
take, **sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus**
go between, intervene, forbid, **intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**
make ready, get ready, **comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātus**

Caesar Helvētiōs Prohibēre Parat

219. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et, quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

Helvētiī ad Caesarem Lēgātōs Mittunt

220. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent ' sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Caesar Diem ad Dēlīberandum Sūmit

221. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

ad (4), *near, in the vicinity of.*
rescindō (7), **-ere, rescidī, rescissus,** *cut down, destroy.*
prīnceps (10), **-ipis,** adj., *chief, most prominent, leading.*
ut . . . liceat (13). *that it be permitted to them, that they be permitted.*
occīsum (15), *had been killed.*
pulsum (15), supply **esse**; also with **missum.**
temperō (18), **-āre,** *refrain.*

222. The Infinitive as Complement. — An infinitive used to complete the meaning of a verb may have the same subject as that of the main verb.

Caesar hastens to depart, **Caesar proficīscī mātūrat.**
They wished to go through the province, **per prōvinciam īre cupiēbant.**

COMPOSITION

223. Translate into Latin:

1. The Helvetians intended to march through the province. 2. They were unable to do this, since Caesar was near Geneva. 3. They said they had no other route. 4. Caesar remembered that they had defeated a Roman army. 5. Since they were of hostile mind he did not permit them to do this. 6. Caesar said he would take a day to consider.

QUESTIONNAIRE

224. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesarī nūntiātum est?
2. Cūr iī per prōvinciam īre cupiēbant?
3. Quid Caesar fēcit?
4. Quō contendit?
5. Quō modō contendit?
6. Quot mīlitēs imperāvit?
7. Ubi erat ūna legiō?
8. Quid Caesar fierī iussit?
9. Ubi erat hic pōns?
10. Quid Helvetiī fēcērunt?
11. Quōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt?
12. Quid iī dīxērunt?
13. Quid Caesar in memōriā tenēbat?
14. Quid Caesar respondit?

225. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

ditch, trench, **fossa, -ae,** f.
fortification, intrenchments, **mūnītiō, -ōnis,** f.
fort, outwork, **castellum, -ī,** n.
garrison, guard, **praesidium, -ī,** n.
raft, ship, **ratis, ratis,** f.
lead through, conduct, extend, **perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**
distribute, station, **dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus**
join, connect, **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus**

Caesar Mūnītiōnem ā Lacū Lemānnō ad Montem Iūram Facit

226. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Hunc mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fēcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit et castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Helvētiī Cōnātī Trānsīre Repulsī Sunt

227. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs Helvētiōrum vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, sē prohibitūrum esse ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī sunt; hī tamen mūnītiōne quae facta erat et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

passuum (4), explain the case.

ūndēvīgintī (4), *nineteen.*

sēdecim (6), *sixteen.*

quō (7), translate like **ut.**

sē invīto (7), abl. abs.; translate, *against his will* (lit., *himself being unwilling*).

negat sē . . . posse (10), *says that he cannot.*

nāvibus iūnctīs (13), *by means of boats joined together.*

complūrēs (14), **-a,** *very many.*

nōn numquam (15), *sometimes;* two negatives equal an affirmative.

cōnātī sunt (16), *make an effort* (*to see*).

perrumpō (16), **-ere, -rūpī, -ruptus,** *break through, force a passage.*

cōnātū (18), explain the abl.

dēsistō (18), **-ere, dēstitī, dēstitus,** *stand away from* (with abl.), *give up.*

228. Accusative of Extent. — The accusative is used to express extent of space or distance. It may depend upon a verb, adjective, or phrase.

1. *He built a wall sixteen feet high,* **mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fēcit.**
2. *The wall was ten feet wide,* **mūrus erat lātus pedēs decem.**
3. *He extended the wall nineteen miles,* **mūrum mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī perdūxit.**

COMPOSITION

229. Translate into Latin:

1. They worked many hours. 2. He made a ditch ten feet deep. 3. He distributed garrisons a few miles apart (**inter sē.**) 4. He did this to prevent the enemy from crossing. 5. The river was a few feet deep in some places. 6. He said he could not allow anyone to march through the province.

QUESTIONNAIRE

230. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot legiōnēs Caesar sēcum habēbat?
2. Quid in flūmen Rhodanum influit?
3. Quōrum fīnēs id dīvidēbat?
4. Quid Caesar perdūxit?
5. Unde mūrum perdūxit?
6. Quid disposuit?
7. Cūr eōs disposuit?
8. Quī ad eum revertērunt?
9. Quid Caesar eīs dīxit?
10. Quid eīs ostendit?
11. Quid in animō prohibēre habēbat?
12. Quid hostēs cōnātī sunt?
13. Quid Helvētiī iūnxērunt?
14. Trānsiēruntne flūmen?
15. Cūr cōnātū dēstitērunt?

231. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

favor, **grātia, -ae,** f.
hostage, **obses, -idis,** c.
narrow places, **angustiae, -ārum,** f.
friendly, **amīcus, -a, -um**
unfriendly, **inimīcus, -a, -um**
kindness, **beneficium, -ī,** n.
easily, more easily, most easily, **facile, facilius, facillimē**
be eager for, desire, strive for, **studeō, studēre, studuī,** with dat.

Helvētiī ad Dumnorīgem Lēgātōs Mittunt

232. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat.

Dumnorīx Sēquanīs Persuādet

233. Cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cōnsilium Helvētiōrum Caesarī Renūntiātur

234. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

Sēquanīs invītīs (1), explain the use.

Hīs (2), explain the case.

suā sponte (2), *on their own account, by themselves.*

dēprecātor (4), **-ōris,** m., *mediator;* **eō dēprecātōre,** abl. abs., *with him as mediator.*

largītiō (5), **-ōnis,** f., *lavish giving.*

plūrimum poterat (5), *was very powerful.*

obstringō (9), **-ere, -strinxī, -structus,** *bind, obligate.*

Sēquanī (12), supply *promising.*

Id . . . fieret (17), *if this should happen.*

futūrum (18), fut. inf.; supply **esse.**

235. The Use of *Invītus*. — The adjective **invītus** is used in many cases just like a perfect passive participle.

As ablative absolute: **Sēquanīs invītīs** (lit., *the Sequanians being unwilling*), *against the will of the Sequanians, if the Sequanians should be unwilling.*

As a modifier: **Sēquanōs invītōs cogere nōn poterant,** *they could not compel the Sequanians against their will.*

COMPOSITION

236. Translate into Latin:

1. They could not go through the province against Caesar's will (Caesar being unwilling). 2. Since this tribe was unwilling they sent legates to Dumnorix. 3. Caesar will stop the Helvetians if they attempt to cross against his will. 4. Dumnorix obtained from the Sequanians (permission) that the Helvetians go through their territory. 5. Caesar thought that this would be (attended) with great danger to the province.

QUESTIONNAIRE

237. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot viae relinquuntur?
2. Per quōrum fīnēs?
3. Cūr eō itinere nōn īre poterānt?
4. Quid Helvētiī fēcērunt?
5. Quid Dumnorīx impetrāvit?
6. Cūr apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat?
7. Quid is effēcit?
8. Quid Sēquanī patiuntur?
9. Ubi erant fīnēs Santonum?
10. Ubi erant fīnēs Tolōsatium?
11. Quid Caesar intellegēbat?
12. Cūr Caesar prohibēbat?

238. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

slavery, **servitūs, -ūtis,** f.
sight, view, **cōnspectus, -ūs,** m.
higher, **superior, superius**
nearer, **citerior, citerius**
write together, enroll, enlist, **cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus**
lay waste, ravage, **populor, populārī, populātus sum**

Caesar ex Italiā Legiōnēs Quīnque Dūcit

239. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Helvētiī Agrōs Haeduōrum Popolantur

240. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.'

praeficit (2), takes acc. obj. and dat. of ind. obj.
magnīs (2), *forced.*
circum (3), *in the neighborhood of.*
proeliīs (9), explain the abl.
prōvinciae (10), explain the gen.
prīmī (13), give the syntax.
possent (17), explain the mode.
Ita (18), supply *saying that* before this infinitive clause.
agrī (20), **līberī, oppida** are all subjects of **dēbuerint.**
vāstārī (20), **abdūcī, expugnārī** are complements of **dēbuerint.**

241. ***Trāns* in Compounds.** — Both in English and in Latin, many words are formed by combining **trāns** with stems of verbs, often with the addition of a suffix. In compounds it means *across, over, through,* or *beyond.*

Trāns may become **trā** before *i, d, l, m,* or *n.*

Trāns becomes **trān** before *s.*

1. **Trāns** + **scrībō** = **trānscrībō,** *transcribe, copy from one place to another;* **trānscrīptiō,** *transcription, that which is written over.*
2. **Trāns** + **dō** = **trādō,** *hand over, transmit;* **trāditiō,** *tradition, that which is handed over from one to another.*

EXERCISES

242. Form as many English words as possible from **trāns** and the present stem or supine stem of the following:

agō	eō	gredior	pōnō
dō	ferō	mittō	portō

243. Explain the derivation of the following:

transaction	transitory	transmute	transitive
traitor	transfuse	transient	translate

QUESTIONNAIRE

244. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar fēcerat?
2. Quem eī praefēcit?
3. Quō Caesar contendit?
4. Quid ex hībernīs ēdūxit?
5. Quō legiōnēs dūxit?
6. Quī prohibēre cōnantur?
7. Quō Caesar pervēnit?
8. Quō diē pervēnit?
9. Ubi erant Helvētiī?
10. Quid iī faciēbant?
11. Quī auxilium rogant?
12. Cūr auxilium rogant?

245. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

scout, spy, **explorātor, -ōris,** m.

which (of two), **uter, utra, utrum**

this side of, **citrā,** w. acc.

except, **praeter,** w. acc.

ask, request, **rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus**

put in position, decide, **statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus**

lay waste, ravage, **populor, populārī, populātus sum**

Ambarrī Caesarem Auxilium Rogant

246. Eōdem tempore nūntiī ab Ambarrīs, sociīs Haeduōrum, ad Caesarem sē contulērunt auxilium rogātum, atque eum certiōrem fēcērunt Helvētiōs iam ipsōrum agrōs dēpopulātōs esse; quā dē causā sē nōn facile ab oppidīs multitūdinem hostium prohibēre dīcunt.

Allobrogēs Item ad Caesarem sē Recipiunt

247. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

rogātum (2), explain the use.
ipsōrum (3), why not **suōs**?
reliquī (8), neuter of **reliquus** used as a noun; part. gen. with **nihil**, *nothing of a remainder, nothing left.*
nōn exspectandum sibi (9), *it must not be waited by him*; i.e., *he must not wait.*
incrēdibilis (13), **-e,** *unbelievable, extraordinary.*
lēnitās (13), **-ātis,** f., *gentleness, smoothness;* explain the case of **lēnitāte.**
fluat (14), explain the mode.
trānsībant (15), past prog. of **trānseō.**
dē (18), *about.*

248. The Supine of Purpose. — The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

Messengers betook themselves to Caesar to ask aid, **nūntiī ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum sē contulērunt.**

COMPOSITION

249. Translate into Latin:

1. Messengers hurried to Caesar to ask aid. 2. The Ambarri sent messengers to him (who, etc.) to ask aid. 3. The Allobroges also flee to Caesar to inform him. 4. They will come to bring help to their allies. 5. The river flows with such (**tantus**) smoothness that it does not seem to flow at all. 6. We cannot tell (judge) in which direction it flows.

QUESTIONNAIRE

250. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī nūntiōs mīsērunt?
2. Quō eōs mīsērunt?
3. Cūr ad eum mīsērunt?
4. Quid Helvētiī fēcērunt?
5. Dē quō eum certiōrem fēcērunt?
6. Quōs ab oppidīs prohibēre nōn poterant?
7. Quī etiam ad Caesarem sē recēpērunt?
8. Ubi iī habitābant?
9. Quid dēmōnstrāvērunt?
10. Quid Caesar statuit?
11. Quō modō Arar fluit?
12. Quid Helvētiī trānsībant?
13. Quid Caesar per explōrātōrēs cognōvit?
14. Quot partēs Helvētiōrum iam trānsierant?
15. Quō Caesar pervēnit?

251. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

district, canton, **pāgus, -ī,** m.
expectation, **opīniō, -ōnis,** f.
chance, **cāsus, -ūs,** m.
suddenly, **repente**
approach, attack, assault, **adgredior, adgredī, adgressus sum**
hamper (with baggage), hinder, **impediō, -īre, impedīvī, impedītus**
struggle, toil, exert oneself, be perplexed, **labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**
put on, make (war), inflict upon (with dat.), **īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**

Caesar Helvētiōs Impedītōs in Flūmine Adgreditur

252. Cum ea pars quarta Helvētiōrum in flūmine labōrāret, Caesar repente et praeter opīniōnem advēnit, atque eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus magnum numerum eōrum concīdit. Reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hic pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Caesar Pūblicās et Prīvātās Iniūriās Ulcīscitur

253. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

inopīnantēs (3), *unawares.*
concīdō (4), **-ere, -cīdī, -cīsus,** *cut to pieces, kill, slay.*
abdō (5), **-ere, -didī, -ditus,** *hide.*
sīve (10), *either, whether, or.*
īnsignis (11), **-e,** *memorable.*
ulcīscor (14), **-ī, ultus sum,** *avenge.*
socer (1), **-erī,** m., *father-in-law.*
avus (15), **-ī,** m., *grandfather.*
repentīnō (19), *suddenly.*
Cassiānō (23), *with Cassius.*

254. Use of the Perfect Passive Participle. — The perfect passive participle is used adjectively to agree with a noun in any case. It may often be translated by a clause. The perfect participle of a deponent verb is active.

Attacking the enemy, (who were) hampered in the river, he cut to pieces a large number, **hostēs in flūmine impedītōs adgressus magnum numerum concīdit.**

COMPOSITION

255. Translate into Latin:

1. Setting (having set) out from camp, he led the army to the river. 2. When he had come there, he attacked the fourth district hampered in the river. 3. Attacking these, he slew a large part. 4. The remainder took to flight. 5. He orders a bridge to be built across the Arar. 6. When this was done, he led his army across.

QUESTIONNAIRE

256. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī in flūmine labōrābant?
2. Quī ad eōs advēnit?
3. Quō modō advēnit?
4. Quid Caesar fēcit?
5. Quō reliquī sē abdidērunt?
6. Quot in partēs Helvētia erat dīvīsa?
7. Quid hic pāgus fēcerat?
8. Quid hic pāgus sub iugum mīserat?
9. Hōc proeliō factō, quid Caesar fēcit?
10. Quōs trādūxit.
11. Quot in diēbus ad Helvētiōs vēnit?
12. Cūr iī erant permōti?

257. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

insult, **contumēlia, -ae,** f.
reply, **respōnsum, -ī,** n.
mention, call to mind, **commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**
continue in, follow up, **persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**
set up, establish, instruct, **īnstituō, -ere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus**
wish, be willing, will, **volō, velle, voluī**
recent, fresh, **recēns, -entis**
old, former, **vetus, veteris**

Dīvicō Ōrātiōnem Habet

258. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ‘ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.’

Caesar Ōrātiōnī Dīvicōnis Respondit

259. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: ‘ sē memoriā tenēre eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.’

Dīvicō respondit: ‘ Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint.’ Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

cum Caesare ēgit (1), *he treated with Caesar, he addressed Caesar.*
sīn (4), *but if.*
persevērō (4), **-āre,** *persist;* with **persequī,** *persist in going on.*
reminīscor (4), **reminīscī,** *remember,* with gen.
commemorāssent (8), p. perf. subj.
quod sī (8), *but if.*
num (9) . . . **posse,** *could he?*
quod (11), *the fact that;* so also in the next line.
memoriam dēpōnere (12), *overlook.*
glōriārentur (13), *boasted.*
cōnsuērint (20) = **cōnsuēverint,** *that they should accustom themselves,*

260. Dependent Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — All dependent clauses in indirect discourse are in the subjunctive.

Direct Discourse: *If Caesar will make peace the Helvetians will go*, etc., **sī Caesar pācem faciet Helvetiī ībunt**, etc.

Indirect Discourse: **Dīxit: sī Caesar pācem facēret, Helvētiōs itūrōs esse**, etc.

COMPOSITION

261. Translate into Latin:

1. He says they will go there where Caesar shall determine. 2. Caesar answers that he remembers the things that Divico has mentioned. 3. Caesar said he would make peace if the Helvetians would give hostages. 4. Caesar knew that the Helvetians had overrun the Ambarri. 5. He says also that they must make restitution to the Haeduans.

QUESTIONNAIRE

262. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis cum Caesare ēgit?
2. Quid Dīvicō cupiēbat?
3. Quid pollicitus est?
4. Quid commemorāvit?
5. Quid Caesar memoriā tenēbat?
6. Volēbatne oblīvīscī?
7. Quī suā victōriā gloriābantur?
8. Cūr tamdiū admīrābantur?
9. Quid Caesare invītō temptāverant?
10. Quōs vexāverant?
11. Quid Caesar eīs imperāvit?
12. Satisfēcēruntne Haeduīs?
13. Quā condiciōne Caesar pācem facere volēbat?

263. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

life, **vīta, -ae, f.**
common people, **plēbs, plēbis**, f.
at length, **dēmum**, adv.
in the meantime, **interim**
beguile, put off, defer, **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**
be better, excel, stand before, **praestō, -āre, praestitī, praestātus**
bring together, collect, transport, **cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**
deter, prevent, restrain, **dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus**

Caesar Cotīdiē Haeduōs Frūmentum Flāgitat

264. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitābat. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat. Diem ex diē dūcēbant Haeduī: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dīcēbant. Ubi sē dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōs sēcum in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat.

Liscus Ōrātiōnem Habet

265. Tum dēmum Liscus dīxit: "Nōn nūllī magnam auctōritātem apud plēbem habent, quī privātim plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbent. Dīcēbant praestāre, sī Haeduī prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmanōrum imperia perferre; sī Helvētiōs superāverint Romāni, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduōs lībertātem āmissūrōs esse." Addidit: sē hanc rem Caesarī ēnūntiāvisse magnō cum perīculō sibi, et ob eam rem, quamdiū potuerit, tacuisse.

flāgitō (2), **-āre,** *demand, press . . . for;* takes two accs.
frīgus (2), **-oris,** n., *cold;* **frīgora,** *cold spells.*
suppetō (4), **-ere, -petīvī, -petītus,** *be at hand, be in store.*
vergobretus (9), **-ī,** m., *vergobret.*
annuus (10), *annual (-ly).*
prīvātim (13), *individually, privately.*
plūs possunt (13), *are more powerful.*
sēditiōsus (14), **-a, -um,** *seditious.*
perferō (17), **-re,** *submit to, endure.*

266. The Predicate Adjective with Passive Verbs. — Verbs of calling, naming, choosing, and making in the passive take a predicate nominative (subjective complement).

The magistrate was chosen annually, **magistrātus creābātur annuus.**

COMPOSITION

267. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The magistrate was called vergobret. 2. Caesar upbraids them because they have not sent grain. 3. The leaders said they could not send the grain that they had promised. 4. Some Haeduans are more powerful individually than the magistrates. 5. The talk of these was called seditious by Liscus. 6. Liscus had kept silent a long time through (on account of) fear.

QUESTIONNAIRE

268. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar flāgitābat?
2. Quōs id flāgitābat?
3. Quī id pollicitī erant?
4. Cūr frūmenta in agrīs nōn erant mātūra.
5. Eratne cōpia pābulī satis?
6. Quī diēs īnstābat?
7. Quōs Caesar accūsāvit?
8. Cūr eōs accūsāvit?
9. Quis summō magistrātuī praeerat?
10. Quid Liscus dīxit?
11. Quō modō hī multitūdinem dēterrēbant?
12. Cūr eōs dēterrēbant?
13. Quid obtinēre cupiēbant?
14. Quid praestāre exīstimābant?

269. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

power, **potentia, -ae,** f.
means, opportunity, **facultās, -ātis,** f.
cavalry, **equitātus, -ūs,** m.
present, **praesēns, -entis**
feel, perceive, think, **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**
be unwilling, not want, not wish, **nōlo, nōlle, nōluī**
give up hope, despair, **dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātūrus**

Caesar ex Liscō et Aliīs Quaerit

270. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs cōnsiderārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit haec: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod īllō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō.'

Item sīc reperit: 'Dumnorīgem hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs plūrimum posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, propinquās suās in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse.'

Haec addita sunt: 'Dumnorīgem favēre Helvētiīs, ōdisse etiam Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus.'

dēsīgnārī (1), *to be referred to, that Dumnorix was referred to.*
ex sōlō (4), supply **Lisco.**
ipsum esse Dumnorīgem (5), *that Dumnorix indeed was.*
summā audāciā (6), (a man) *of the greatest daring.*
vectīgālia (8), *taxes, revenues.*
redēmpta (9), *bought up.*
illō licente (9), *with him bidding.*
comparāsse (12), for **comparāvisse.**
habēre (14), translate all the infinitives used as principal verbs as if they were past or past perfect tenses.
conlocāsse (17), *had married off.*
dēminūta (21), *diminished.*

271. The Ablative of Description or Quality. — The ablative with an adjective is used to denote kind or quality.

Dumnorix was (a man) of the greatest daring, **Dumnorīx erat summā audāciā.**

COMPOSITION

272. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Dumnorix was of great favor among the plain people. 2. Caesar learned that he was of hostile (**inimīcus**) mind toward the Romans. 3. Diviciacus was a man of the greatest zeal toward Caesar. 4. They report that Dumnorix is very powerful because of his liberality. 5. To increase his power he married off his mother in a neighboring state. 6. They added that Dumnorix hated Caesar and the Romans.

QUESTIONNAIRE

273. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar sentiēbat?
2. Cūr concilium dīmīsit?
3. Quid plūribus praesentibus cōnsiderāre nōlēbat?
4. Ex quō sōlō quaesīvit?
5. Quid ex eō quaesīvit?
6. Ā quibus item Caesar quaesīvit?
7. Quālis erat Dumnorīx?
8. Cūr erat summā grātiā apud plēbem?
9. Quid redimēbat?
10. Quid magnopere auxerat?
11. Quid circum sē habēbat?
12. Ubi plūrimum poterat?
13. Quō modō potentiam in fīnitimīs auxerat?
14. Cūr Rōmānōs ōdit?

274. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

right hand, **dextra, -ae,** f.
suspicion, **suspīciō, -ōnis,** f.
distinguished, **ēgregius, -a, -um**
common crowd, **vulgus, -i,** n.
notice, observe, **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus**
lessen, decrease, weaken, **minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus**
speak, talk, converse, **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**
avoid, escape, **vīto, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus**

Caesar Dīviciācum ad Sē Vocat

275. Satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Dubitābat tamen quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et eum certiōrem facit quid dē Dumnorīge cognōverit.

Dīviciācus prō Dumnorīge Obsecrat

276. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. Addidit: "Quamquam opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur, ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commoveor. Sī quid eī abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneō, omnēs exīstimābunt meā voluntāte factum esse; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur."

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat; quae in sē reprehendat, ostendit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācī frātris causā condōnāre dīcit.

causae (1), part. gen., depending on **satis**, *sufficient cause*.
iūstitia (5), **-ae**, f., *justice*.
complexus (8), **-a, -um**, *embracing*.
nē quid gravius (9), *nothing of a severe nature* (lit., *too severe*).
nervus (10), **-ī**, m., *strength;* in plur., *energy, power*.
perniciēs (11), **-iēi**, f., *ruin, undoing*.
exīstimātiō (12), **-ōnis**, f., *esteem*.
fleō (17), **-ēre, flēvī, flētus**, *weep*.
prēndō (18), **-ere, -dī, prēnsus**, *take hold of*.
cōnsōlor (18), **-ārī, -ātus sum**, *console*.

277. Indirect Question. — An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

He informs Diviciacus what he has learned, **Dīviciācum certiōrem facit quid cognōverit.**

COMPOSITION

278. Write the following in Latin:

1. Caesar learned from Liscus what Dumnorix was doing. 2. Caesar thought he had sufficient cause for punishing (why he should punish) him. 3. Diviciacus will ask Caesar what he intends to do. 4. The Gauls knew what their leaders were doing. 5. Did Caesar know what they were doing? 6. Caesar shows Diviciacus what he criticizes in (regard to) his brother.

QUESTIONNAIRE

279. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar arbitrātur?
2. Quid eum dēterret?
3. Quālis erat Dīviciācus?
4. Quid Caesar fēcit?
5. Quid Dīviciācus fēcit?
6. Quid Dīviciācus dīxit?
7. Quō modō Dumnorīx opibus utēbātur?
8. Quā rē id fēcit?
9. Quid dīxit vulgus exīstimātūrum esse?
10. Quid verēbātur?
11. Quid fēcit Caesar?
12. Quid dīxit?
13. Quem ad sē vocāvit?
14. Quid eum monuit?
15. Quā dē causā Caesar Dumnorīgem condōnāverat?

280. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fugitive, **fugitīvus, -ī,** m. *battle line,* **aciēs, -ēī,** f.
enroll, write together, **cōnscrībō, -ere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus**
draw up, arrange, **īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus**
take a stand, halt, stop, **cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī**
hold up under, withstand, **sustineō, -ēre, sustinuī, sustentus**
depart, withdraw, go away, **discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessūrus**

Caesar Bibracte Iter Vertit

281. Eōdem diē T. Labiēnum, lēgātum montem occupāre iussit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvīgintī aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar atque Hostēs Cōpiās Edūcunt

282. Cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocāvit; sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

postrīdie eius diēī (2), (*on the morrow of this day*) *the next day.*
superaret (3), *there remained.*
cōpiōsus (4), **-a, -um,** *well supplied.*
prōspiciō (6), **-ere, -spexī, -spectus,** *provide for.*
interclūdō (10), **-ere, -clūsī, -clūsus,** *might be cut off.*
in colle mediō (15), *half way up the hill.*
sarcinae (18), **-ārum,** f., *packs* (of individual soldiers).
cōnfertus (21), **-a, -um,** *dense, crowded.*
reiciō (21), **-ere, -iēci, -iectus,** *hurl back, repel, repulse.*

283. The Prefix *Dis-*. — **Dis-** (**dī** before *d*, *g*, *e*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v*) is an inseparable prefix, meaning *asunder*, *apart*, or *away*.

They thought the Romans were drawing away from them, **Rōmānōs ā sē discēdere exīstimābant.**

Caesar sent the ambassadors away, **Caesar lēgātōs dīmīsit.**

EXERCISES

284. Explain the derivation of the following:

digress	divert	describe	dispute
dilate	disect	dispose	distribute

285. Form English words from the following:

dī-mittō	dis-currō	dis-sentiō	dis-trahō
dī-scrībō	dis-rumpō	di-stō	dis-tribuō

QUESTIONNAIRE

286. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar prīmus fēcit?
2. Quid postrīdiē fēcit?
3. Quid fierī oportēbat?
4. Cūr Caesar iter convertit?
5. Quō īvit?
6. Quā dē causā?
7. Quāle erat Bibracte?
8. Quid exīstimāvit?
9. Quid Helvētiī exīstimābant?
10. Quid fēcērūnt?
11. Quid cōnfīdēbant?
12. Quid fēcit Caesar?
13. Quā rē equitātum praemīsit?
14. Ubi aciem īnstrūxit?

287. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

left hand, **sinistra, -ae,** f.
exhausted, **dēfessus, -a, -um**
hindrance, **impedīmentum, -i,** n.
wound, **vulnus, -eris,** n.
raise up, take away, remove, **tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**
look closely, observe, perceive, **cōnspicor, -ārī, cōnspicātus sum**
come up to, advance, approach, **succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**
bring in, carry forward, advance, **īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**

Caesar in Hostēs Impetum Facit

288. Caesar prīmum suō equō remōtō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs nostrī in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, ferrum sē īnflexit, scūta ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō bracchiō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

Bōiī et Tulingī Helvētiīs Auxilium Ferunt

289. Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

phalanx (4), **-angis,** f., *phalanx.*
perfringō (5), **-ere, -frēgī, -frāctus,** *break through.*
disiciō (5), **-ere, -iēcī, -iectus,** *dislodge.*
dēstrictīs (5), *drawn,* from **dēstringō.**
conligō (8), **-āre,** *fasten together.*
sē īnflēxit (8), *became bent.*
ēvellō (8), **-ere, ēvellī, ēvulsus,** *draw out.*
iactō (10), **-āre,** *toss about.*
bracchium (10), **-ī,** n., *arm.*
praeoptō (10), **-āre,** *prefer, choose rather.*
nūdus (11), **-a, -um,** *unprotected.*
redintegrō (19), **-āre,** *renew.*

290. The Dative of Purpose. — The dative is used to denote the purpose or service to which something may be put. This dative is frequently accompanied by a second dative, which denotes the person to whom the service is rendered. It is called the *dative of reference.*

Their shields were a hindrance to the barbarians, **scūta barbarīs impedīmentō fuērunt.**

COMPOSITION

291. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The javelins were of (for) great use to our men. 2. The Boii had been left as a defense to the baggage. 3. Having removed his horse, Caesar made the danger equal for all. 4. Their transfixed shields were a great hindrance to the Gauls. 5. The third line had been drawn up as an aid to the second.

QUESTIONNAIRE

292. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis equum suum remōvit?
2. Quā rē id fēcit?
3. Quid Caesar sustulit?
4. Quō modō phalanx perfrācta est?
5. Quid mīlitēs fēcērunt?
6. Quid Gallīs magnō impedīmentō erat?
7. Quid fēcērunt barbarī?
8. Quārē pedem referēbant?
9. Quō ībant?
10. Quid tum accidit?
11. Ubi Bōiī relictī erant?
12. Quā rē relictī erant?
13. Quid Helvētiī fēcērunt?
14. Quid fēcērunt Rōmānī?

293. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

evening, **vesper, -ī** or **-is,** m.
three days, **trīduum, -ī,** n.
no one, nobody, **nēmō,** c.
surrender, **dēditiō, -ōnis,** f.
hurl, throw, put together, **coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iēctus**
wound, **vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus**
obey, submit to, appear, **pareō, parēre, paruī**
throw against, put in the way, **obiciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus**

Ad Multam Noctem Pugnātum Est

294. Ita hōc proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque tēla subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Helvētiī in Fīnēs Lingonum Sē Cōnferunt

295. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum convēnissent flentēsque pācem petīssent, Caesar eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussit, atque pāruērunt.

ācriter pugnātum est (1), *a spirited battle was fought.*

possent (2), explain the mode.

pugnātum sit (5), explain the mode.

āversus (6), **-a, -um,** *fleeing.*

ad multam noctem (6), *till late at night.*

raeda (9), **-ae,** f., *wagon.*

captus est (12), agrees with the nearest of its two subjects.

eā tōtā nocte (14), *during this whole night.*

sepultūra (17), **-ae,** f., *burial.*

occīsus (17), **-a, -um,** *fallen, slain.*

296. Idiomatic Uses of *Ad.* — In certain idiomatic phrases **ad** has the meaning of *in the direction of*, *in the neighborhood of*, *until*, *until near*, or *near*.

The battle was fought till late at night in the neighborhood of the baggage, **ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est.**

COMPOSITION

297. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When the battle had been fought until near evening, a part of the enemy retreated in the direction of the carts. 2. It was fought in the neighborhood of the baggage until late at night. 3. At last our men got possession of the baggage. 4. Then the enemy began to go away. 5. And they did not let up the march until they came to the territories of the Lingones.

QUESTIONNAIRE

298. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quam diū pugnātum est?
2. Quō modō?
3. Quī impetum sustinēre nōn poterānt?
4. Quid hostēs fēcērunt?
5. Quāle vallum hostēs obiēcērunt?
6. Unde tēla coniēcērunt?
7. Quī captī sunt?
8. Quot superfuērunt?
9. Quid iī fēcērūnt?
10. Quandō iērunt?
11. Quō sē contulērunt?
12. Quandō eō vēnērunt?
13. Quandō nostrī secūtī sunt?
14. Quid hostēs petīvērunt?

299. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

demand, **poscō, poscere, poposcī**
hunt up, seek out, find, **conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus**
flee precipitately, flee, **perfugiō, -ere, perfūgī**
bring together, collect, transport, **cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**
depart, withdraw, **discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus**
return, go back, **redeō, redīre, rediī, reditus**

Caesar Helvētiōs in Fīnēs Suōs Remittit

300. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia sex ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, prīmā nocte ē castrīs ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent, et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

Boiōs in Haeduīs Cōnsīdere Patitur

301. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum et sociōrum mīlium CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

facerent (8), *provide.*
eā maximē ratiōne (9), *primarily for the reason.*
quod nōluit (10), *that he did not wish;* a noun clause, in apposition with **ratiōne.**
vacō (10), **-āre,** *to be unoccupied.*
bonitās (11), **-ātis,** f., *fertility.*
petentibus Haeduīs (14), *at the request of the Haeduans.*
conlocō (15), **-āre,** *settle.*
relātae (17) (from **referō**), *turned over.*
nōminātim (17), *separately.*
senex (19), **senis,** m., *old man.*
cēnsus (22), **-ūs,** m., *enumeration.*

302. Temporal Clauses with *Postquam*, *Ūbi*, etc. — Temporal clauses with **postquam**, *after;* **ubi**, *when;* **cum prīmum, simul, simul atque** (or **ac**), *as soon as*, usually take the perfect indicative, which should frequently be translated by the past perfect indicative.

After Caesar had arrived, he demanded hostages, **postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.**

COMPOSITION

303. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. As soon as he arrived, he ordered the fugitives to be hunted up. 2. After they had heard his commands (**imperium**) they said they would obey. 3. Caesar ordered the Helvetians to rebuild (restore) the villages they had burned up. 4. He permitted the Boii to settle in the territory of the Haeduans. 5. As soon as these things had been done, Caesar ordered an enumeration to be made.

QUESTIONNAIRE

304. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis pervēnit?
2. Quid Caesar poposcit?
3. Quī pāgus ēvāsit?
4. Quot hominēs ēvāsērunt?
5. Quō sē contulērunt?
6. Quid Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit?
7. Quid Helvētiīs imperāvit?
8. Quā ratiōne id imperāvit?
9. Ubi Bōiī conlocāvērunt?
10. Quid in castrīs Helvētiōrum repertum est?
11. Quot hominēs exierant?
12. Quot domum rediērunt?

305. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

meeting, council, **concilium, -ī,** n.
uncivilized, **barbarus, -a, -um**
common, general, **commūnis, -e**
wild, fierce, **ferus, -a, -um**
proclaim, announce publicly, **indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus**
summon, call for, **arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus**
blame, reproach, criticize, **recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus**

DĒ BELLŌ GERMĀNICŌ

Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad Caesarem Veniunt

306. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt.

Dīviciācus Loquitur

307. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterīus Arvernōs. Hī cum dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et XX mīlium numerum.'

Addidit haec: 'Cum hīs Haeduōs armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret.

grātulor (2), **-ārī, -ātus,** *express one's pleasure, congratulate.*
cōnsēnsus (5), **-ūs,** m., *consent.*
prīncipātus (8), **-ūs,** m., *supremacy.*
mercēs (11), **-ēdis,** f., *pay, wages;* **mercēde,** abl. of means.
cōpiās (13), *resources, wealth.*
adamō (14), **-āre,** *covet.*
obstringō (19), **-ere, -inxī, -ictus,** *bind.*
recūsātūrōs (21), *would not make complaints.*

308. The Prefix *Re* (*Red-*). — **Re(red-)** is an inseparable prefix, which means *back*, *again*, *anew*, or *against*.

They said they would not demand their hostages back, **dīxērunt sē obsidēs nōn repetītūrōs esse.**

Diviciacus had gone back to Gaul, **Dīviciācus in Galliam redierat.**

EXERCISES

309. Explain the force of the prefixes in the following:

recēdō	reclāmō	recognitiō	redeō
recipiō	recognōscō	reddō	reditus

310. Explain the derivation of the following:

recreate	redeem	refer	remit
recreation	redemption	reference	remittance
report	repute	repel	reserve
reporter	reputation	repulse	reservation

QUESTIONNAIRE

311. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid erat cōnfectum?
2. Quī ad Caesarem vēnērunt?
3. Quā rē vēnērunt?
4. Quid petīvērunt?
5. Quid cōnstituērunt?
6. Quis prō hīs locūtus est?
7. Quot factiōnēs erant in Galliā tōtā?
8. Quī eārum prīncipātum tenēbant?
9. Quā rē Germānī trānsierant?
10. Quot prīmō trānsierant?
11. Cūr posteā trānsierant?
12. Quid Haeduī āmīserant?
13. Quid Sēquanīs acciderat?

312. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

month, **mēnsis, -is,** m.
slavery, **servitūs, -ūtis,** f.
from there, thence, **inde,** adv.
little by little, gradually, **paulātim**
settle, encamp, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessus**
promise, **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
demand, **postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus**

Dīviācus Orātiōnem Continuat

313. Item dixit: 'Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, crūdēliter imperāre. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī.'

Caesar Quicquam Suscipiendum Putat

314. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre in Galliam populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

peius . . . accidisse (1), *it had turned out worse for*, etc.
dēcēdō (5), **-ere, -cessī, -cessus**, *withdraw, depart.*
ut semel (8), *as soon as.*
īrācundus (10), **-a, -um**, *irritable.*
temerārius (10), **-a, -um**, *rash.*
habitā (13), *having been made, after this speech.*
diciō (17), **-ōnis**, f., *domination.*

315. The Dative of Apparent Agent. — After the gerundive participle the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests. It is translated like an ablative of agent.

Caesar thought (this matter ought to be considered by him) he should consider this matter, **Caesar eam rem sibi cōgitandam esse putābat.**

COMPOSITION

316. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Gauls thought their territories should not be taken by the Germans. 2. Caesar promised that the matter would receive his consideration (would be a care to him). 3. He thought it should be carefully considered by him. 4. He did not wish the Germans to become permanent in Gaul. 5. Diviciacus could not endure the arrogance of Ariovistus. 6. He went to Rome to seek aid.

QUESTIONNAIRE

317. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī erant victī?
2. Quī eōs vīcerant?
3. Quibus peius acciderat?
4. Quid Ariovistus iusserat?
5. Quō modō imperāverat?
6. Quālis erat Ariovistus?
7. Quī ēius imperia nōn diūtius sustinēre poterant?
8. Quid Caesar pollicētur?
9. Quid Germānī facere cōnsuēscēbant?
10. Quid Caesar putābat?
11. Quid eum hortābātur?
12. Quid Caesar timēbat?
13. Quid nōn ferendum est?
14. Cūr nōn ferendum est?

318. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

right, law, **iūs, iūris,** n.
tribute, **stīpendium, -ī,** n.
manner, fashion, **modus, -ī,** m.
since, as, **quoniam**
go under, approach, undergo, **subeō, subīre, subiī, subitus**
conquer, defeat, **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**
come together, engage, fight, **congredior, congredī, congressus sum**

Ariovistus Caesarī Īnsolenter Respondet

319. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret. Hīs Ariovistus respondit: "Iūs est bellī ut quī vīcerint, eīs quōs vīcerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēvit. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescrībō quem ad modum suō iūre ūtātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impedīrī.

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stīpendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit cum suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduī stīpendium quotannīs pendant. Cum volet, congrediātur; intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."

Trēverī autem pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse et Rhēnum trānsīre conārī nūntiāvērunt. Hāc rē audītā, Caesar magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar Vesontiōnem Properat

320. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Hūc Caesar igitur magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

placeō (1), **-ēre, -uī, -itus,** *please, seem best,* with dat. of ind. obj.
arbitrium (5), **-ī,** n., *judgment.*
praescrībō (6), **-ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus,** *direct, dictate.*
stīpendiārius (10), **-a, -um,** *tributary;* plur., *tributaries, tribute payers.*
dēterior (12), **-ius,** *less, poorer.*
pendō (12), **-ēre, pependī, pēnsus,** *pay.*
exercitātus (14), **-a, -um,** *drilled.*

321. ***Ad*** **in Phrases of Manner.** — With words denoting manner, measure, or rule **ad** is used to mean *in accordance with, according to.*

I do not prescribe how (after what manner) the Roman people shall exercise its right, **nōn praescrībō, quem ad modum populus Rōmānus iūre suō ūtātur.**

COMPOSITION

322. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Ariovistus ruled the conquered as (according to whatever method) he wished. 2. Caesar is not accustomed to rule in accordance with the dictation of another. 3. Ariovistus says he will rule his tributaries according to his own judgment. 4. It seemed best to Caesar to send ambassadors to Ariovistus. 5. Let Caesar attack the Germans if he wishes. 6. He knows that they are very well drilled.

QUESTIONNAIRE

323. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesarī placuit?
2. Quid est iūs bellī?
3. Quem ad modum populus Rōmānus imperābat?
4. Quid nōn fēcit Ariōvistus?
5. Quid oportet Rōmānōs nōn facere?
6. Quī stūpendāriī erant?
7. Quid fēcit adventus Caesaris?
8. Quid Haeduī faciēbant?
9. Quālēs erant Germānī?
10. Quid Trēverī dīxērunt?
11. Quid fēcit Caesar?
12. Quid eī nūntiātum est?
13. Quid exīstimābat Caesar?

324. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

supplies, **commeātus, -ūs,** m.
trader, **mercātor, -ōris,** m.
body, **corpus, -oris,** n.
eye, **oculus, -ī,** n.
intellect, mind, **mēns, mentis,** f.
nightly, of night, **noctūrnus, -a, -um**
disturb, alarm, **perturbō, -turbāre, -turbāvī, -turbātus**
change greatly, alter, **convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus**

Multī Mīlitēs Rōmānī Germānōs Timent

325. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

Nōnnūllī Testāmenta Obsīgnant

326. Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs suum fātum querēbantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur.

Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: "sī praetereā nēmō sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, mihique ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est.

percontātiō (2), **-ōnis,** f., *questioning, inquiry.*
vōcibus (3), *replies, stories.*
praedicō (5), **-āre,** *declare.*
aciēs (6), **-ēī,** f., *flash, gleam.*
mediocriter (8), *in small degree.*
ortus est (10), *originated (with).*
fingō (13), **-ere, fīnxī, fictus,** *keep, change, control.*
tenēre (13), *to hold back, restrain.*
quēror (14), **-ī, quēstus,** *lament.*
ālacritās (22), **-atis,** f., *eagerness.*

327. Indirect Statement. — An indirect statement has its verb in the infinitive mode, with subject accusative.

They say they saw (have seen) the Germans, **dīcunt sē Germānōs vīdisse.**

COMPOSITION

328. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Our men asked the merchants about the Germans. 2. They said the Germans were of great size. 3. They said they could not bear their looks. 4. Caesar said he had brought the tribunes along for friendship's sake. 5. They thought they were going to be killed. 6. Caesar told them he would go alone. 7. The tenth legion said it was willing to follow.

QUESTIONNAIRE

329. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quā rē Caesar morātur?
2. Quālēs erant Germāni?
3. Quī ea dīcēbant?
4. Quid Gallī nōn facere poterant?
5. Quid accidit?
6. Ubī timor ortus est?
7. Cūr cum Caesare multī vēnerant?
8. Cūr hī timēbant?
9. Quid hī nōn facere poterant?
10. Quid fēcērunt?
11. Quid factum est?
12. Quid dīxit Caesar?
13. Quid tum accidit?
14. Quid innātum est?
15. Quis eam ōrātiōnem habuit?
16. Quid accidit?

330. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

conference, **conloquium, -ī,** n.
duty, **officium, -ī,** n.
habit, custom, **cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** f.
duty, task, service, offering, gift, **mūnus, -eris,** n.
just, right, fair, **iūstus, -a, -um**
name (day), *appoint,* **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus**
send back, relax, let go, **remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**
turn about, change, **convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus**

Caesar Ariovistum Alloquitur

331. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum dē colloquiō mittit. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus et locus fuit plānitiēs aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī adtulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset?

Ariovistus Caesarī Respondet

332. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: "Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittētur et dēditīciī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetiī."

commemorō (8), **-āre,** *mention.*
cōnsultum (14), **-ī,** n., *decree.*
quotiēns (14), *how often, as often as.*
honōrifica (14), *complementary.*
in eōs (14), *in their behalf.*
suī nihil dēperdere (16), *should lose nothing (of their own) of what they had.*

333. The Impersonal Construction. — The impersonal construction is frequently used in Latin when the action is more important than the subject.

When they had come there, **ubi eō ventum est** (*when it was come there*).

COMPOSITION

334. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When they had come there on the seventh day, they pitched camp. 2. When he learned these things Caesar appointed a place for a meeting. 3. When he had come there, Caesar spoke briefly. 4. He showed Ariovistus what the senate had decreed. 5. The custom of the Roman people was such that he could not allow his allies to lose their fields. 6. Ariovistus replied that the friendship of the Roman people ought to be of advantage to him.

QUESTIONNAIRE

335. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Dē quā rē Caesar certior factus est?
2. Ubi erat Ariovistus?
3. Quid is fēcit?
4. Quid fēcit Caesar?
5. Quī diēs dictus est?
6. Quis prīmus ōrātiōnem habuit?
7. Quid is dīxit?
8. Quid paucīs contigerat?
9. Quī dēfendendī erant?
10. Quā rē dēfendendī erant?
11. Quālis erat cōnsuētūdō populī Rōmānī?
12. Quid fēcit Ariovistus?
13. Quid dīxit?

336. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

distinguished, **amplus, -a, -um**
unbroken, **continuus, -a, -ūm**
of cavalry, **equester, -tris, -tre**
convenient, fit, **commodus, -a, -um**
observe, perceive, see, **cōnspiciō, -ere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus**
construct, draw up, equip, **īnstruō, -ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus**
bring up, transport, **supportō, -portāre, -portāvī, -portātus**

Ariovistus Nūntiōs Caesaris in Catēnās Conicit

337. Bīduō post Ariovistus alterum conloquium petīvit. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: "Quid ad mē vēnistis? an speculandī causā?" Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō contendit.

Caesar Castra Alia Mūnit

338. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

utēbātur (3), *enjoyed*. What case is used with **ūtor**?
apud sē in castrīs (4), *in his camp*.
conclāmāvit (5), *cried out*.
quid (5), *why*.
an . . . causā (6), *is it for the purpose of?*
cōnantēs (6), *when they attempted*.
catēna (7), **-ae,** f., *chain, fetter*.
interclūdō (11), **-ere, -clūdī, -clūsus,** *cut off*.
quō in locō (16), *where*.
sexcentī (17), **-ae, -a,** *six hundred*.
castrīs (18), abl. of place; prep. omitted.

339. *Cum* in Descriptive Clauses. — **Cum** clauses that are used to describe the conditions under which an action takes place use the past progressive or past perfect subjunctive.

When Ariovistus saw them in camp, he shouted out, **cum Ariovistus eōs in castrīs vīdisset, conclāmāvit.**

COMPOSITION

340. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When the legates came into the camp of Ariovistus, he put them in chains. 2. When they attempted to speak he prevented them. 3. When Ariovistus had encamped in another place, Caesar made a second camp. 4. He did this so that his supplies would not be cut off. 5. Caesar left two legions to defend the new camp.

QUESTIONNAIRE

341. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quōs Caesar mīsit?
2. Quō eōs mīsit?
3. Cūr Mētium ūnā mīsit?
4. Quid fēcit Ariovistus?
5. Quō praesente id fēcit?
6. Quid postrīdiē Ariovistus fēcit?
7. Quō cōnsiliō id fēcit?
8. Quid fēcit Caesar?
9. Quis castrīs exercitum continuit?
10. Quid tum fēcit Caesar?
11. Ubi castra fēcit?
12. Quālī aciē ad eum locum vēnit?
13. Quam longē ab castrīs Germānōrum aberat?
14. Quī castra mūnīvērunt?

342. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

advantage, profit, **ūsus, -ūs,** m.
as far as, all the way, **ūsque**
fight, fight it out, **dēcertō, dēcertāre, dēcertāvī, dēcertātus**
discover, learn, **reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus**
plan around, surround, encircle, **circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus**
give up, surrender, **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus**
be strong, have strength, **valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus**

Caesar cūr Ariovistus nōn Dēcertet Cognōscit

343. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'

Caesar Proelium Committit

344. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.

Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae eōs ad proelium proficīscentēs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit.

quaereret (1), explain the mode.
sors (4), **sortis,** f., *by casting lots.*
ex ūsū (5), *of use.*
necne (5), *or not.*
fās (6), n., *divine will.*
ālārii (9), **-ōrum,** *auxiliaries* (lit., *those of the wings*).
generātim (15), adv., *tribe by tribe.*
eō (17), *there,* that is, on the carts.
passus (18), **-a, -um,** *outstretched,* p. p. of **pandō.**
testis (21), **-is,** c., *witness.*

345. The Suffix *-ārius*. — The suffix **-ārius** is added to the Latin roots to form adjectives which denote *pertaining to*. The corresponding English suffix is *-ary*, but sometimes *-arious*.

ālārius, *pertaining to a wing.*
legiōnārius, *pertaining to a legion, legionary.*

EXERCISES

346. By use of the suffix *-ārius* make adjectives from the following:

honor, -ōris	vīsiō, -ōnis	liber, librī	rota, -ae
tempus, -oris	adversus, -a, -um	grex, gregis	contrā
perūnia, -ae	sēcrētus, -a, -um	littera, -ae	legiō, -ōnis

347. Explain the derivation of the following:

arbitrary	stationary	stipendiary	salutary
momentary	subsidiary	commentary	dictionary

QUESTIONNAIRE

348. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ex quibus Caesar quaesīvit?
2. Quid ex hīs quaesīvit?
3. Quid repperit?
4. Quae cōnsuētūdō erat apud Germanōs?
5. Quid mātrēs dīxērunt?
6. Quid fēcit Caesar?
7. Quālem aciem fēcit?
8. Quot castra Caesarī erant?
9. Quibus ad speciem utēbātur?
10. Quō accessit?
11. Quid Ariovistus fēcit?
12. Quō modō suōs cōnstituērunt?

349. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

signal, **sīgnum, -ī,** n.
back, **tergum, -ī,** n.
summer, **aestās, -ātis,** f.
very many, **complūrēs, -ia**
very few, **perpaucī, -ae, -a**
about, **circiter,** adv.
cease, stop, **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus**
come upon, find, get, **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum**

Germānī Magnā cum Caede Pulsī Sunt

350. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Caesar Exercitum in Hīberna Dēdūcit

351. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

prōcurrō (2), **-currere, -currī, -cursus**, *run forward, charge.*
comminus (4), adv., *hand to hand.*
phalanga (6), acc. sing., *phalanx.*
īnsiliō (7), **-ēre, -uī**, *leap in.*
revellō (7), **-ere, -vellī, -vulsus**, *pull away, tear off.*
trānō (11), **-āre**, *swim.*
linter (11), **-tris**, *skiff.*
dēligō (13), **-āre**, *tie, moor.*
mātūrē (19), **mātūrius**, *early, earlier.*
praepōnō (21), **-ere, -posuī, -positus**, *put in command of.*
ad . . . agendōs (22), *to hold court.*

352. Clauses of Result. — Result is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn.** Observe the sequence of tenses:

He works so hard that he will excel, **ita labōrat ut praecēdat.**
He worked so hard that he excelled, **ita labōrāvit ut praecēdēret.**
He worked so hard that he won the prize, **ita labōrāvit ut praemium abstulerit.**

COMPOSITION

353. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The signal was given so (**tam**) unexpectedly that the Germans were terrified. 2. They advanced so quickly, however, that our men threw their spears aside. 3. Our men fought so spiritedly with their swords that the Germans turned and fled. 4. They were so frightened that they did not stop fleeing until they had crossed the Rhine. 5. Two wars having been finished in one summer, Caesar leads the army into winter quarters.

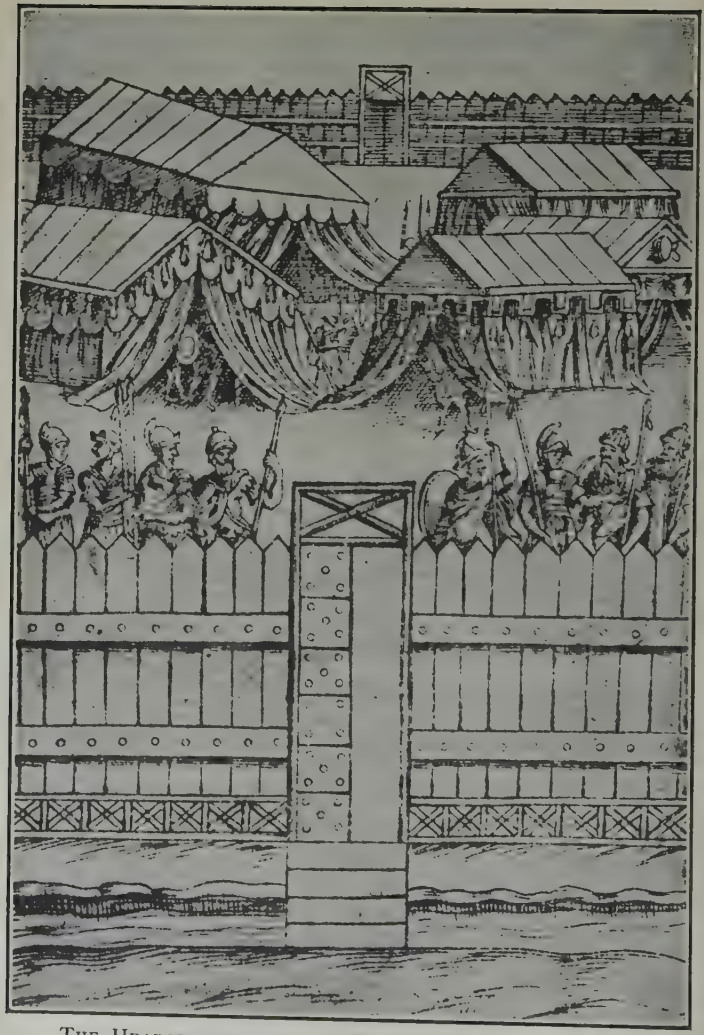
QUESTIONNAIRE

354. Answer in complete Latin sentences.

1. Quī impetum fēcērunt?
2. Quid iacī nōn poterat?
3. Quid Germānī fēcērunt?
4. Quī in phalanga īnsiluērunt?
5. Quī scūta manibus revellērunt?
6. Quō modō volnerāvērunt?
7. Quī tērga vertērunt?
8. Quō iī fugērunt?
9. Quam longē aberat Rhēnus?
10. Quid perpaucī fēcērunt?
11. Quid fēcit Ariovistus?
12. Quī in animō Rhēnum trānsīre habēbant?

355. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

band, group, **manus, -ūs,** f.
swear together, conspire, **coniūrō, -iūrāre, -iūrāvī, -iūrātus**
incite, stir up, tempt, **sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātus**
begin, **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus**
partly, in part, **partim,** adv.



THE HEADQUARTERS OF THE COMMANDER IN A FORTIFIED ROMAN CAMP (*castra mūnīta*)

(From *De la Religion des Anciens Romains*)

COMMENTĀRIUS SECUNDUS

When Caesar was appointed governor of Gaul, it must be remembered, only a very small part of what is now France was under Roman sway. The Province was a small section in the southeastern portion of Gaul about one seventh the size of modern France. It was Caesar who extended Roman authority over the remainder of Gaul. In the first year of his governorship he had made a beginning by thwarting the intended migration of the Helvetians and by expelling of the Germans.

At the close of his successful campaign against the Germans, Caesar tells us that he went into Cisalpine Gaul to hold court. This was a plan that Caesar followed every winter during his service in Gaul except one. He wished to be near the city, that he might the more readily learn what was going on there during his absence. Roman law prohibited a proconsul of a province, in command of an army, from entering the city during his term of office.

In the spring of 57 B.C., while Caesar was in Nearer (Cisalpine) Gaul, now northern Italy, rumors and reports were brought to him to the effect that the Belgians were forming a league, with the intention of expelling the Romans from Farther Gaul. Therefore Caesar enlisted two new legions, and, as soon as the season was far enough advanced to supply him with grain and fodder, set out for Farther Gaul, proceeding into that territory that he had rendered tributary to Rome the preceding year. Learning that the rumors that had reached him were well founded, he did not wait for the Belgians to attack, but began an aggressive warfare against them.

Step by step he proceeded, carrying forward the work of subjugation until all Belgium had been reduced to Roman rule. So great was the prestige of Caesar, as a result of this campaign, that nations beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors to him, offering obedience to Rome.

Omnēs Belgae contrā Populum Rōmānum Coniūrant

356. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Verentur nē Exercitus Noster ad Eōs Addūcātur

357. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Legiōnibus Novīs Cōnscrīptīs Caesar ad Exercitum Venit

358. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit.

hās esse (6), *these were.*
quod (6, 8), *that.*
inveterāscō (10), **-ere, -veterāvī,** *become established, get a foothold.*
novīs imperiīs (12), *a revolution.*
ad . . . hominēs (13), *for hiring men* (as soldiers).
volgō (14), *commonly, everywhere.*
initā aestāte (18), *summer having begun, at the beginning of summer.*

359. The Suffix *-ium*. — Latin nouns denoting action or the result of an action are formed by adding **-ium** to the base of verbs. Equivalent English suffixes include *-er*, *-tor*, *-y*, and silent *-e*.

Verb:	**imperō**, *command*	**gaudeō**, *rejoice*
Base:	**imper-**	**gaud-**
Noun:	**imperium**, *rule*	**gaudium**, *joy, rejoicing*

EXERCISES

360. Explain the derivation and meaning of the following:

auxilium	concilium	praemium	beneficium
cōnsilium	praesidium	initium	stīpendium

361. Explain the derivation of the following English words:

colloquy	itinerary	silence	office
subsidy	prodigy	edifice	sacrifice

QUESTIONNAIRE

362. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi erat Caesar?
2. Quā dē causā?
3. Quid accidit?
4. Quā rātiōne certior factus est?
5. Quid dīxērunt nūntiī?
6. Quanta pars Galliae est Belgica?
7. Quid verēbantur Belgae?
8. Ā quibus sollictābantur?
9. Quā dē causā?
10. Cuī studēbant Gallī?
11. Quī regēbant?
12. Quā rē hī Rōmānōs verēbantur?
13. Quid fēcit Caesar?
14. Quō tempore?
15. Quem cum eīs mīsit?

363. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

band, **manus, -ūs,** f.
command, order, **imperātum, -ī,** n.
about, **circiter,** adv.
indeed, but, **vērō**
quickly, more quickly, most quickly, **celeriter, celerius, celerrimē**
entrust, surrender, **permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissus**
settle, encamp, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessūrus**

Caesar Senonibus Negōtium Dat

364. Dat negōtium Senonibus quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quin ad eōs proficīscerētur.

Remī Sē in Fidem Populī Rōmānī Committunt

365. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.'

Cum ab eīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: 'Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint.

gerantur (2), explain the mode.
cognōscant (2), explain the mode.
manūs cōgī (4), *that bands were being collected.*
dubitandum (5), *he should not hesitate* (lit., *it must not be hesitated*).
dē imprōvīsō (6), *unexpectedly.*
sē (8) . . . **permittere** (9), *that they surrendered.*
cōnsēnsisse (10), translate as if it were **cōnsēnserant.**
quīn . . . cōnsentīrent (17), *from conspiring.*

366. ***Nōn Dubitō* with *Quīn*.** — A verb of doubting with **nōn** is followed by **quīn** (*but*), and a substantive clause in the subjunctive.

He did not hesitate to (*did not doubt that, etc.*) *set out,* **nōn dubitābat quīn proficīscerētur.**

COMPOSITION

367. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Caesar employed (gave a job to) the Senones to find out what the Belgians were doing. From them he learned that an army was being mobilized (brought into one place). Having learned this, he did not hesitate, but setting out, came to the territories of the Belgians. When he arrived there unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors to him to say that they entrusted themselves to the power of the Roman people.

QUESTIONNAIRE

368. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quāle negōtium Caesar Senonibus dedit?
2. Quid hī nūntiāvērunt?
3. Quī manūs cōgēbant?
4. Quid in ūnum locum condūcēbātur?
5. Quid Caesar exīstīmāvit?
6. Quō pervēnit?
7. Quō modō eō pervēnit?
8. Quī ad eum vēnērunt?
9. Quī proximī Gallīs erant?
10. Cūr lēgātī vēnērunt?
11. Quōrum in fidem sē committēbant?
12. Quid dīxērunt sē factūrōs esse?
13. Quid Caesar quaesīvit?
14. Quid repperit?

369. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

command, rule, **imperium, -ī,** n.
desire, will, **voluntās, -ātis,** f.
hundred, **centum,** indecl. adj.
general, common, **commūnis, -e**
much, more, most, **multum, plūs, plūrimum,** adv.
powerful, more powerful, most powerful, **potēns, potentior, potentissimus**
complete, equip, **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**

Bellovacī Plūrimum Possunt

370. 'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta' Rēmī dīcēbant, 'propterea quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.

Caesar Reperit Quid in Bellō Reliquī Belgae Possint

371. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī (cōnficere posse) ad XL mīlia.'

explōrāta (1), *investigated, spied out.*

propinquitās (2), **-ātis,** f., *blood relationship.*

plūrimum (5) . . . **valēre** (6), *were the strongest.*

armāta (7) . . . **centum,** *a hundred thousand armed (men).*

ēligō (7), **ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus,** *pick, choose;* **ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā,** *sixty thousand picked men.*

iūstitia (14), **-ae,** f., *fairness.*

prūdentia (14), **-ae,** f., *discretion.*

ad XL mīlia (22), *about forty thousand.*

372. The Indirect Question. — An indirect question is introduced by an interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb, and takes the subjunctive mode.

The Remi learned how large a number each had promised, **Remi cognōvērunt quantam multitūdinem quisque pollicitus esset.**

COMPOSITION

373. Write the following in Latin:

1. The Remi said they were able to spy everything out on account of their relationship. 2. They had learned how many thousands of armed men each state had promised. 3. They reported that the Bellovaci were the most powerful in influence and in the number of men. 4. On this account they had demanded the command of the entire war. 5. The Suessiones had the most fertile fields.

QUESTIONNAIRE

374. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Remī explōrāverant?
2. Quā rē omnia explōrāta habēbant?
3. Quid cognōverant?
4. Quī plūrimum valēbant?
5. Quot ēlēcta mīlia pollicitī erant?
6. Quid postulāverant?
7. Quī virtūte praecēdēbant?
8. Quī eīs fīnitimī erant?
9. Quālēs agrōs possidēbant?
10. Quis rēx fuerat?
11. Quālis is fuerat?
12. Cui imperium tōtīus bellī dētulerant?
13. Quot oppida habēbant Bellovacī?
14. Quid pollicitī erant?

375. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

garrison, **praesidium, -ī,** n. *rampart,* **vallum, -ī,** n.
pursue, follow up, address, **prōsequor, prōsequī, prōsecūtus sum**
clash, fight, **cōnflīgō, cōnflīgere, cōnflīxī, cōnflīctus**
drive together, collect, compel, **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus**
give back, restore, render, **reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus**

Caesar ā Diviciācō Auxilium Petit

376. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit: ' Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint.' Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Caesar Locum Idōneum Dēligit et Castra Mūnit

377. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra vāllō fossāque mūnīrī iubet. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.

līberāliter (1), *in a kindly manner.*
obsidēs (3), *as hostages.*
quantō opere (5), *how greatly.*
reī (5) . . . **intersit** (6), *it is to the interest of the state, etc.*
nē (6) . . . **cōnflīgendum sit** (7), supply **sibi,** *that he might not have to fight.*
fierī posse (8), *could be brought about.*
flūmen (12), object of prep. in **trādūcere.**
quae rēs (14), *this movement.*
efficiēbat (17), *made it possible for.*
aegrē . . . est (22), *they held out with difficulty.*

378. *Trāns* in Compounds. — Many transitive verbs compounded with **trāns** take two accusatives, one of which is object of the verb and the other object of the preposition. Intransitive verbs compounded with **trāns** take one object, which is governed by the preposition.

He led the army across the river, **flūmen exercitūm trādūxit.**
He crossed the river, **flūmen trānsgressus est.**

EXERCISES

379. Explain the derivation and meaning:

transfer	transport	transmute	transparent
transgress	transact	transcribe	transitive

380. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When he had crossed the Aisne he pitched the camp there. 2. He did not lead the entire army across the plain. 3. They will carry the baggage across the river to the camp. 4. There was a bridge across this river.

QUESTIONNAIRE

381. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quōs Caesar cohortātur?
2. Quid eōs facere iussit?
3. Quō modō ea fēcērunt?
4. Quid reī pūblicae intererat?
5. Quid Caesar Haeduōs facere cupiēbat?
6. Cūr id fierī cupiēbat?
7. Quid Caesar vīdit?
8. Quō exercitum dūxit?
9. Ubi erat flūmen Axona?
10. Ubi castra posita sunt?
11. Quid ad pontem posuit?
12. Quid hostēs oppugnāvērunt?

382. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

slinger, **funditor, -ōris,** m. — *defender,* **dēfēnsor, -ōris,** m.
archer, **sagittārius, -ī,** m. — *stone,* **lapis, -idis,** m.
widely, more widely, most widely, **ample, amplius, amplissimē**
come up to, advance, **succēdō, succēdere, successī, successus**
take a stand, halt, keep one's position, **cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī**

Gallōrum et Belgārum Eadem est Oppugnātiō

383. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfensōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

Caesar Auxilium Oppidānīs Mittit

384. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milībus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant. Caesar prīmō proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur.

moenia (2), **-ium**, n., *walls.*
subrō (5), **-ere, -ruī, -rūtus,** *undermine, dig under.*
sustinēre nōn posse (11), *it was not possible to hold out.*
quō (16), lit., *where;* transl., *which.*
ā . . . duōbus (18), *less than two miles away.*
fūmus (19), **-ī**, m., *smoke.*
supersēdeō (21), **-ēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus,** *refrain from.*
quid . . . posset (22), (lit., *what he is able*) *how much courage he had.*

385. The Dative of Possessor. — The dative is used with **sum** to complete the predicate and to denote possession.

No one had the power (the power was to no one) to stand on the wall, **in mūrō potestās cōnsistendī erat nūllī.**

COMPOSITION

386. Write the following in Latin:

The Belgians hurled so great a number of stones and weapons that no one had the power to stand on the wall. Then they rushed up to the gates and began to undermine the walls. When night put an end to the fighting Iccius Remus sent a messenger to Caesar to ask aid. About midnight Caesar sent archers and slingers as a reinforcement to the townsmen.

QUESTIONNAIRE

387. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quibus est eadem oppugnātiō?
2. Quid prīmō faciēbant?
3. Quid tum faciēbant?
4. Quot lapidēs coniciēbant?
5. Quid erat nūllī?
6. Quid Iccius noctū fēcit?
7. Quem nūntium mīsit?
8. Quid fēcit Caesar?
9. Quibus ducibus ūsus est?
10. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
11. Quō tum contendērunt?
12. Ubi castra posuērunt?
13. Quid arbitrāris eōs in animō facere habērent?
14. Quam latē ea patēbant?
15. Quid statuit Caesar?
16. Quid perīclitābātur?

388. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

side, flank, **latus, -eris,** n.
swamp, **palūs, -ūdis,** f.
cavalry, **equester, -tris, -tre,** adj.
favorable, **opportūnus, -a, -um**
go back, return, **redeō, redīre, rediī, reditus**
throw down, drive out, dislodge, **dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus**
surround, encircle, **circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus**
draw up, arrange, **īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus**

Caesar Castra Mūnit

389. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Proeliō Equestrī Contenditur

390. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

paululum (3) . . . **ēditus,** *rising gradually.*
tantum (4) . . . **quantum,** *as far as.*
adversus (4), *facing* (the enemy).
aciēs īnstrūcta (5), *a battle formation, line of battle.*
lēniter fastīgātus (6), *with gentle slope.* How literally?
ab lateribus (12), *on the flanks.*
quō (14), *at any point.*
ēductās (16), *having led.* Lit. what?
nōn magna (17), *fair sized.*

391. Assignment. — Learn the declension of the present participle of **eō** (§ 810) and the gerund (§ 829).

Caesar attacks the enemy while crossing, **Caesar hostēs trānseuntēs adgreditur.**

They did not start to cross, **initium trānseundī nōn fēcērunt.**

COMPOSITION

392. Write the following in Latin:

1. Influenced by a desire to cross the river, they built a bridge. 2. While they were crossing, Caesar came to the river. 3. He attacked them as they were beginning to cross. 4. Caesar learned that his troops were not inferior to the enemy. 5. The place where he had pitched the camp was favorable for drawing up a battle-line. 6. He left two legions as a protection to the camp.

QUESTIONNAIRE

393. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar intellēxit?
2. Ubi castra posita sunt?
3. Cūr erat hic locus opportunus?
4. Quid Caesar ab utrōque latere ēius collis abdūxit?
5. Quid ad fossās extrēmās conlocāvit?
6. Cūr hoc fēcit?
7. Quōs in castrīs relīquit?
8. Quot legiōnēs in aciē cōnstituit?
9. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
10. Quālis erat palūs?
11. Ubi erat?
12. Quid hostēs exspectābant?
13. Cūr hoc exspectābant?
14. Quō modō contendēbātur?

394. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

unfavorable, **inīquus, -a, -um** *foreign,* **aliēnus, -a, -um**
bravely, more bravely, most bravely, **audācter, audācius, audācissimē**
far, long, longer, longest, **diū, diūtius, diūtissimē**
approach, attack, **adgredior, adgredī, adgressus sum**
fail, give out, **dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus**
decide the issue, fight, **dēcertō, dēcertāre, dēcertāvī, dēcertātus**

Hostēs Trānsīre Flūmen Cōnātī Pelluntur

395. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent.

Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Belgae Domum Revertī Cōnstituunt

396. Hostēs ubi nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

prōtinus (1), *forthwith, at once.*
cui (4), explain the case; transl. **cui praeerat,** etc., *which Lieut. Quintus Tigurius was in command of* (or *commanded*).
expugnārent (5), explain the mode.
interscindō (5), **-ere, -scidī, -scissus,** *cut down, destroy.*
occīdō (10), **-ere, occīdī, occīsus,** *kill, slay.*
circumventōs interfēcērunt (12), *they surrounded and killed.*
intrōdūcō (17), **-ere,** *lead into.*

397. Substantive Clauses with *Ut.* — A substantive clause with **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive may be used in apposition or as subject or object.

They made haste with the notion that they would storm the redoubt, **contendērunt eō cōnsiliō, ut castellum expugnārent.**

They could not be persuaded (it could not be persuaded them) not to delay longer, **hīs persuādērī nōn poterat ut diūtius morārentur.**

COMPOSITION

398. Write the following in Latin:

1. They hurry with the intention of cutting down (that they, etc.) the bridge. 2. They do this with the idea of cutting Caesar off from supplies. 3. Caesar led the archers and slingers across the bridge with the intention of attacking the enemy. 4. Many were hindered in the river so that they could not fight. 5. It is not possible to persuade the enemy not to return home.

QUESTIONNAIRE

399. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quō hostēs contendērunt?
2. Quandō eō contendērunt?
3. Post quōrum castra erat Axona?
4. Quō cōnsiliō eō contendunt?
5. Quid fēcit Titūrius?
6. Quid tum fēcit Caesar?
7. Quī in flūmine erant?
8. Quid fēcit equitātus?
9. Quid hostēs vīdērunt?
10. Quid hostibus dēficere coepit?
11. Quid cōnstituērunt?

400. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

ambush, **īnsidiae, -ārum,** f.
spy, **speculātor, -ōris,** m.
rank, order, **ōrdō, -inis,** m.
not yet, **nōndum,** adv.
cease, stop, **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus**
fear, be afraid of, **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
rise up against, attack, **adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum**

Caesar Hostēs Prōsequitur

401. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit.

Hostēs Omnēs in Fugā Praesidium Pōnunt

402. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlīs sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

strepitus (1), **-ūs,** m., *din.*
tumultus (2), **-ūs,** m., *confusion.*
fēcērunt ut (4), omit **ut,** *they made their departure seem, etc.*
cōnsimilis (4), **-e,** *like;* stronger than **similis.**
veritus (6), *fearing.*
morārētur (9), explain the mode.
hīs (9), explain the case.
exaudiō (17), **-īre, -īvī, -ītus,** *hear.*
praesidium ponerent (18), *sought safety.*
tantam (19) **. . . quantum,** *as great . . . as.*
sub (20), *toward.*

403. The Prefix *Con-*. — The prefix **con-** (**cum-**), **com-**, **col-**, **cor-**, **co-** in compounds frequently means *with* or *together*, but in many words it simply intensifies the meaning of the word.

portō, *carry*	**fīrmō**, *make strong*
comportō, *carry together*	**cōnfīrmō**, *make thoroughly strong*

EXERCISES

404. Form English words from the present or participial stem of the following:

committō	comparō	compōnō	concurrō
commūnicō	compellō	concēdō	cōnferō

405. Explain the derivation of the following:

confection	congress	consecutive	consist
conflict	conjunction	consent	constitute

QUESTIONNAIRE

406. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī ēgressī sunt?
2. Quō modō ēgressī sunt?
3. Cūr ēgressī sunt?
4. Quō prōgressī sunt?
5. Cui profectiō vidēbātur cōnsimilis?
6. Quī hanc rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt?
7. Quid Caesar veritus est?
8. Quid fēcit Caesar?
9. Quandō haec rēs est cōnfīrmāta?
10. Quid Caesar praemīsit?
11. Cūr eōs praemīsit?
12. Quōs iī adortī sunt?
13. Quid fēcērunt priōrēs?
14. Quamdiū nostrī fugientēs secūtī sunt?

407. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

rampart, **agger, -eris,** m.	*surrender*, **dēditiō, -ōnis,** f.
tower, **turris, -is,** f.	*power*, **potestās, -ātis,** f.
hand, **manus, -ūs,** f.	*speed*, **celeritās, -ātis,** f.

do, push forward, drive, **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**

move near, approach, **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus**

Caesar Exercitum in Suessiōnēs Dūcit

408. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātos ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

Bellovacī Pācem Petunt

409. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pacem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

magnō itinere (3), *by a forced march.*

ex itinere (4), *directly after marching.*

paucīs dēfendentibus (5), *though there were but few defenders.*

vīnea (7), **-ae,** f., *shed.*

maiōrēs nātū (17), *the elders, older men.*

tendō (18), **-ere, tetendī, tentus,** *extend, stretch out.*

in ēius fidem (19), *under his protection.*

passus (22), **-a, -um,** *extended.*

410. The Ablative Absolute. — The ablative absolute may be used in place of a clause of time, circumstance, cause, or concession.

After he had done this, he marched, **hōc factō, iter fēcit.**

Although the defenders were few, he was not able to take the town, **paucīs dēfendentibus, oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit.**

COMPOSITION

411. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Although he attacked the town, he could not take it. 2. When he had moved up the sheds, the Gauls were frightened. 3. Since the Remi asked it, Caesar preserved them. 4. After he had received the hostages, he hurried to the Bellovaci. 5. When they had taken all their (belongings) into the town, the elders came to Caesar. 6. After he had pitched the camp, the boys and women came to him.

QUESTIONNAIRE

412. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar fēcit?
2. Quandō id fēcit?
3. Quī erant Remīs proximī?
4. Quō exercitus dūcitur?
5. Quid cōnātus est?
6. Cōnfēcitne id?
7. Quā rē nōn potuit?
8. Quid tum fēcit?
9. Quid Caesar mūnīvit?
10. Quid tum fēcit?
11. Quī erant permōtī?
12. Cūr erant iī permōtī?
13. Quid fēcērunt?
14. Quō Caesar properāvit?
15. Quid Bellovacī fēcērant?
16. Quid petīvērunt?

413. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

means, wealth, **opēs, opium,** f.
bring back, reduce, render, **redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus**
endure, submit to, suffer, **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus**
cause, inflict, bring on, **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus**
fall upon, occur, happen, **incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsūrus**
insult, **contumēlia, -ae,** f.

Prō Bellovacīs Dīviciācus Verba Facit

414. Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

Bellovacī Cōnservātī Sunt

415. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: 'Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque nūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.'

prō (1), *in behalf of.*
dīcerent (3), *kept saying.*
indignitās (4), **-ātis,** f., *outrage.*
perferre (5), *were suffering.*
quī (5), for antecedent supply **eōs,** as subj. of **prōfugisse.**
prīncipēs (6), *originators.*
in (9), *toward.*
quōrum auxiliīs (11), *by whose aid.*
qua bella (11), translate as obj. of **sustentāre.**
cōnfīrmāre (23), *they declared.*

416. Translating Indirect Discourse. — After a verb of saying in the present tense, a present infinitive is translated as a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive, as a past or a perfect indicative.

He says they are making war on the Roman people, **dīcit eōs bellum populō Rōmānō īnferre.**

He says the chiefs have fled, **dīcit prīncipēs prōfugisse.**

COMPOSITION

417. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Diviciacus says that the Bellovaci have always been friendly toward the Haeduans. 2. He says they were driven on by their leaders. 3. The leaders had said that the Haeduans were suffering insults. 4. The leaders know that they have brought great misfortune to the state. 5. He says that Caesar's kindness will increase the influence of the Haeduans. 6. The Nervii do not allow wine to be brought in.

QUESTIONNAIRE

418. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Prō quibus Dīviciācus pauca verba fēcit?
2. Quōrum in fidē fuerant?
3. Quamdiū in fidē fuerant?
4. Quī eōs impulerant?
5. Quid prīncipēs dīcēbant?
6. Quid hī fēcērant?
7. Cūr eō prōfūgerant?
8. Quid Haeduī petēbant?
9. Quid fēcit Caesar?
10. Dē quibus quaesīvit?
11. Quibus erat nūllus aditus?
12. Quā rē erat hoc?

419. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

age, **aetās, -ātis,** f.
woman, **mulier, mulieris,** f.
approach, **aditus, -ūs,** m.
more, wider, **amplius,** adv.
dare, venture, **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**
throw together, put hastily, **coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus**

Caesar in Nerviōs Iter Facit

420. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs adventum ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant.

Nerviī Rōmānōs Adgredī Parant

421. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

iter fēcisset (1), *had advanced.*
Sabis (2), **-is,** m., *Sambre.*
exspectāre (4), *were awaiting.*
exspectārī (5), *were expected.*
esse in itinere (6), *were on the way.*
quīque (6), **quī** + **quē,** *and those who.*
coniēcisse (8), *they had rushed the women,* etc.
quī (10), equals **eōs quī.**
dēligant (10), explain the mode.
cōnsuētūdine . . . perspectā (13), *having observed.*
hīs (15), explain the case.

422. Translating Indirect Discourse. — After a past tense the present infinitive in indirect discourse is translated as a past tense, and the perfect infinitive as a past perfect tense.

The prisoners said it was easy to attack the first legion, **dēditīciī dīxērunt facile esse legiōnem prīmam adorīrī.**

Diviciacus said that the state had been stirred up by its leaders, **Dīviciācus dīxit cīvitātem ā prīncipibus incitātam esse.**

COMPOSITION

423. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. They learned that Caesar had advanced into their territory. 2. Caesar was informed that the Nerviī and their neighbors were awaiting his arrival. 3. He was also informed that the enemy had sent the women into the swamps. 4. Caesar sent scouts to select a suitable place for the camp. 5. It was afterward learned that the prisoners had observed Caesar's manner of marching.

QUESTIONNAIRE

424. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quō Caesar iter fēcerat?
2. Quamdiū iter fēcerat?
3. Quid inveniēbat?
4. Ex quibus hoc invēnit?
5. Quī erant cum Nerviīs?
6. Quōs iī exspectābant?
7. Quō mulierēs coniectae erant?
8. Quid Caesar hīs rēbus cognitīs fēcit?
9. Quī nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt?
10. Quid dēmōnstrārunt?
11. Quō modō Caesar iter faciēbat?
12. Quid Nerviī cōnstituērunt?

425. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

picket, post, **statiō, -ōnis,** f.
sloping, **dēclīvis, -e**
opposite, **adversus, -a, -um**
otherwise . . . than, **aliter . . . ac**
carry away, report, **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**
lighten, free (from baggage), **expediō, expedīre, expedīvī, expedītus**

Rōmānī Locum Castrīs Dēligunt

426. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminābimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

Hostēs Impetum Subitō Faciunt

427. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs impetum in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur.

haec (1), *as follows.*
ab summō (2), *from the top.*
vergō (3), **-ere,** *incline.*
contrārius (4), **-a, -um,** *facing.*
silvestris (6), **-e,** *wooded.*
intrōrsus (6), adv., *into, within.*
secundum (8), prep., *along.*
sē habēre (11), *be.*
abditī (21), *concealed;* pred. noun.

428. The Dative with Expressions of Nearness. — The dative is used in expressions of nearness, likeness, and approach.

He was approaching the enemy, **hostibus appropinquābat.**
The Remi were next to Gaul, **Remī erant proximī Galliae.**

COMPOSITION

429. Write the following in Latin:

1. They chose a place for the camp next to the river. 2. This place was next to the river Sambre. 3. The river was crossed by the army as they approached the Nerviī. 4. The scouts said the enemy were approaching our camp. 5. Our camp was near the woods where the enemy lay hidden. 6. The attack on our cavalry having been repulsed, the enemy seemed to attack everywhere at once.

QUESTIONNAIRE

430. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī locum castrīs dēlēgērant?
2. Ubi erat hic locūs?
3. Quālis erat collis?
4. Quo modō ā flūmine nāscēbātur?
5. Quō hostēs sē abdiderant?
6. Ubi paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur?
7. Quid Caesar praemīsit?
8. Quālis erat ōrdō agminis?
9. Quot legiōnēs erant expedītae?
10. Ubi erant impedīmenta?
11. Quī prīmī flūmen trānsgressī sunt?
12. Quī mūnīre coepērunt?
13. Quid hostēs fēcērunt?

431. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

signal, **sīgnum, -ī,** n.
crowded, **cōnfertus, -a, -um**
space between, **intervāllum, -ī,** n.
separate, **dīversus, -a, -um**
summon, send for, **arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus**
send out, hurl, throw, **ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissus**
strip, lay bare, **nūdō, nūdāre, nūdāvī, nūdātus**
come together, engage, **congredior, congredī, congressus sum**

Omnia Ūnō Tempore Agenda Sunt

432. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.

Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, Atrebātēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt.

Nerviī Castra Rōmāna Petunt

433. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

vēxillum (1), **-ī,** n., *flag.*
prōpōnendum (2), supply **est.**
cum (2) . . . **oportēret,** *for arming.* What literally?
paulō longius (4), *a little too far.*
aggeris (4), *material.*
cōnantēs (10), supply **eōs** = **Atrebātēs.**
redintegrō (13), **-āre,** *renew.*
prōflīgō (16), **-āre,** *put to rout.*
proelior (17), **-ārī,** *battle, fight.*
nūdātīs (18), *unprotected.*

434. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — The gerundive participle is used with the verb **sum** to denote what *has to be* or *ought to be* done. The person upon whom the obligation rests is denoted by the dative.

Everything had to be done by Caesar at once, **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant.**

The flag had to be displayed by him, **vēxillum eī prōpōnendum erat.**

COMPOSITION

435. All these sentences must be passive in Latin:

1. We shall not have to do everything at once. 2. He must give the signal with the trumpet. 3. He will have to recall the soldiers from the work. 4. The commander must form a battle line quickly. 5. He needed to encourage the soldiers. 6. Who had to give the signal for battle?

QUESTIONNAIRE

436. Write complete sentence answers in Latin:

1. Quae legiōnēs Atrebātēs congressī sunt?
2. Quō eōs compulērunt?
3. Quī trānsīre cōnātī sunt?
4. Quid fēcērunt nostrī?
5. Ubī hostēs proelium redintegrāvērunt?
6. Quī eōs pepulērunt?
7. Quae legiōnēs aliā in parte hostēs prōflīgārunt?
8. Ubi proliābantur?
9. Quibus ā partibus castra nūdāta sunt?
10. Quā rē nūdāta sunt?
11. Quis summam tenēbat?
12. Quō is contendit?

437. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

foot soldier, **pedes, -itis,** m.
crowded together, **cōnfertus, -a, -um**
drive, defeat, rout, **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**
run to meet, encounter, **occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursūrus**
fill, fill up, occupy, **compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus**
at the same time, **simul**
ridge, **iugum, -ī,** n.

Equitēs Nostrī et Levis Armātūrae Peditēs Fugiunt

438. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Treverī Domum Revertuntur

439. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus est, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit.

cālō (5), **-ōnis,** *camp follower.*
decumānus (5), **-ā, -um,** *rear.*
praedō (6), **-āre,** *plunder.*
respiciō (7), **-ere,** *look back.*
praeceps (8), **-itis,** *headlong.*
fremitus (10), **-ūs,** *confusion, din.*
dissipō (17), **-āre,** *scatter.*
potītōs (20), *in possession of.*
urgeo (22), **-ēre, ūrsī,** *press hard.*
sīgnīs (22) . . . **conlātīs,** *because the standards had been brought close together.*

440. ***Cum*** **in Descriptive Clauses.** — In a temporal clause that describes the conditions under which an action takes place **cum** is used with the past progressive or past perfect subjunctive.

While they were retreating to the camp, they met the enemy, **cum in castra sē reciperent, hostibus occurrēbant.**

COMPOSITION

441. Write the following in Latin:

1. When they were (had been) driven back, they retired to the camp. 2. When they were approaching the camp, they were attacked by the enemy. 3. When the camp followers saw the enemy in our camp, they fled headlong. 4. When they heard the shouting, some fled in one direction, others in another. 5. When the Treveri saw this, they thought the Romans had been beaten.

QUESTIONNAIRE

442. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī erant cum equitibus?
2. Quid hī omnēs fēcērunt?
3. Quō sē recēpērunt?
4. Quibus occurrērunt?
5. Quid tum fēcērunt?
6. Quī perveniēbant?
7. Quid oriēbātur?
8. Quid fēcērunt cālōnēs?
9. Quī hīs omnibus rēbus permōtī sunt?
10. Quī castra complēbant?
11. Quī erant paene circumventī?
12. Quī fugiēbant?
13. Quid fēcērunt Treverī?
14. Quid renūntiārunt?

443. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

run, **cursus, -ūs,** m.
sight, **cōnspectus, -ūs,** m.
slow, late, **tardus, -a, -um**
reinforcement, **subsidium, -ī,** n.
work, pains, **opera, -ae,** f.
that, so that, **quō**

abandon, give up, **dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus sum**
catch sight of, see, behold, **cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus**
retard, check, hold back, **retardō, retardāre, retardāvī, retardātus**

Scūto Dētractō Caesar in Aciem Prīmam Prōcedit

444. Inveniēbat quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occīsōs esse, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut volnerātīs aut occīsīs; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset. Scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōmināti appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.

Imperātor Mīlitibus Spem Īnfert

445. Cuius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum quantō in perīculō et castra et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

sīgnifer (2), **-ī**, m., *standard bearer.*
tardiōrēs (4), *too slow.*
dēsertō locō (5), *having deserted their post.*
rem esse in angustō (7), *the situation was critical.*
mīlitī (9), dat. with **dētrāctō.**
redintegrātō animō (13), *with renewed spirit.*
operam nāvāre (15), *to do his best.*
nihil . . . fēcērunt (23), *left nothing undone in the matter of speed.*

446. Translating the Ablative Absolute. — An ablative absolute containing a perfect passive participle may frequently be translated by an active participle or by a clause.

Snatching a shield from a soldier, Caesar went into the front line, **scūtō mīlitī dētrāctō, Caesar ad prīmam aciem processit.**

When the battle was announced Labienus sent aid to Caesar, **proeliō nūntiātō Labiēnus Caesārī subsidium mīsit.**

COMPOSITION

447. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When the standard bearer was killed, the ensign was lost. 2. Since nearly all the centurions had been killed or wounded, the situation was critical. 3. Calling the centurions by name, Caesar encouraged the soldiers. 4. With spirit renewed, they began to resist the enemy. 5. Seeing the commander in danger, the soldiers fought more bravely.

QUESTIONNAIRE

448. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis interfectus est?
2. Quid āmissum est?
3. Quī erant tardiōrēs?
4. Quid hī vītābant?
5. Cūr locum dēseruerant?
6. Ubi hostēs īnstābant?
7. Quid fēcit Caesar?
8. Quōs nōminātim appellat?
9. Quid iussit?
10. Quid inlātum est?
11. Quid quisque cupiēbat?
12. Quid fēcit Labienus?
13. Quis in perīculō erat?
14. Quid fēcērunt mīlites?

449. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

tribe, **gēns, gentis,** f.
safety, **salūs, salūtis,** f.
heap, mound, **tumulus, -ī,** m.
last, **extrēmus, -a, -um**
excel, manifest, show, **praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestātus**
survive, be left over, **praesum, praeesse, praefuī**
fall, be slain, **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus**
reduce, render, **redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus**

Hostēs Virtūtem Maximam Praestant

450. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

Nerviī Reliquī Sē Dēdunt

451. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt.

Exercitus in Hīberna Dēdūcitur

452. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

iaceō (3), **-ēre, -uī,** *lie prostrate.*
īnsistō (3), **-ere, -stitī,** *stand on.*
coacervō (4), **-āre,** *pile, heap up.*
nēquīquam (6), *in vain.*
quae (9) . . . **redēgerat,** *which (things) the greatness of their courage had rendered easy.*
aestuārium (12), **-ī,** n., *tidal marsh.*
cōnsēnsus (13), **-ūs,** m., *agreement.*
opīniō (16), *report.*
supplicātiō (20), **-ōnis,** f., thanksgiving.

453. The Dative with Compounds. — Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, in, ob, prae, sub,** and **super** take a dative of indirect object.

They stood on the prostrate, **iacentibus īnsistēbant.**
They met the enemy in the camp, **in castrīs hostibus occurrērunt.**

COMPOSITION

454. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The women survived the soldiers. 2. They had stood on the bank of the river. 3. Labienus was in charge of two legions. 4. These two legions came to the assistance of (**succurrō**) the rest. 5. Caesar inspired (**iniciō**) hope in the soldiers. 6. At first two legions were not present in (**adsum**) the battle. 7. Caesar placed a lieutenant in command of the winter quarters.

QUESTIONNAIRE

455. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid hostēs praestābant?
2. Quid speī erat hostibus?
3. Quī hostium ceciderant?
4. Ubi reliquī īnstābant?
5. Quī pīla intercipiēbant?
6. Quanta erat virtūs Nerviōrum?
7. Quibus erat magnitūdō animī?
8. Quid redāctum erat?
9. Ubi mulierēs fuerant?
10. Quī cum hīs fuerant?
11. Quid hī fēcērunt?
12. Quid pollicitī sunt?
13. Quālis opīniō ad barbarōs perlāta est?
14. Quid fēcit Caesar?
15. Quid dēcrētum est?

456. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

the rest, **cēterī, -ae, -a**
beginning, **initium, -ī,** n.
be or *become accustomed,* **cōnsuēscō, -ere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus**
cut down, cut into, cut up, **concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus**
set up, provide, procure, **īnstituō, -ere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus**
pass the winter, **hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus**

Longa Nāvis Rōmāna

COMMENTĀRIUS TERTIUS

At the close of the war against the Belgian confederacy Caesar placed the army in winter quarters among the Carnutes, Andes, and Turoni, tribes that were close to the regions in which he had been carrying on the war. This was not only a protection to the more friendly part of Gaul but constituted a warning against further opposition on the part of the war-loving Belgian tribes.

Caesar had, in addition to these measures, sent Servius Galba into the Alps against the Nantuates, Veragri, Seduni, whose territories lay east of the Allobroges. Galba's camp was attacked and a series of battles followed, but he was successful in all his conflicts with the enemy. While this struggle was going on in the Alps, a sudden and unexpected war broke out in Gaul, in the spring of 56 B.C.

Pedius Crassus, in command of the winter quarters among the Andes, being short of supplies, had sent out some of his horsemen among the neighboring tribes to procure additional grain. The Veneti, residing on the coast, in a region that was inaccessible to an army, seized the two Roman horsemen who had come to them, in the hope of being able to exchange them for the hostages they had given to Caesar. Influenced by this act, neighboring states seized other Romans and held them in like manner. The result was that all the coast tribes combined and sent word to Crassus that, if he wanted his officers back, he must return the hostages.

There was no way of carrying on a war against these tribes except by sea. Therefore Caesar ordered a fleet to be built and equipped in river Liger (Loire). Information concerning the preparations of the Romans reached the Veneti, and they added greatly to the number of their ships, but in the battle that followed the Romans were successful, destroying or capturing a large part of the hostile ships.

Subitum Bellum in Galliā Coörtum Est

457. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātionēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs et in Venetōs frūmentī causā dīmīsit.

Venetī Scientiā Rērum Nauticārum Antecellunt

458. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium bellī retinendō equitēs Rōmānōs, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs datōs Crassō recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Caesar Nāvēs Aedificārī Iubet

459. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum portuumque sciēbant.

vectīgālēs (14), *as tributaries.*
initium (15), *cause* (for war).
īnstituī (19), *to be provided.*
gŭbernātor (20), **-ōris,** m., *pilot.*
concīsa aestuāriīs (23), *cut by inlets* (or *marshes*).

460. Dependent Clauses in Indirect Statement. — A dependent clause in indirect statement, unless a comment of the speaker, has its verb in the subjunctive.

They thought they would get back the hostages that they had given to Crassus, **obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent sē recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.**

COMPOSITION

461. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Veneti knew those who sailed their seas. 2. They thought they would receive the hostages that Caesar had. 3. Caesar knew the tribes who were making war. 4. The aestuaries were a great help to the Veneti. 5. Since ships had to be built by Caesar, the Veneti thought Caesar would not come to them.

QUESTIONNAIRE

462. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid exīstimābat Caesar?
2. Cūr id exīstimābat?
3. Quō īre volēbat?
4. Cūr eō īre volēbat?
5. Quid accidit?
6. Quid erat causa?
7. Quis lēgātōs dīmisit?
8. Quae cīvitās amplissima erat?
9. Quā dē causā erat amplissima?
10. Quārē cēterōs antecēdēbant?
11. Quid fēcērunt?
12. Quid iussit Caesar?
13. Quā rē Venetī cōnfīdēbant?
14. Quid sciēbant?

463. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

wrong, outrage, **iniūria, -ae,** f.
surrender, **dēditiō, -ōnis,** f.
state, **condiciō, -ōnis,** f.
tide, **aestus, -ūs,** m.
moreover, **autem,** adv.
again, **rūrsus,** adv.
urge, urge on, impel, **incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus**
stir up, arouse, excite, **excitō, excitāre, excitāvī, excitātus**
put in charge, place in command, **praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**

Multa Caesarem ad Id Bellum Incitant

464. Multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Oppida Venetōrum in Lingulīs sunt Posita

465. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērunt cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur. Nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

retentōrum equitum, etc. (2), *in the detention of the Roman cavalrymen.*
dēfectiō (3), **-ōnis,** f., *revolt.*
datīs obsidibus (3), *after hostages had been given.*
mōbiliter (6), *readily, easily.*
partior (9), **-īrī, -ītus,** *divide.*
lingula (16), **-ae,** f., *tongue of land.*
ex altō (17), *from the sea* (lit., *from the deep*).
hōrārum XII spatiō (18), *every twelve hours.* How lit.?
minuente aestū (19), *when the tide goes out.*
in vadīs (19), *in shallow places.*

466. Ablative of Means. — The means or instrument by which an act is performed is in the ablative.

They had no way of approach on foot, **pedibus nūllum aditum habēbant.**

COMPOSITION

467. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Caesar thought that, if this part was ignored, the rest would likewise rebel. 2. Since all men love liberty, they hate a state of slavery. 3. Since the Gauls are eager for revolution, Caesar thinks he ought to divide his army. 4. He will place Brutus in charge of the fleet which he has ordered to assemble. 5. The cities had no (avenue of) approach on foot, nor by means of ships. 6. By means of their ships the enemy could sail away.

QUESTIONNAIRE

468. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot causae Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant?
2. Quid Venetī fēcerant?
3. Quid factum erat?
4. Quid datum erat?
5. Quae cīvitātēs dēfēcerant?
6. Quid arbitrābātur Caesar?
7. Quā rē id arbitrātus est?
8. Cuī studēbant Gallī?
9. Quid facile accidit?
10. Quid amant omnēs?
11. Quid putāvit Caesar?
12. Quid fēcit?
13. Quid iusserat?
14. Quid ipse fēcit?
15. Quālis erat nātūra sitūs?
16. Quid nāvibus acciderat?
17. Quid erat difficile?

469. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fashion, manner, **modus, -ī,** m.
violence, **contumēlia, -ae,** f.
burden, **onus, oneris,** n.
very much, **admodum,** adv.
harm, injure, do injury to, **noceō, nocēre, nocuī**
drive to, drive up, hurl, **adigō, adigere, adēgī, adāctus**
approach, be added, **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus**
stand, stay, remain, **cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī**

Nāvēs Venetōrum sunt Dissimilēs Nāvibus Longīs

470. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam sīve eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Nāvēs Venetōrum sunt Commodiōrēs Nostrīs

471. Eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre nōn poterant — tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

carīna (2), **-ae,** f., *keel.*
aliquantō (2), *considerably.*
dēcessus (3), **-ūs,** m., abl., *fall.*
puppis (5), **-is,** f., *stern.*
quamvīs (6), *any . . . whatever.*
pedālis (7), **-e,** *a foot thick.*
trābs (8), **-bis,** f., *beam, timber.*
clāvus (8), **-ī,** m., *nail, spike.*
digitī pollicis (8), *of the thumb.*
crassitūdō (8), **-inis,** f., *thickness.*
fūnis (9), **-is,** m., *rope.*
pellis (9), **-is,** f., *hide.*
alūta (10), **-ae,** f., *leather.*
tenuiter cōnfectae (10), *thinly dressed.*
vērīsimile (12), *likely.*

472. Purpose with *Ad* and the Gerundive. — Purpose may be expressed by **ad** with the gerundive.

The ships were made all of oak to withstand the violence of storms, **nāvēs tōtae ex rōbore ad vim tempestātum perferendam erant factae.**

COMPOSITION

473. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Since the storms were rather severe, the ships were built to withstand their violence. 2. The sterns were elevated, the more easily to withstand the waves. 3. The sails were skins, to endure the blasts of the winds. 4. Since they were made of oak, it happened that they could ground (stand) on the shoals more easily than our ships. 5. Our men had to fear the shoals. 6. They thought their ships could not be steered sufficiently well when the wind blew.

QUESTIONNAIRE

474. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quālēs erant carīnae?
2. Quō cōnsiliō erant plāniōrēs factae?
3. Quālēs erant prōrae?
4. Quō modō erant puppēs accommodātae?
5. Quā māteriā erant factae nāvēs?
6. Quō cōnsiliō erant ex rōbore factae?
7. Quālēs erant clāvī?
8. Quālia vēla habēbant?
9. Quā dē causā pellibus prō vēlīs ūtēbantur?
10. Quid arbitrābantur?
11. Nocēbantne eīs nostrī?

475. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

hill, **collis, -is,** m.
very many, **complūrēs, -a**
seize, grasp, **comprehendō, -ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus**
hide, be concealed or *unnoticed,* **lateō, latēre, latuī**
take away, carry off, **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus**
favorable, **opportūnus, -a, -um**
as far as, **ūsque**

Caesar et Exercitus Proelium Nāvāle Observant

476. Una erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Hostibus superātīs Multae Nāvēs Capiuntur

477. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum tam fuit opportūna; ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est.

praeparō (1), **-āre,** *provide.*
falx (2), **falcis,** f., *hooks.*
praeacūtus (2), **-a, -um,** *pointed.*
insertae . . . longuriīs (2), *inserted into poles and fastened.*
absimilis (2), **-e,** *unlike.*
antemna (3), **-ae,** f., *sailyard.*
dēstinō (4), **-āre,** *fasten.*
comprehēnsī . . . adductī (4), *caught and pulled.*
praerumpēbantur (5), *they were broken.*
abscīsīs (5), *having been cut.*
armenta (7), **-ōrum,** n., *rigging.*

478. *Quod* with the Indicative.—A **quod** clause which makes a statement that is accepted as a fact is in the indicative.

They fought bravely because they were in sight of the army, **fortiter pugnābant, quod in cōnspectū exercitūs erant.**

COMPOSITION

479. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Hooks fastened to long poles were of great help to our fleet. 2. When the ropes had been cut, the yards fell down. 3. The Gallic ships were unable to escape because their only hope lay in their sails. 4. Because of this, the rest of the contest lay in valor. 5. Because many of their ships had been taken by boarding (storm) the enemy sought safety in flight. 6. Because so great a calm had arisen that they could not stir, many ships of the enemy were captured.

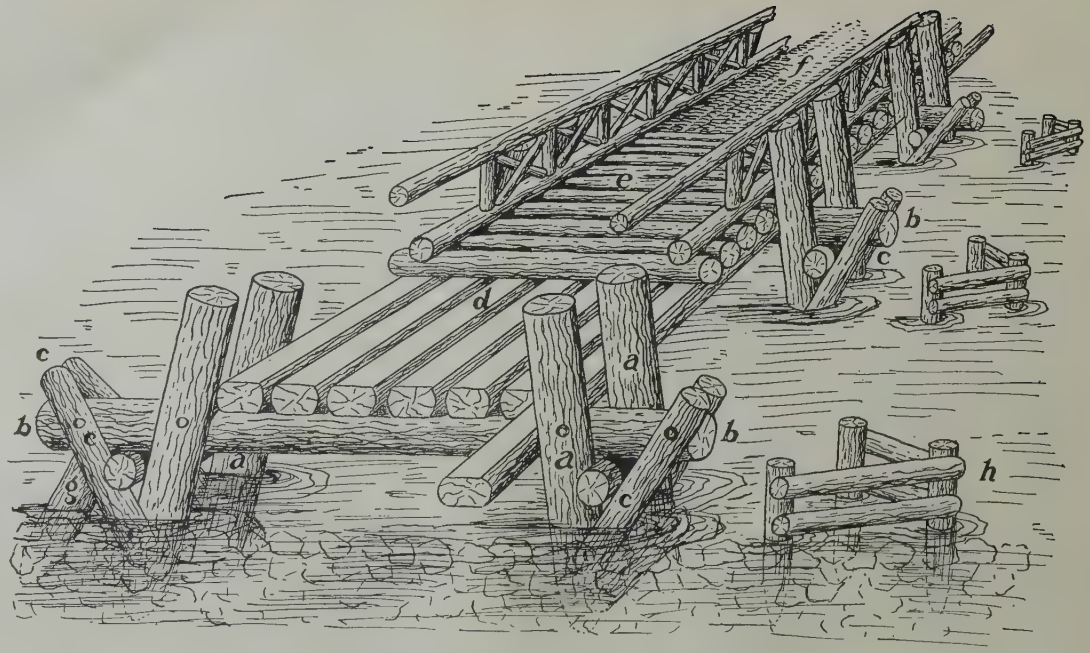
QUESTIONNAIRE

480. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid erat magnō ūsuī Rōmānīs?
2. Quō modō hīs ūtēbantur?
3. Quae rēs concidēbant?
4. Quid Venetīs accidit?
5. In quō reliquum certāmen positum erat?
6. Quī virtūte superābant?
7. Cuius in cōnspectū erant?
8. Quid nōn latēre poterat?
9. Ubi erat exercitus?
10. Quī complūrēs nāvēs expugnāvērunt?
11. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
12. Quid ēvēnit?
13. Quamdiū pugnātum erat?

481. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

winter, **hiems, hiemis,** m.
flock, flesh, **pecus, -oris,** n.
very many, **complūrēs, -ia**
personal, **prīvātus, -a, -um**
practice, **ūsus, -ūs,** m.
force, strength, **vīs, vīs,** f.
press hard, attack, harass, **premō, premere, pressī, pressus**
be allowed, **licet, licēre, licuit, licitum est**



CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE

a Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia
b Trabēs bipedālēs
c Fībulae
d Dērēcta māteria
e Longuriī
f Crātēs
g Sublicae ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis
h Aliae sublicae suprā pontem immissae

COMMENTĀRIUS QUĀRTUS

The following winter two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, under pressure from the Suebi, crossed the Rhine and took possession of the lands and towns of the Menapii. Caesar, therefore, in the summer of 55 B.C., undertook, against the invaders, a campaign that resulted in their destruction. Then, in order to discourage further attempts of the Germans at colonization in Gaul, he built a bridge across the Rhine, led the army into German territory, punished the Sigambri, freed the Ubii from the galling tyranny of the Suebi, and upon returning to Gaul, destroyed the bridge that he had built across the Rhine.

As a considerable portion of the campaign season still remained, he decided to learn what he could about Britain, with the view of possibly reducing it at some later date to Roman rule. Accordingly, he gathered such information as possible from merchants, sent envoys ahead to prepare the islanders for his coming, and assembled the fleet which he had built and equipped the preceding year in his successful naval war against the Veneti.

The Britons, informed of his intention by merchants long before Caesar's envoys arrived, resisted the landing of his troops. His infantry finally dispersed the Britons, and a camp was established. The ships bearing Caesar's cavalry, however, were delayed in crossing, and when they finally did arrive, they were driven down the coast by a storm and severely damaged. Many of these were rendered useless and were broken up, the parts being used in repairing the others. After a few minor engagements in which the Romans were successful the Britons sued for peace, and promised to send hostages, but only two tribes complied with Caesar's directions to send the hostages to Gaul.

COMMENTĀRIUS QUĀRTUS

Duae Gentēs Germāniae Rhēnum Trānseunt

482. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Vīrēs et Mōrēs Germānōrum

483. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōssissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta.

Cn. Pompēiō (1) . . . **cōnsulibus,** in the year 57 B.C.
quod (5), *that.*
quotannīs (9), adv., *every year.*
alō (11), **-ere, aluī, altus,** *support.*
in vicem (11), *in turn.*
agrī (13), part. gen. with **nihil.**
immānis (17), **-e,** *enormous.*
vestītūs (19), part. gen. with **quicquam.**
exiguitās (20), **-ātis,** f., *scantiness, meagerness.*
aperta (21), *exposed.*

484. The Gerund of Purpose. — The gerund, which is a verbal noun, may be used in the accusative with **ad** or in the genitive with **causā** to denote purpose.

For the purpose of tilling the soil, **colendī causā.**
He got everything ready to set out, **omnia ad proficīscendum parāvit.**

COMPOSITION

485. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Germans crossed into Gaul for the purpose of tilling the fields. 2. The reasons for crossing the river Rhine were many. 3. Some of the Suebi remain at home for the purpose of tilling the soil. 4. There is no private property among them, nor do they remain at home to make sowings (**sementis**). 5. They live on meat to such an extent (**ita**) that they become men of great size (of body).

QUESTIONNAIRE

486. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī cōnsulēs erant?
2. Quae nātiōnēs veniēbant?
3. Ubi flūmen trānsībant?
4. Quid erat causa trānseundi?
5. Quālis gēns erat ea?
6. Quantōs pagōs habēbant?
7. Quid aliī faciēbant?
8. Quid faciēbant aliī?
9. Agrōsne habēbant?
10. Quō modō vīvēbant?
11. Quā statūrā erant?
12. Quā ratiōne haec efficiēbātur?
13. Quō modō adsuēfactī sunt?
14. Quid vestītūs habēbant?
15. Quālis erat nātūra tempestātis?

487. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

training, **exercitātiō, -ōnis,** f.
access, approach, **aditus, -ūs,** m.
kind, class, **genus, -eris,** n.
base, **turpis, -e**
in all, altogether, **omnīnō**
in name of the state, **pūblice**
any, anyone, anything, **quisquam** (no fem.), **quidquam** or **quicquam**
touch, reach, border on, **attingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus**

Suēbī Mercatōribus Praedam Vēndunt

488. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Bellicōsissimī sunt Germanōrum Omnium

489. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum hominēs effēminārī arbitrantur.

Suēbī Fīnitimōs Dēlent aut Vectīgālēs Redigunt

490. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Ad ūnam partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

magis eō (1), *rather because.*
quō (2), *than that.*
dēsīderō (3), **-āre,** *desire, want.*
summī . . . labōris (7), *capable.*
dēsiliō (8), **-īre, -uī,** *leap, spring.*
vēstīgium (9), **-ī,** n., *track.*
adsuēfaciō (10), **-ere,** etc., *train.*
ūsus est (10), *it is necessary.*
sīgnificāre (16), supply **putant.**
expertī (19), *although tried in.*

491. The Ablative with *Utor* and *Potior*. — The ablative of means is used with **utor** and **potior** and is translated like a direct object.

They do not use imported horses, **equīs importātīs nōn ūtuntur.**
They got possession of the royal power, **rēgnō potītī sunt.**

COMPOSITION

492. Write the following in Latin:

1. Merchants have access to them in order that they may sell their booty (**praeda**). 2. They use neither draft animals nor imported horses. 3. They do not use wine, because they think valor is weakened by it. 4. By daily exercise they make their horses (capable) of great endurance. 5. The Ubiī had a large and flourishing state. 6. Although the Suēbī were not able to drive them out, they made them tributary.

QUESTIONNAIRE

493. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quibus erat aditus?
2. Quā rē hīs aditus erat?
3. Quid vēndere cupiēbant?
4. Dēlectābanturne equīs Gallicīs?
5. Quālibus equīs ūtēbantur?
6. Quid efficiēbant?
7. Quā ratiōne hoc efficiēbant?
8. Quid in proeliīs equestribus faciēbant?
9. Quid faciēbant equī?
10. Quid turpe habēbātur?
11. Cūr vīnum importārī nōn patiēbantur?
12. Quid putābant?
13. Quōs vectīgālēs fēcērunt?

494. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

custom, **cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** f.
become accustomed, **cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus**
make known, declare, **prōnūntiō, -āre, prōnūntiāvī, prōnūntiātus**
surround, hem in, **circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī** or **stetī**
fear, be afraid, dread, **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
be eager for, desire (with dat.), **studeō, studēre, studuī**
for the most part, **plērumque**

Caesar Īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum Verētur

495. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt.

Caesar Rhēnum Trānsīre Statuit

496. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent. Hōs ex Galliā expellere statuit. Hōc factō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit. Caesar tamen nāvibus trānsīre nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur, id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

mōbilis (2), **-e,** *changeable, fickle.*
cōnsuētūdinis (4), pred. gen.; translate like a nom.
cōgant (5) . . . **cōgat** (9), subjunctives with **uti** (4).
audītō (9), **-ōnis,** f., *what one hears, report.*
iūstissima (18), *the most weighty.*
impellō (19), **-ere,** *induce.*
ut . . . venīrent (19), *to come.*

497. The Suffixes *-ilis* and *-bilis*. — Many adjectives are formed by dropping the **-tum** (**-sum**) of the supine and adding **-ilis** or **-bilis**, denoting *capability*.

Verb:	**moveō**, *move*	**amō**, *love, like*
Supine:	**mōtum**	**amātum**
Adjective:	**mōbilis**, *movable*	**amābilis**, *lovable, likable*

EXERCISES

498. Form adjectives from the following:

comparō	dēmōnstrō	crēdō	frangō
faciō	nāvigō	superō	doceō

499. Explain the derivation of the following:

communicable	estimable	audible	terrible
indubitable	invulnerable	sensible	resistible

QUESTIONNAIRE

1. Quid veritus est?
2. Quā dē causā īnfīrmī Gallī erant?
3. Quibus studēbant?
4. Quid Caesar exīstimāvit?
5. Quid quaerēbant?
6. Quid dē mercātoribus faciēbant?
7. Quid cōgēbant?
8. Quā rē hoc fēcērunt?
9. Quid fēcit Caesar?
10. Quā rē hoc fēcit?
11. Quid cognōvit?
12. Quid statuit?
13. Quid exīstimābat?
14. Cūr pontem fēcit?

500. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

timber, **māteria, -ae**, f.
interval, **intervāllum, -ī**, n.
tree, **arbor, -oris**, m.
force, **vīs, vīs**, f.; plur., **vīrēs**
defender, **dēfēnsor, -ōris**, m.
above, over, **suprā**, prep. w. acc.
set in motion, drive, **incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus**
join together, **coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus**
weaken, lessen, **minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus**
harm, injure, **noceō, nocēre, nocuī**, with dat.

Caesar Ratiōnem Pontis Facit

501. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātura ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

tigna bīna (1), *a pair of logs.*
sēsquipedālia (1), *a foot and a half thick.*
dīmēnsa ad (2), *measured to correspond to.*
immittō (4), **-ere,** *let down, set in.*
fistūca (4), **-ae,** f., *pile driver.*
adigō (5), **-ere, -ēgī,** *drive in.*
prōcumberent (7), *they inclined.*
quadrāgēnum (8), *forty.*
fībula (12), **-ae,** f., *bolt.*
in (13) . . . **revīnctīs,** *braced* in opposite directions.
dērēctā (16) . . . **iniēctā,** *by laying timber, etc. in the direction of the bridge.*

502. Perfect Passive Participle as Adjective. — The perfect passive participle is used as an adjective.

Straight lumber was placed on top, **dērēcta māteria iniecta est.**

COMPOSITION

503. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The bridge was made of beams driven into the bed of the river (the deepest river). 2. Straight lumber was placed upon beams (which had been) let down upon the timbers. 3. They placed other timbers against the force of the current (river). 4. So great was the solidity of the bridge that the river could not sweep the work away (**rumpō**). 5. Piles were placed at a small interval so that the bridge might not be injured. 6. The barbarians will send ships for the purpose of dislodging the work.

QUESTIONNAIRE

504. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quae rēs in flūmen immissae sunt?
2. Quō intervallō haec immissa sunt?
3. Quō modō immissa sunt?
4. Quō modō dēfīxa sunt?
5. Cūr fastīgātē adācta sunt?
6. Quantō intervallō altera tigna distābant?
7. Quae rēs īnsuper immissa est?
8. Quae nātūra operis erat?
9. Quā rē contexēbantur tigna?
10. Cūr arietēs subjectī sunt?
11. Ubi aliae positae sunt?
12. Quō spatiō positae sunt?
13. Quā rātiōne?

505. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

building, **aedificium, -ī,** n.
harbor, **portus, -ūs,** m.
maritime, **maritimus, -a, -um**
small, scanty, **exiguus, -a, -um**
accomplish, carry out, **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus**
complete, finish, **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**
fail, be insufficient, **dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus**
set on fire, burn up, **incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus**

Caesar Germānīs Bellum Īnfert

506. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar paucōs diēs in Suebōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit. Caesar, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

DĒ INCURSIŌNE PRĪMĀ IN BRITANNIAM

Caesar in Britanniam Proficīscī Contendit

507. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

succīdō (4), **-ere, -cīdī, -cīsus,** *cut down, cut under.*
exiguā . . . reliquā (8), supply *being.*
mātūrus (9), **-a, -um,** *early.*
subministror (11), **-ārī,** *furnish.*
neque . . . quisquam (16), *and nothing.*
temerē (16), *without good reason.*
ōra maritima (17), *seacoast.*

508. Prefixes, *Con-*, *Ex-*, and *Per-*. — In certain of their combinations the prefixes **con-, ex-, per-** add the idea of completeness, accomplishment, or thoroughness to the action.

faciō, *do, make*
cōnficiō, *do completely, complete, bring to an end, accomplish*
efficiō (**ex-faciō**), *carry out to accomplishment*
perficiō, *do thoroughly, perform, finish, make perfect*

EXERCISES

509. Explain the force of the prefixes in the following:

commoror	exaudiō	peragō	complūrēs
commūniō	exsequor	permoveō	perpaucī
comparō	exūrō	perterreō	perfacilis

510. Explain the derivation of the following:

complete	efficient	excite	permanent
complement	effectual	expostulate	perturb

QUESTIONNAIRE

511. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quam diū in Germāniā morātus est?
2. Quid ibi fēcit?
3. Quō tum exercitum dūxit?
4. Quid fēcit?
5. Quid aestātis relinquēbātur?
6. Quālēs hiemēs erant?
7. Quid stātuit?
8. Quid arbitrābātur?
9. Adībantne illō mercātōrēs?
10. Quid fēcit Caesar?
11. Quid reperiēbat?

512. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

opportunity, **facultās, -ātis,** f.
sentiment, **sententia, -ae,** f.
hither, **hūc,** adv.
ignorant of, **imperītus, -a, -um**
instruct, intrust, **mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus**
report, announce, **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus**
send on, send ahead, **praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus**

Caesar Volusēnum Praemittit

513. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Caesar Commium Quoque Praemittit

514. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

perīculum faceret (1), *before taking the risk.*
trāiectus (6), **-ūs,** m., *passage.*
quam (7) . . . **classem** = **eam classem quam polliceantur.**
obtemperō (12), **-āre,** *submit to, yield obedience to.*
līberāliter (13), *graciously.*
cōnsilium (16), *discretion.*
probābat (16), *he regarded highly.*
possit (18), explain the mode.
adeat (18), supply **ut.**
sequantur (19), explain the use.
quī (21), *since he.*

515. ***Priusquam*** **with the Subjunctive.** — Anticipated action with **priusquam** takes the subjunctive. This construction may often be translated by a participial phrase.

Before taking the risk, he sent Volusenus ahead, **priusquam perīculum faceret, Volusēnum praemittit.**

COMPOSITION

516. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Before setting out for Britain Caesar sends Volusenus ahead. 2. Volusenus was sent to learn what he could. 3. Caesar instructed him to return as soon as possible after having investigated everything. 4. Many tribes decided to send ambassadors before Caesar should set out. 5. Caesar thought that Commius was loyal to him. 6. He sent Commius ahead to announce that he himself would come quickly.

QUESTIONNAIRE

517. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quem Caesar praemīsit?
2. Quō cōnsiliō?
3. Quid eī mandāvit?
4. Quid fēcit Caesar?
5. Cūr eō profectus est?
6. Quid iussit?
7. Quandō hās nāvēs Caesar fēcerat?
8. Quī cōnsilium ēius cognōvērunt?
9. Ad quōs pertulērunt?
10. Quī lēgātōs mīsērunt?
11. Quid fēcit Caesar?
12. Quem Caesar fidēlem arbitrātus est?
13. Quō eum mīsit?

518. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

custom, **cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** f.
ignorant of, **imperītus, -a, -um**
of burden, **onerārius, -a, -um**
that not, lest, **quō minus**
bring, lead to, influence, **addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus**
command, demand, **imperō, -āre, imperāvī, imperātus,** with dat.
manage, direct, **administrō, -āre, administrāvī, administrātus**

Morinī ad Eum Lēgātōs Mittunt

519. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvēs ad Britanniam Perveniunt

520. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit.

fēcissent (5), explain the mode.
eīs (6), explain the dat.
quot (8), *as many as;* translate, *which number.*
ā mīlibus (12), explain the abl.
tardius (18), *too slowly.*
esset administrātum (18), *orders were carried out.*
expositās (20), *arranged.*
cognōvisset (24), explain the mode.

521. The Suffixes *-ārius* and *-āris*. — The suffixes **-ārius** and **-āris** are added to the base of nouns to form adjectives denoting *pertaining to*. English equivalents are *-ary* and *-ar*.

Noun:	**onus,** *burden*	**sōl, sum**
Base:	**oner-**	**sōl-**
Adjective:	**onerārius,** *pertaining to burdens*	**sōlāris,** *pertaining to the sun*

EXERCISE

522. Explain the meaning of the following:

legiōnārius	aquārius	cōnsulāris	līberālis
honōrārius	auxiliārius	populāris	mīlitāris

523. Explain the derivation of the following:

elementary	literary	insular	tabular
momentary	stationary	stellar	regular

QUESTIONNAIRE

524. Write complete sentence answers in Latin:

1. Ubi Caesar morātur?
2. Quā dē causā morātur?
3. Quī ad eum veniunt?
4. Cūr iī veniunt?
5. Quid Morinī fēcerant?
6. Quid pollicitī sunt?
7. Quid Caesar imperāvit?
8. Suntne obsidēs adductī?
9. Quot nāvēs coāctae sunt?
10. Cūr hae coāctae erant?
11. Quae nāvēs hūc accēdebant?
12. Cui ūsuī erant hae?
13. Quibus hās distribuit?
14. Quandō Caesar solvit?
15. Quandō īnsulam attigit?
16. Cūr in ancorās exspectat?

525. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

nature, kind, **genus, -eris,** n.
unincumbered, **expedītus, -a, -um**
tide, **aestus, -ūs,** m.
boldly, **audācter,** adv.
come upon, obtain, **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum**
retreat, **pedem referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**
follow up closely, **subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum**

Britannī Rōmānōs Egredī Prohibent

526. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

Caesar Barbarōs Terrēre Temptat

527. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

essedāriīs (5), **-ī,** m., *chariot-fighter.*
nāvibus ēgredī (7), *from disembarking.*
cōnstituī (9), *be anchored.*
īnsuēfactōs (15), *trained.*
alacritās (17), **-ātis,** f., *eagerness.*
funda (21), **-ae,** f., *sling.*
ūsuī (23), *of assistance.*

528. The Dative with the Gerundive. — Duty or obligation is expressed by the gerundive participle. The person on whom the obligation rests is denoted by the dative of apparent agent.

The soldiers had to jump down, **mīlitibus dēsiliendum erat** (lit., *it had to be jumped down by the soldiers*).

COMPOSITION

529. Write the following in Latin:

1. The sailors had to weigh anchor. 2. They were to station the ships off (on) an open shore. 3. The soldiers will have to make a stand in the waves. 4. Our men had to fight on unfamiliar ground. 5. The enemy used trained horses. 6. Caesar had to move the warships away from the transports.

QUESTIONNAIRE

530. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī dīmissī sunt?
2. Quid Caesar nactus est?
3. Quamdiū prōgressus est?
4. Ubi nāvēs statuit?
5. Quid fēcerunt barbarī?
6. Quōs prohibēbant?
7. Ubi nāvēs cōnstituendae erant?
8. Ubi cōnsistendum erat?
9. Quō modō pugnandum est?
10. Quō modō nostrī restitērunt?
11. Quō nāvēs remōtae sunt?
12. Quis hās movērī iussit?
13. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
14. Quā rē barbarī pedem rettulērunt?

531. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

eagle, **aquila, -ae,** f.
duty, **officium, -ī,** n.
open, **apertus, -a, -um**
entire, all together, **ūniversus, -a, -um**
shallow place, shoal, **vadum, -ī,** n.
at the same time, **simul**
hesitate, **cunctor, cunctārī, cunctātus sum**
let go, allow, incur, **admittō, admittere, admīsī, admissus**
save, preserve, keep, **servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus**
excel, furnish, do (*duty*), **praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestātus**

Aquilifer Mīlitēs Cohortātur

532. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

Britannī Sē Fugae Mandant

533. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

aquilifer, *eaglebearer.*
obtestor (3), **-ārī,** *implore.*
dēsiliō (4), **-īre, -uī, -sultūrus,** *jump down, jump overboard.*
commīlitō (4), **-ōnis,** m., *comrade.*
prōdō (5), **-ere, -didī, -ditus,** *hand over, betray.*
fīrmiter īnsistere (12), *get a firm footing.*
sē adgregābat (14), *rallied to.*
in ūniversōs (18), *into the mass.*
speculātōria nāvigia (20), *scouting vessels.*
in āridō (22), *on dry land.*

534. The Perfect Participle of Deponent Verbs. — The perfect participle of deponent verbs, being active in meaning, is used where the English uses either a present or a perfect active participle.

Imploring the gods, he says, "Leap down," **obtestātus deōs dīcit, "Dēsilīte."**

COMPOSITION

535. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Our soldiers stood on the deck (ships) hesitating. 2. Exhorting the rest, a brave eaglebearer jumped overboard. 3. Delaying a little, the rest followed him. 4. All having followed, soldiers from other ships likewise leaped over. 5. Attacking (**adgredior**) the enemy, our men put them to flight. 6. Pursuing them a short distance, they cut down a few.

QUESTIONNAIRE

536. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Cūr nostrī cunctantur?
2. Quid dīxit aquilifer?
3. Quid is fēcit?
4. Quō modō hoc dīxit?
5. Quid mīlitēs verēbantur?
6. Quid mīlitēs fēcērunt?
7. Quī hoc cōnspexerant?
8. Quid hī fēcērunt?
9. Quibus appropinquāvērunt?
10. Ubi pugnātum est?
11. Quō modō pugnātum est?
12. Servantne nostrī ōrdinēs?
13. Cūr nōn fīrmiter īnsistunt?
14. Quibus sīgnīs sē adgregābant?
15. Quid hostēs fēcērunt?
16. Quid fēcit Caesar?

537. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

wind, **ventus, -ī,** m.
chain, fetter, **vinculum, -ī,** n.
as soon as, **simul atque**
at once, **statim**
report, lay before, **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**
intrust, surrender, **commendō, -mendāre, -mendāvī, -mendātus**
seize, grasp, **comprehendō, -ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus**

Lēgātī ad Caesarem dē Pāce Veniunt

538. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt.

Caesar ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Equitēs in Marī Tempestāte Tenentur

539. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur.

ōrātōris modō (6), *in the character of an envoy.*
imprūdentia (10), **-ae,** f., *want of foresight, indiscretion.*
ignōscō (10), **-ere, -nōvī, -nōtus,** *overlook, pardon.*
remigrō (14), **-āre,** *return, go back.*
Caesarī commendāre (15), *commit to Caesar's protection.*
post diem quārtum (17), *three days later* (by our reckoning).

540. The Future Infinitive in Indirect Statement. — After a present tense the future infinitive is translated by *will*, after a past tense by *would*.

He says that they will come, **dīcit eōs ventūrōs esse.**
He said that they would come, **dīxit eōs venturōs esse.**

COMPOSITION

541. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. They promise that they will give hostages. 2. They say also that they will do his commands. 3. They think that Caesar will overlook their indiscretion. 4. They promised that they would gather a part of the hostages from distant places. 5. They said they would hand them over in a few days. 6. They did not know that a great storm would arise.

QUESTIONNAIRE

542. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī superāti erant?
2. Quid tum fēcērunt?
3. Quandō vēnērunt?
4. Quid pollicitī sunt?
5. Quem comprehenderant?
6. Quid facere cōnātus erat?
7. Quid hostēs petīvērunt?
8. Quid dīxit Caesar?
9. Quot statim dedērunt?
10. Unde reliquī arcessītūrī erant?
11. Quid Caesar iussit?
12. Quid fēcērunt undique principēs?
13. Quae nāvēs solvērunt?
14. Quid nāvibus accidit?

543. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

useless, **inūtilis, -e**
secretly, **clam,** adv.
limited, little, **exiguus, -a, -um**
little by little, **paulātim,** adv.
refit, repair, **reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus**
confer, hold a parley, **conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum**
trust, be confident, believe, **confīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum**
agree, be evident, **cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus**

Omnēs Nāvēs Caesaris Tempestāte Adflictantur

544. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvīt, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Britannī Rebelliōnem Faciunt

545. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

maritimōs aestūs maximōs (2), *highest tides.*
in āridum (4), *on land.*
onerāriās (5), supply **nāvēs.**
erant dēligātae (5), *were riding.*
adflictō (6), **-āre,** *wreck, damage.*
exiguitās (17), **-ātis,** f., *meagerness.*
hōc (18) . . . **quod,** *for the reason that.*
etiam angustiōra (18), *even scantier.*

546. Nouns Derived from Adjectives. — The suffixes **-tās** (**-itās**), **-tūdō** (**-itūdō**), **-ia**, and **-tia** are added to the base of adjectives to form nouns denoting *condition* or *quality*. Corresponding English suffixes are *-ship*, *-tude*, *-ty*, *-cy*, and *-tion*.

exiguus, *scanty*	**fortis**, *brave*	**imprūdēns**, *indiscreet*
exiguitās, *scantiness*	**fortitūdō**, *bravery*	**imprūdentia**, *indiscretion*

EXERCISES

547. Explain the meaning of the following:

stabilitās	parvitās	amplitūdō	potentia
novitās	certitūdō	aegritūdō	praesentia

548. Explain the derivation of the following:

certitude	fidelity	humility	diligence
gratitude	captivity	ignorance	excellency

QUESTIONNAIRE

549. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid accidit?
2. Quā nocte accidit?
3. Quid Rōmānīs incognitum est?
4. Quae nāvēs in āridum subiectae erant?
5. Ubi erant onerāriae?
6. Quid coörtum est?
7. Quid tempestās effēcit?
8. Quī perturbātī sunt?
9. Poteratne in Britanniā hiemāre?
10. Quid fēcērunt prīncipēs?
11. Quid deësse intellēxērunt?
12. Quid confīdēbant?
13. Quid paulātim faciēbant?

550. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

lumber, **māteria**, **-ae**, f.
outcome, *result*, **ēventus**, **-ūs**, m.
dust, **pulvis**, **pulveris**, m.
contingency, **cāsus**, **-ūs**, m.
conveniently, **commodē**
speedily, *at once*, **cōnfestim**
suspect, *surmise*, **suspicor**, **suspicārī**, **suspicātus sum**
let up, *break off*, *cease*, **intermittō**, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**

Cāesar ad Omnēs Cāsūs Subsidia Comparat

551. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

Britannī Manum Rōmānōrum Adgrediuntur

552. Caesar suspicātus aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās sē abdiderant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī sunt.

fore id (3), *that that would take place.*
aes (6), **aeris,** n., *copper, metal.*
ex (10), *according to.*
interpositā (12), *having been aroused;* omit in translating.
dēmetō (23), **-ere, -messuī, -messus,** *cut, reap.*

553. The Uses of the Supine. — The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to denote purpose, but the supine in **-ū** is used with the adjectives **bonus** and **facilis**, etc., to denote specification.

They went into the fields to forage, **in agrōs frūmentātum iērunt.**
They think this best to do, **id optimum factū arbitrantur.**

COMPOSITION

554. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. They came to learn what was going on. 2. They decided to keep the Romans from obtaining grain. 3. They thought this easy to do. 4. Caesar thought it best to repair as many ships as possible. 5. He sent two cohorts out to forage for grain. 6. The enemy had hurried to the woods to await the coming of the Romans. 7. They attacked our men while they were busy reaping.

QUESTIONNAIRE

555. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar suspicātur?
2. Quā rē id suspicātur?
3. Quid nōn cognōverat?
4. Ad quid comparābat?
5. Quid reficiēbat?
6. Quot nāvēs āmīsit?
7. Cūr legiōnem mīsit?
8. Quid etiam iussit?
9. Quī pressī sunt?
10. Quō modō sustinēbant?
11. Quot partēs frūmentī dēmessae erant?
12. Quid hostēs suspicātī erant?

556. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

alarm, panic, **terror, -ōris,** m.
unfavorable, **aliēnus, -a, -um**
permanent, **perpetuus, -a, -um**
generally, **plērumque**
declare, affirm, assert, **praedicō, -dicāre, -dicāvī, -dicātus**
alarm, confuse, **perturbō, -turbāre, -turbāvī, -turbātus**
excel, stand out, be evident, **praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus**
show, claim, **dēmōnstrō, -āre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus**

Britannī ex Essedīs Pugnant

557. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant.

Caesar Proeliō Supersedet

558. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt.

essedum (1), **-ī,** n., *war chariot.*
perequitō (2), **-āre,** *ride about.*
strepitus (3), **-ūs,** m., *din.*
turma (4), **-ae,** f., *squadron.*
insinuō (4), **-āre,** with reflex., *work one's way.*
aurīga (5), **-ae,** m., *charioteer.*
recēpērunt (12), *recovered.*
lacessō (13), **-ere, -īvī, -ītus,** *provoke, arouse, assail.*
quanta (21) . . . **facultās darētur,** *what a great opportunity there was.*
in perpetuum (22), *forever.*

559. *Cum* Denoting Customary Action. — **Cum** with the indicative may be used to denote accustomary action.

Whenever they have worked their way among the squadrons, they leap from the chariots, **cum sē inter turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt.**

COMPOSITION

560. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Whenever they attack the enemy, they first ride about in all directions. 2. Whenever they have disturbed the ranks of the enemy, they leap from the chariots and fight on foot. 3. Whenever their men are hard pressed the charioteers bear aid. 4. Whenever they wish to retreat, they return to the chariots. 5. Caesar did not think the time favorable for attacking the enemy. 6. Bad weather followed for many consecutive days.

QUESTIONNAIRE

561. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ex quibus Britannī pugnābant?
2. Quid prīmō faciēbant?
3. Quid hostēs perturbābat?
4. Quō sē īnsinuābant?
5. Quid tum faciēbant?
6. Quid faciēbant aurīgae?
7. Quās rēs praestābant?
8. Quī perturbātī sunt?
9. Quālī tempore Caesar auxilium tulit?
10. Quid fēcit Caesar?
11. Quid arbitrātus est?
12. Quō legiōnēs dūxit?
13. Quid hostēs fēcērunt?
14. Quid dēmōnstrāvērunt?

562. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

back, **tergum, -ī,** n.
strength, **vīrēs, -ium,** f., plural of **vīs.**
previously, **anteā,** adv.
speed, running, **cursus, -ūs,** m.
unharmed, **incolumis, -e**
below, **īnfrā,** prep. and adv.
escape, flee away, **effugiō, effugere, effūgī**
carry away, carry, **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**
loose, set sail, **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus**

Hostēs Pelluntur

563. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Obsidibus Acceptīs Caesar ad Galliam Redit

564. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

rēbus (1), explain the abl.
peditātus (1), **-ūs,** m., *infantry.*
celeritāte (4), explain the abl.
effugerent (4), explain the use.
diūtius (7), *very long.*
tantō spatiō (9), *as far as* (lit., *by so great a distance*).
quantum (9), *as.*
duplicō (15), **-āre,** *double.*
propinquā diē (16), abl. abs.
īnfīrmīs (16) . . . **subiciendam,** *that his weakened ships ought not to be subjected to winter weather* (lit., *that sailing with weakened ships ought, etc.*).
capere (21), *to make.*

565. Partitive *Ex.* — **Ex** may be used after numerals and with words implying number to replace a partitive genitive.

Many of these came to camp, **complūrēs ex hīs ad castra vēnērunt.**

COMPOSITION

566. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Many of the enemy were captured. 2. Certain of the friends of Caesar informed him concerning these things. 3. Caesar had sent a few of the horsemen with Commius. 4. The enemy did not withstand the attack of the Romans very long. 5. After the battle they sent legates to Caesar to sue for (seek) peace. 6. They were so fickle (**mōbilis**) that Caesar doubled the number of hostages. 7. He commanded that these be taken to the continent.

QUESTIONNAIRE

567. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid hostēs coēgērunt?
2. Quō vēnērunt?
3. Quid Caesar fore vidēbat?
4. Quot equitēs nactus erat?
5. Quis hōs trānsportāverat?
6. Quid Caesar fēcit?
7. Quid hostēs ferre diūtius nōn poterant?
8. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
9. Quid fēcērunt nostrī?
10. Quid incendērunt?
11. Quid eōdem diē hostēs fēcērunt?
12. Quid Caesar hīs imperāvit?
13. Quō obsidēs adducī iussit?

568. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

booty, **praeda, -ae,** f.
shout, **clāmor, -ōris,** m.
tribe, **gēns, gentis,** f.
sight, **cōnspectus, -ūs,** m.
land, place out, expose, **expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus**
place, lay down, **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**
throw down, drop, **abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectus**
decide, decree, **dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus**

Morinī Rōmānōs Adgrediuntur

569. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt.

Morinī Pācantur et Fīnēs Menapiōrum Vāstantur

570. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum XX supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

proficīscēns (3), *when setting out.*
orbis (6), **-is,** m., *circle.*
auxiliō (8), explain the case.
hōrīs (10), explain the abl.
posteā . . . quam (11) = **postquam.**
siccitātēs (16), *dry weather.*
superiōre (17), *preceding.*

571. Ablative of Time. — The time when or within which an action takes place is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

The preceding year they hid in swamps, **superiōre annō in palūdēs sē abdidērunt.**

COMPOSITION

572. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. On that day about three hundred soldiers were surrounded by the Morini. 2. The Morini commanded them to lay down their arms. 3. Our men made a circle and defended themselves. 4. At that time Caesar was not far away. 5. He sent cavalry as relief to the soldiers. 6. The enemy threw down their arms and fled. 7. The next day Labienus was sent to pacify the Morini.

QUESTIONNAIRE

573. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quot mīlitēs ex nāvibus expositī erant?
2. Quō contendēbant?
3. Quōs Caesar pācāverant?
4. Quō hī inductī sunt?
5. Quid fēcērunt?
6. Quid Rōmānīs imperant?
7. Quid fēcerunt Rōmānī?
8. Quamdiū pugnābant?
9. Quī volnera recēpērunt?
10. Quid Caesar mīsit?
11. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
12. Quō Caesar Labiēnum mīsit?
13. Quibuscum eum mīsit?
14. Quid hostibus accidit?
15. Quō hīberna Caesar cōnstituit?

574. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

winter, **hiems, hiemis,** f.
partly, **partim**
the rest, **cēterī, -ōrum,** m.
harbor, **portus, -ūs,** m.
repair, renew, **reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**
supervise, care for, **cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus**
stir up, arouse, **sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātus**

THE PONT-DU-GARD, AN ANCIENT ROMAN AQUEDUCT IN FRANCE

COMMENTĀRIUS QUĪNTUS

During the winter of 55–54 B.C. Caesar's legions were in winter quarters among the Belgians. Before leaving the army for his accustomary stay in Nearer Gaul, he ordered his officers to repair the old ships and to build as many new ones as possible. These were of a design somewhat different from those that he had formerly used. They were made lower, so that they could be anchored in shallower water and could be drawn on shore more readily.

After holding court in nearer Gaul, Caesar went into Illyricum, where the Piustae were making incursions into Roman territory. The Piustae settled the matter without resort to arms, and Caesar, in the spring of 54 B.C., proceeded to the army. Upon his arrival, he found that, in spite of a scarcity of material, his men had built about six hundred ships. Before setting out on his second visit to Britain, he marched against the Treviri, who had refrained from sending representatives to the general councils of the Gallic chiefs and, in addition to showing a spirit of non-coöperation in the administration of the province under Roman authority, had utterly refused to follow his instructions.

After settling matters with the chiefs of this tribe, Caesar sailed from port Itius to Britain, taking with him certain Gallic leaders, so that they could not start an insurrection during his absence. From this number Dumnorix, whom Caesar had decided by all means to take with him, escaped, but was pursued by the cavalry, and, offering resistance, was slain.

At the close of the British campaign Caesar returned to Gaul and established winter quarters in several different places. The quarters of Cicero in Belgium were attacked by the Eburones, and a gallant defense against overwhelming opposition resulted in holding the camp till Caesar arrived with reënforcements. The headquarters of Labienus were likewise attacked, but with disaster to the enemy.

DĒ MŌRIBUS ĪNSTITŪTĪSQUE BRITANNŌRUM COMMENTĀRIUS QUĪNTUS

Caesar Omnia Parat

575. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam lēgātīs imperat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Cum Caesar, aestāte initā, ad exercitum vēnisset, omnēs nāvēs ad portum Itium convenīre iussit. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīlia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus.

Dumnorīx Coniūrātiōnem Facit

576. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteā quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent.

aedificandās (3), **ad** is omitted with **cūrō**.
Itius (5), **-ī**, m., Boulogne or Wissant.
cupidum (11), supply **esse**.
quod (13), *the fact that*.
dictum (15), **-ī**, n., *remark*.
īnsuētus (17), **-a, -um,** *unused to*.
religiō (17), **-ōnis,** f., *religious duties*.
obstinātē (18), adv., *resolutely*.

577. Objective Genitive. — Certain adjectives require an objective genitive to complete their meaning. A participle, used as an adjective, may take this construction.

He is desirous of power, **cupidus imperī est.**
He is unacquainted with sailing, **īnsuētus nāvigandī est.**

COMPOSITION

578. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Since he knew that Dumnorix was desirous of revolution, Caesar ordered him to remain in the camp. Dumnorix, a man of great (power of) mind, wished to remain in Gaul. Therefore he told Caesar that he was not accustomed to sailing and asked that he be allowed to remain in Gaul. But since Caesar was eager for peace, he did not grant his request. Eager for liberty, Dumnorix tried to arouse the Haedui.

QUESTIONNAIRE

579. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi Caesar fuerat?
2. Quō tum ībat?
3. Quid imperāvit?
4. Quō lēgiōnēs pervēnērunt?
5. Quī eō convēnērunt?
6. Quis inter eōs erat?
7. Quāre Caesar id vōluit?
8. Quid dē Caesare dīxerat?
9. Quō modō Haeduī ēius verba ferēbant?
10. Quid Dumnorīx Caesarem rogābat?
11. Quam causam dīcēbat Dumnorīx?
12. Quid vidēbat?
13. Quid tum iussit Caesar?

580. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

weather, **tempestās, -ātis,** f.
ascribe, attribute, **tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus**
be accustomed, **cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus**
return, **revertor, revertī, reversus sum**
departure, **profectiō, -ōnis,** f.

Dumnorīx Domum Discēdit

581. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat, nē quid sibi āc reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter XXV in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.

Dumnorīx Interficitur

582. At omnium impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

cīvitātī (1), explain the case.
dīgnitātis (2), explain the case.
coërcendum (2), supply **esse.**
nē quid (3), *that nothing.*
sibi (4), explain the case.
chōrus (5), **-ī,** m., *northwest wind.*
flō (7), **-āre,** *blow.*
dare operam (7), *to take pains.*
domum (11), explain the use.
retrahō (14), **-ere, -trāxī, -trāctus,** *drag back, bring back.*
retrahī (14), note the infinitive; supply **eum** as subject.
faciat (15), implied ind. discourse.
implōrō (17), **-āre,** *beseech.*
clāmitō (17), **-āre,** *call out repeatedly.*

583. Genitive of the Whole. — The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken. It is also called the *partitive genitive.*

He sent ahead a large part of the cavalry, **magnam partem equitātūs praemīsit.**

COMPOSITION

584. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Since Caesar attributed great influence to Dumnorix the Haeduan, he ordered him to remain in the camp. 2. He thought that he ought to keep a large part of the cavalry ready. 3. He thought that Dumnorix had it in mind to do him (Caesar) some injury. 4. The army was held in camp by the wind which blows in those regions during the greater part of the year. 5. While the attention of all was occupied, Dumnorix fled. 6. The cavalry pursued him and finally put him to death.

QUESTIONNAIRE

585. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid statuit Caesar?
2. Cūr id statuit?
3. Quo modō coërcuit?
4. Quamdiū commorātus est?
5. Quāre commorātus est?
6. Quid cūrāvit?
7. Quid faciēbant mīlitēs?
8. Quid fēcit Dumnorīx?
9. Quid fēcit Caesar?
10. Quid imperāvit Caesar?
11. Quid iussit?
12. Quid fēcērunt equitēs?
13. Quid clāmitāvit Haeduus?
14. Eratne vērum?

586. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

sunset, **sōlis occāsus, ūs,** m.
tide, **aestus, -ūs,** m.
sum total, **summa, -ae,** f.
course, **cursus, -ūs,** m.
day break, **orta lūx**
inner, **interior, -ius**
cross over, **transeō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus**
carry away, **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**

Caesar in Britanniam Iterum Pervēnit

587. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Africō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Accessum est ad Britānniam meridiānō ferē tempore. Eō cum vēnisset, iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX.

Incolae Britanniae

588. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quī nātī esse in īnsulā, ipsā memoriā, dīcunt, maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsierunt et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.

Africus (2), **-ī,** m., *southwest wind.*
Cassivellaunus (8), **-ī,** m., *Caswallon.*
Tamesis (9), **-is,** m., *the Thames.*
nummus (17), **-ī,** m., *money.*
tālea (17), **-ae,** f., *bar, ingot.*
examinō (18), **-āre,** *weigh out.*
plumbum album (18), *tin.*
aes (20), **aeris,** n., *copper.*
fāgus (21), **-ī,** f., *beech tree.*
abiēs (21), **-etis,** f., *fir, spruce.*
lepus (22), **-oris,** m., *hare.*
ānser (22), **-eris,** f., *goose.*

589. The Infinitive as Subject. — The infinitive may be used as the subject of a verb.

To taste the flesh of the goose, they consider a sin, **ānserem gustāre fās esse nōn putant.**

To keep rabbits (hares) is their hobby, **leporēs habēre eīs voluptātem dat.**

COMPOSITION

590. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. To kill the goose was unlawful among the Britons. 2. To use iron, instead of gold, for money, was their custom. 3. The king of that part of the island which faces toward the southwest (south and sunset) was at that time Caswallon. 4. To import copper and to export tin was the custom of the Britons. 5. Caesar writes that the Britons use iron as money. 6. Some had come from Gaul for the sake of plunder.

QUESTIONNAIRE

591. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quŏ solvit Caesar?
2. Cursumne tenēbat?
3. Quid cōnspexit?
4. Quid fēcerant hostēs?
5. Quod flūmen ibi erat?
6. Quamdiū ā marī abest Tamesis?
7. Unde ortī sunt nōnnūllī Britannī?
8. Cūr ad Britanniam vēnerant?
9. Quālia erant aedificia?
10. Quō nummō ūtēbantur?
11. Quid ibi nascēbātur?
12. Quālem māteriam habēbant?
13. Quid nōn fās putant?
14. Cūr haec alunt?

592. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

a majority of, **plerīque, -aeque, -aque**
assault, **oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus**
attack, **adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum**
pay, accomplish, **efficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus**
produce, weigh out, **pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus**
sudden, **repentīnus, -a, -um**

Caesar Īnsulam esse Triquetram Arbitratus Est

593. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem; īnferior, ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem: quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed ēius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum octingentum in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

īnsula (1), supply **est.**
triquetrus (1), **-a, -um,** *triangular.*
Cantium (3), **-ī,** n., *Kent.*
adpellō (3), **-ere, -pulī, -pulsus,** *put in, come to land.*
sōlem (4), supply **spectat.**
alterum (6), supply **latus.**
Hibernia (7), **-ae,** f., *Ireland.*
dīmidium (7), **-ī,** n., *a half.*
atque (8), used for **quam.**
Mona (10), **-ae,** f., *Isle of Man.*
brūma (12), **-ae,** f., *winter solstice.*
percontātiō (13), **-ōnis,** f., *inquiry.*
mēnsūra (14), **-ae,** f., *measurement.*
longitūdō (15), supply **est.**
vīciēs (21), adv., *twenty times.*

594. The Passive Construction in Indirect Statement. — When the verb of saying and verb of the indirect statement are passive, the infinitive is followed by a predicate nominative in agreement with the subject of the main verb.

Others are said to have been born on the island, **aliī in īnsulā nātī esse dīcuntur.**

COMPOSITION

595. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Britain is said to be an island. 2. The inhabitants are thought to have been brought over from the continent. 3. A large island, by the name of Ireland, is said to lie in the ocean opposite Britain. 4. The nights are said to be very long; in winter they are thought to extend over (through) thirty days. 5. Caesar is supposed (thought) to have tested (**probō**) this fact by means of the waterclock.

QUESTIONNAIRE

596. Answer in complete sentences in Latin:

1. Quālis erat īnsula?
2. Quō ūnum latus spectat?
3. Quō Cantium spectat?
4. Quō dīxit Caesar īnferiōrem angulum spectāre?
5. Estne id vērum?
6. Quae īnsula prope eam est?
7. Quamdiū est nox?
8. Quō tempore annī?
9. Quō modō Caesar id probat?
10. Quae īnsula etiam est prope eam?
11. Quantum Caesar dīxit circuitum esse?

597. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

straightway, **cōnfestim**
moat, **fossa, -ae,** f.
night, adj., **nocturnus, -a, -um**
by night, **noctū**
tower, **turris, -is,** f.
assault, **oppugnātiō, -ōnis,** f.
fill up, fill, **compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus**
obtain a request, **impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus**

Incolae Cantī Lacte et Carne Vīvunt

598. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā āspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs. Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent.

Britannī Sē Dedunt

599. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō victus, fīnibus vāstātīs, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Nē ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

hūmānus (1), **-a, -um,** *civilized.*
omnis (2), **-e,** *entirely.*
serō (4), **-ere, sevī, sātus,** *sow.*
lacte (4), transl. case by *on.*
carō (4), **-nis,** f., *flesh, meat.*
pellibus (4), transl. case by *in.*
vestiō (5), **-īre,** *dress.*
vitrum (5), **-ī,** n., *woad,* a plant.
īnficiō (5), **-ere,** etc., *paint.*
caeruleus (6), **-a, -um,** *blue.*
āspectū (7), explain the use.
capillus (7), **-ī,** m., *hair.*
rādō (8), **-ere, rāsī, rāsus,** *shave.*
labrum (8), **-ī,** n., *lip.*

600. Ablative of Means. — The means by which an act is accomplished is denoted by the ablative case. It may be translated by *in*, *with*, *on*, or *by means of*.

They live on the flesh of animals, **carne animālium vīvunt.**
They dress in the skins of animals, **pellibus vestiuntur.**

COMPOSITION

601. Write the following sentences in Latin:

The Gauls live on grain, as do also the Romans, but the Britons live to a great extent on the meat of animals which they have caught, or on cheese. The Romans and the Gauls are clothed in garments (**vestis**) of linen (**līnum**) but the Britons are clad in the skins of wild animals. To make themselves seem terrible, they paint themselves with blue paint.

QUESTIONNAIRE

602. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī hūmānissimī erant?
2. Ubi est Cantium?
3. Differēbantne ā Gallīs?
4. Quō modō vīvēbant?
5. Quam partem nōn rādēbant?
6. Quī Cantiō praeerant?
7. Quis nūntiōs mīsit?
8. Quid is eīs imperāvit?
9. Quid ēvēnit?
10. Quid fēcit dux?
11. Quid iussit Caesar?
12. Quandō solvit Caesar?
13. Quā hōrā terram attigit?
14. Quō modō terram attigit?
15. Quae incolumia indūxit?

603. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

side, **latus, -eris,** n.
very many, **complūrēs, -a**
middle of, **medius, -a, -um**
almost, **ferē**
some, **nōnnūllus, -a, -um**
equal, **pār, paris**
set, go down, fall, **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsus**
rise, spring from, begin, **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**
look at, face, view, **spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus**

Nerviī Hīberna Cicerōnis Oppūgnant

604. Rebelliōne factā, Sabīnō cum lēgiōne interfectō, Ambiorīx, prīnceps Eburōnum, Nerviīs persuāsit ut hīberna Cicerōnis oppūgnārent. Ita, ut persuāsum est, fēcērunt.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs fortiter resistitur. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

Persuādēre Cicerōnī ut Discēderet Cōnantur

605. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, cum Cicerōne conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī.' Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā; licēre illīs ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec respondet: 'Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

missī (5), *those who had been sent.*
māteria (6), **-ae,** f., *timber.*
opus (12), indecl., *needful.*
ultrō (14), *spontaneously.*
vōx (15), **vōcis,** f., *plea.*
ostentō (20), **-āre,** *point out.*

606. The Jussive Subjunctive. — The subjunctive is used to express an indirect or polite command. It is translated by the English *let, should.*

They will say, let them send envoys to Caesar, **dīcent: lēgātos ad Caesarem mittant.**

He said they should send ambassadors to Caesar, **dīxit: lēgatōs ad Caesarem mitterent.**

COMPOSITION

607. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Ambiorix had persuaded the Nervii to make a revolt. He gave them this command (**mandātum**): they should attack the winter quarters of Cicero, and, having filled the moat, should climb the walls into the camp. Certain of the chiefs asked Cicero for a conference. When this had been granted, they showed him that the Romans were hard pressed. They urged him to go out. Cicero told them to send envoys about this to Caesar.

QUESTIONNAIRE

608. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Sabīnō acciderat?
2. Quid Ambiorīx fēcit?
3. Quid fēcērunt Nerviī?
4. Quid fēcit Cicerō?
5. Quid noctū factum est?
6. Quid posterō diē fēcērunt hostēs?
7. Quid fēcērunt mīlitēs?
8. Parcēbatne sibi Cicerō?
9. Quid rōgāvērunt hostēs?
10. Estne eīs potestās facta?
11. Quid dīxērunt?
12. Quid Cicerō respondit?
13. Quālis erat Cicerō?

609. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

previous, **superior, -ius**
shout, **clāmor, -ōris,** m.
certain, **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**
wind, **ventus, -ī,** m.
spread, **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus**
cover, conceal, protect, **tego, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**
seize, catch, **comprehendō, comprehendere, -hendī, -hēnsus**

Nerviī Castra Rōmāna Obsident

610. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant, et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

Nerviī Castra Rōmāna Oppūgnant

611. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coörtō ventō ferventēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

ferrāmentum (4), **-ī**, n., *tools*.
cōpiā (5), supply *being*.
caespes (6), **-itis**, f., *sod*.
sagulum (6), **-ī**, n., *cloak*.
exhaurio (6), **-īre, -hausi, -haustus**, *dig out*.
fervēns (12), **-entis**, *red hot*.
argilla (12), **-ae**, f., *clay*.
funda (12), **-ae**, f., *sling*.
glāns (12), **-dis**, f., *shot*.
fervefactus (12), **-a, -um**, *blazing*.
iaculum (12), **-ī**, n., *dart*.
strāmentum (13), **-ī**, n., *straw*.
scāla (16), **-ae**, f., *ladder*.

612. The Subjunctive in Result Clauses. — The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **ut nōn** to denote a result. Compare this with negative purpose in which **nē** is used. A result clause is frequently preceded by some warning word such as **tam, ita, tantus.**

They fought so bravely that the enemy fled, **tam fortiter pugnāvērunt ut hostēs fūgerint.**

COMPOSITION

613. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Nervii had observed the practice of our soldiers so carefully that they were able to build a wall and a ditch. 2. So great was their number that they were able to do this within a space of a few hours. 3. When they advanced, they attacked so fiercely that not one of our men dared to leave the wall. 4. Then they hurled burning darts at our huts. 5. So strongly did the wind blow that it spread the fire through the camp.

QUESTIONNAIRE

614. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
2. Quī eōs docēbant?
3. Quae rēs dēerant?
4. Quamdiū labōrāvērunt?
5. Quid etiam parāvērunt?
6. Quid hostēs iuvābat?
7. Quid iacere coepērunt?
8. Quid parābant hostēs?
9. Quid accidit?
10. Quid fēcērunt nostrī?
11. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
12. Quid fēcērunt centūriōnēs?
13. Quid ēvēnit?
14. Quid nēmō ausus est?

615. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

continuous, **perpetuus, -a, -um**
which (of two), **uter, utra, utrum**
unharmed, **incolumis, -e**
rivalry, **contrōversia, -ae,** f.
accident, **cāsus, -ūs,** m.
dense, **cōnfertus, -a, -um**
press on, **īnstō, īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus**
advance, proceed, **prōgredior, prōgredī, progressus sum**

Pullō et Vorēnus Contrōversiam Habent

616. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs in cōnfertissimōs hostēs. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vallō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur.

Alter Alterum Iuvant

617. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

alterī (4), explain the case.
anteferō (4), **-ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** *prefer, place ahead of.*
exīstimātiō (10), **-ōnis,** f., *opinion.*
verūtum (14), **-ī,** n., *dart.*
balteus (15), **-ī,** m., *belt.*
dēfīgō (15), **-ere, -fīxī, -fīxus,** *fasten.*
cōnantī (17), supply **eī,** dat.
succurrō (18), **-ere, -currī, -cursūrus,** *rush up to, aid.*
comminus (20), *hand to hand.*

618. The Dative of Reference. — The dative is used to denote the person referred to. When the dative is a noun, it is translated as though it were a possessive. When it is a participle, it is translated by *as* followed by a finite verb.

The shield of Pullo was pierced, **scūtum Pullōnī trānsfīxum est.**
This accident delayed his hand as he tried to draw his sword, **hic cāsus manum morātus est cōnantī gladium ēdūcere.**

COMPOSITION

619. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Pullo leaped from the wall and rushed into the ranks of the enemy. Vorenus followed him. A dart pierced the helmet (**galea**) of Vorenus; an arrow, the belt of Pullo. This retarded Pullo's speed as he tried to proceed. The enemy then surrounded him and tried to wound him with their spears. Vorenus rushed to aid him. His shield was taken from his hand. Pullo then rushed to the aid of Vorenus.

QUESTIONNAIRE

620. Answer the following in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis erat Pullō?
2. Quis erat Vorēnus?
3. Quid inter sē habēbant?
4. Quid fēcit Pullō?
5. Quid inquit?
6. Quid tum ēgit?
7. Quid fēcit Vorēnus?
8. Quid fēcerunt hostēs?
9. Quid Pullōnī accidit?
10. Quid fēcit Vorēnus?
11. Quid Vorēnō accidit?
12. Quid fēcit Pullō?

621. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

a certain, **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**
scout, **explōrātor, -ōris,** m.
siege, **obsidiō, -ōnis,** f.
former, **prīstinus, -a, -um**
catch sight of, **cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus**
instruct, **praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptus**
bring down to, **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**

Caesar ad Cicerōnem Epistulam Mittit

622. Caesar ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat, maximāque omnēs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

Cicerō Aliam Epistulam Mittit

623. Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse.

āmentum (9), **-ī**, n., *strap.*
dēligō (9), **-āre**, *tie.*
trāgula (12), **-ae**, f., *javelin.*
dēmō (15), **-ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus**, *take down.*
perlegō (15), **-ere**, *read through.*
recitō (16), **-āre**, *read aloud.*
fūmus (17), **-ī**, m., *smoke.*
incendium (17), **-ī**, n., *burning villages.*
dubitātiō (18), **-ōnis**, f., *doubt.*
cautē (22), *carefully, with caution.*

624. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive. — A substantive clause introduced by **ut** or **nē** is used as the object of verbs of persuading, warning, urging, and the like. The original form of the object clause was a command.

He advised them: "Do it" (he advised them to do it), **eōs monuit ut id facerent.**

COMPOSITION

625. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Caesar by promising great rewards persuaded a Gaul to carry a letter to Cicero. 2. He urged him to proceed very cautiously, as the roads were blocked by the enemy. 3. He advised him to tie the letter to his spear and throw that into the camp if he feared that the enemy were near. 4. In this letter Caesar urged Cicero to show his former valor and to resist bravely.

QUESTIONNAIRE

626. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. In quā rē Caesar salūtem posuit?
2. Quid fēcit?
3. Quō modō vēnit?
4. Quid monuit?
5. Quid scrīpsit?
6. Quibus litterīs ūsus est?
7. Quid accidit?
8. Quō modō inventa est?
9. Quid dubitātiōnem expulit?
10. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
11. Quem Cicerō repetīvit?
12. Quō eum mīsit?

627. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

valley, **vallēs, -is,** f.
siege, **obsidiō, -ōnis,** f.
small, **exiguus, -a, -um**
level, **aequus, -a, -um**
narrows, **angustiae, -ārum,** f.
especially, **praesertim,** adv.
baggage, **impedīmenta, -ōrum,** n.
each, **quisque, quaeque, quidque**
admire, wonder at, **admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus sum**
carry out, manage, **administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**

Caesar Hostēs Observant

628. Postero diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Alterō die, proeliō commissō, Caesar celeriter hostēs in fugam dat.

Caesar ad Cicerōnem Pervenit

629. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet.

rīvus (2), **-ī**, m., *river.*
tantulus (4), **-a, -um,** *so great.*
commūniō (7), **-īre,** *fortify.*
contrahō (10), **-ere, -trāxī, -trāctus,** *draw in, contract.*
vulnus (17), **-eris,** n., *wound.*
conlaudō (20), **-āre,** *praise highly, extol.*
singillātim (20), *one by one.*
cōnsōlor (24), **-ārī,** *reassure.*

630. Expressions of Necessity. — The second periphrastic conjugation is used to denote necessity. Since it is passive, the thing to be done is made the subject. The doer of the act is expressed by the dative. This is the so-called dative of apparent agent.

He thought he ought to let down on speed, **putāvit sibi dē celeritāte remittendum esse.**

COMPOSITION

631. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. When Caesar had learned that the enemy had withdrawn from Cicero's camp, he decided that he ought to send his army against them. 2. However, he did not think that he ought to lead his army across the river. 3. He knew that he ought to go to Cicero's camp as soon as possible. 4. He told Cicero that he ought to praise his soldiers for their valor. 5. He told the soldiers that they ought to rest.

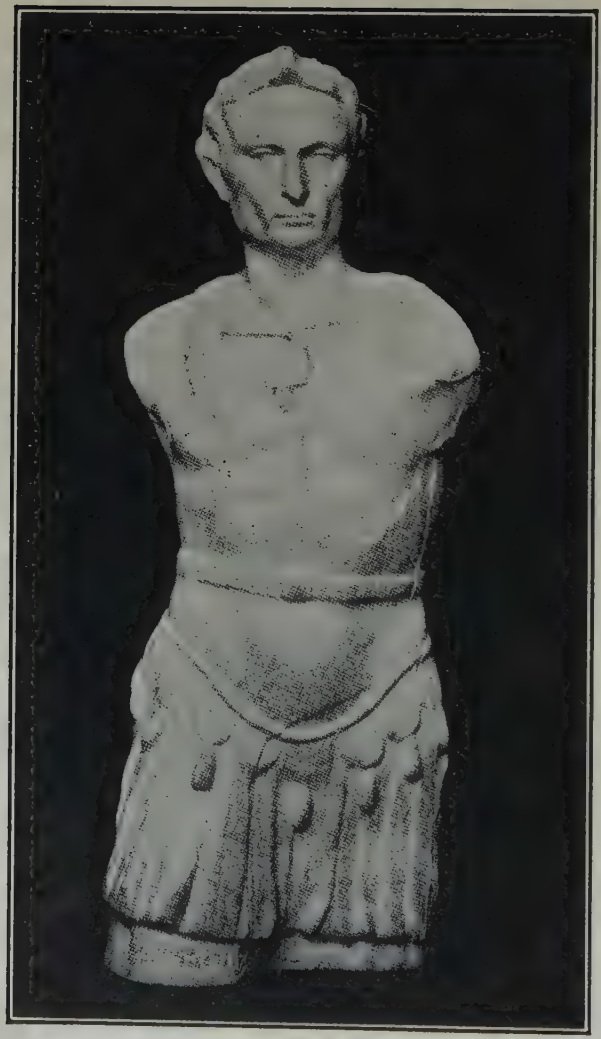
QUESTIONNAIRE

632. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi cōnspicātur hostēs?
2. Quid Caesar sciēbat?
3. Quid exīstimābat?
4. Quālia castra pōsuit?
5. Quō cōnsiliō id fēcit?
6. Cūr prōsequī dēsistit?
7. Quid vidēbat?
8. Quid fēcit?
9. Cūr mīrābātur?
10. Quid cognōvit?
11. Quid iūdicāvit?
12. Quid tum fēcit?

633. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

penalty, **poena, -ae,** f.
work, **opus, -eris,** n.
sudden, **subitus, -a, -um**
want, lack, **inopia, -ae,** f.
flock, **pecus, -oris,** n.
hostage, **obsēs, -idis,** c.
promise, **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
pay, weigh out, **pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus**



CAESAR, BY BESANÇON

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS

Caesar realized that, although Gaul had been subjugated, the spirit of the people was still unsubdued. The desire for independence was strong, the love of power among the leaders was ever urging them to seek to throw off Roman authority. There was a growing spirit of resistance to Roman rule, which could not safely be overlooked.

Accordingly, in the winter of 54–53 B.C., Caesar had his lieutenants make a levy in Gaul, by which they raised three additional legions. At the same time he sent to Cn. Pompey, requesting that the young men who had formerly taken the military oath in Nearer Gaul be called out and despatched to him in Farther Gaul.

Caesar's anticipations proved to be correct. In the summer of 53 B.C., disturbed conditions among the Belgic tribes caused him to lead his army against the Nervii, the Senones, the Carnutes, and the Menapii, while Labienus was conducting another successful campaign against the Treviri. After all these tribes had been quieted, Caesar built a second bridge across the Rhine. The Suebi, who had been preparing an attack, retreated into the woods, and Caesar, after laying waste their territories as a warning, returned to Gaul, destroying a portion of the bridge on the German side and placing a guard over the remainder, so that it might be rebuilt more easily if occasion should require it.

During his absence, the Sigambri, a German tribe, crossed the Rhine for plunder, and attacked the camp where Caesar had left the baggage and supplies of the entire army. This attack was held off with difficulty. In the meantime an insurrection broke out among the Senones and the Carnutes. After its suppression Caesar investigated its origin and had Acco, its inspirer, executed. Then he established his legions in three different camps and returned to Italy, in accordance with his usual custom, to hold court.

DĒ MŌRIBUS GALLŌRUM ET GERMĀNŌRUM

Caesar Iterum Rhēnum Trānsit

634. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, magnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur.

Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit.

Ubiī Eum Certiōrem Faciunt

635. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

mōtus (9), **-ūs,** m., *uprising.*
laedō (12), **-ere, laesī, laesus,** *injure, break.*
parcat (12), *he spare* (with dat.).
commūnī (13), *indiscriminate.*
nocēns (13), **-tis,** *guilty.*
darī (14), for fut. pass.
dēnūntiō (18), **-āre,** *order.*

636. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement. — A subordinate clause which is a part of a quotation has its verb in the subjunctive. When the indicative is found in an indirect statement, the clause is an insertion by the person who is making the indirect statement.

They promised that they would give hostages if he wished them, **sī obsidēs vellet, sē datūrōs esse pollicitī sunt.**

COMPOSITION

637. Write the following sentences in Latin:

The Ubii informed Caesar that the Suebi, who were their neighbors, had retreated into the forests and swamps. A few days later they reported that the Suebi had compelled all those who were under their sway to supply troops. He was also informed that they were collecting into one place all the supplies which they had gathered from those who were their neighbors.

QUESTIONNAIRE

638. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Caesar cōnstituit?
2. Cūr Rhēnum trānsiit?
3. Quō modō trānsiit?
4. Quō modō efficitur?
5. Cūr vēnērunt lēgātī?
6. Quid dīcēbant?
7. Quid petēbant?
8. Quid fēcit Caesar?
9. Quid nūntiābant Ubiī?
10. Quid fēcit Caesar?
11. Quid Ubiīs imperāvit?
12. Quā rātiōne id fēcit?
13. Quid mandāvit?
14. Cūr eōs mittī iussit?

639. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

beginning, **initium, -ī,** n.
canton, **pāgus, -ī,** m.
out of the way, **aliēnus, -a, -um**
since, because, **quoniam**
almost, nearly, **paene**
determine, resolve upon, **īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus**
oppress, crush, **opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus**

Suebī in Silvās Sē Abdunt

640. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: 'Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

In Galliā sunt Undique Factiōnēs

641. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est, in summā, tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

penitus (4), adv., *inland.*
intrōrsus (6), adv., *into the interior.*
natīvus (7), **-a, -um,** *natural.*
initium (9), **-ī,** n., *outskirts.*
arbitrium (18), **-ī,** n., *decision.*
redeat (19), causal cl., *because.*
antīquitus (19), adv., *from ancient times.*
auxilī (20), gen., with **egeō.**
faciat (22), *he should do.*
habeat (22), *he would have.*

642. Substantive Clauses in Apposition. — A clause implying either purpose or command, and introduced by **ut** or **nē** followed by the subjunctive, may be in apposition with a noun.

They did it for this reason, that the commons should not be in want of aid, **ēius reī causā id fēcērunt, nē plēbs auxilī egēret.**

They worked with this design, (namely) to capture the city, **eō cōnsiliō labōrāvērunt ut urbem caperent.**

COMPOSITION

643. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Ubiī reported that the Suebī had retreated to the forests with the (this) design, that they would await the arrival of the army. 2. The Gauls have established the custom of patrons for the (this) reason, that the common people may not be servants to the more powerful. 3. The (political) theory of all Gaul is this, that there should be two parties.

QUESTIONNAIRE

644. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī imperāta fēcērunt?
2. Quid fēcērunt Ubiī?
3. Ubi erant Suēbī?
4. Quī cum eīs erant?
5. Quid nōn aliēnum vidētur?
6. Quid est pāgus?
7. Quō perventum erat?
8. Ubi factiōnēs erant?
9. Quī prīncipēs sunt?
10. Cūr hī erant prīncipēs?
11. Quid nōn patitur?
12. Quā rē nōn patitur?
13. Quae rātiō totīus Galliae est?

645. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

party, faction, **factiō, -ōnis,** f.
chieftainship, **prīncipātus, -ūs,** m.
suddenly, **repente,** adv.
client, vassal, **cliēns, clientis,** m.
join, unite, **iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus**
enter, begin, **ineō, inīre, iniī, initus**
collect, gather together, **conligō, conligere, conlēgī, conlēctus**
be strong, be powerful, **valeō, valēre, valuī**

Sequanī Germānōs Arcessunt

646. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterīus Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat.

Caesar Haeduōs et Remōs Iuvat

647. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

hī (2), *the latter.*
iactūra (4), **-ae,** f., *expense.*
pollicitātiō (4), **-ōnis,** f., *promise.*
eōrum (17), the Sequani.
adgregō (18), **-āre,** *attach to.*
inimīcitia (22), **-ae,** f., *enmity.*
clientēla (23), **-ae,** f., *vassals.*
dicō (23), **-āre,** with **sē,** *bind.*

648. Clauses of Result as Appositives. — A clause of result may stand in apposition with a noun implying a result. It is often difficult to distinguish this from a substantive clause of purpose. If the word *result* may be substituted for the noun, the clause is one of result.

This was the state of affairs, (namely) that the Haedui held the chief place, **hic erat stātus, ut Haeduī prīncipātum habērent.**

COMPOSITION

649. Write the following sentences in Latin:

At the time that (when) Caesar came into Gaul, this was the situation: the Germans were oppressing the Sequani and the Haedui. With the arrival of Caesar, the influence of the Haedui became so great that the Germans did not dare to attack them. Matters therefore were in this state: the clients of the Sequani began to return to the Haedui, because they were enjoying a fair government.

QUESTIONNAIRE

650. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quae factiōnēs erant?
2. Quī Germānōs arcessīverant?
3. Quid Haeduīs accidit?
4. Quid clientēs fēcērunt?
5. Quid Sēquanī eōs cōgēbant?
6. Quid fēcit Dīviciācus?
7. Quid tum accidit?
8. Quā dē causā?
9. Quī secundum locum habēbant?
10. Quī eīs sē mandābant?
11. Quāre nōn sē Haeduīs dīcābant?

651. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

training, **disciplīna, -ae,** f.
murder, **caedēs, -is,** f.
any, **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**
knight, **eques, -itis,** m.
dare, venture, **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**
decide, decree, **dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus**
withdraw, go away, **dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus**

Gallī Nōbilēs et Plēbem Habent

652. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

Druidēs Magistrātum Gerunt

653. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

aliquō (1) . . . **numerō,** *of any account.*
honōre (2), *of any standing.*
aes aliēnum (4), **-ī,** n., *debt.*
druidēs (8), **-um,** m., *Druids, priests.*
prōcūrō (10), **-āre,** *take care of.*
interpretor (10), **-ārī,** *explain.*
impius (19), **-a, -um,** *wicked.*
scelerātus (19), **-a, -um,** *accursed.*
sermō (20), **-ōnis,** m., *conversation.*
dēfugiō (20), **-ere, -fūgī,** *shun.*
contāgiō (21), **-ōnis,** f., *contact.*
incommodum (21), **-ī,** n., *harm.*

654. Appositional Genitive. — The genitive may be added to a noun to explain its meaning. It is equivalent to an appositive, and may often be translated by *called* or *known as*.

They fear the title king, **timent nōmen regis.**

They are in the condition called slavery, **sunt in numerō servōrum.**

COMPOSITION

655. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The common people were held in a condition of slavery. 2. They were regarded in the same light as slaves. 3. The Druids who preside over public business (affairs) and administer the sacrifices are in the category of the most humble. 4. The name Druid is held as great and sacred among them. 5. When the Druids ban anyone from the sacrifices, the rest of the Gauls regard them as accursed.

QUESTIONNAIRE

656. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quae genera hominum in Galliā erant?
2. Quō modō plēbēs habēbātur?
3. Quid fēcit?
4. Quid saepe accidit?
5. Quō stātū tum erant?
6. Quid est alterum genus?
7. Quid est tertium?
8. Quid fēcērunt druidēs?
9. Quārē adulēscentēs ad eōs veniēbant?
10. Quid cōnstituērunt?
11. Quid dēcernēbant?
12. Quid poenae cōnstituēbant?
13. Quāle genus gravissimum erat?
14. Quid fēcērunt interdictīs Gallī?

657. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

equal, **pār, paris**

sometimes, **nōn numquam**

more, **plūrēs, plūra**

many times, **plērumque**

convene, hold a meeting, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessūrus**

find out, discover, **reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus**

perish, **intereō, interīre, interiī, interitūrus**

Gallī in Fīnibus Carnutum Cōnsīdunt

658. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Gallī Disciplīnam Habent

659. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta pendunt. Magnum numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.

In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet.

suffrāgium (4), **-ī,** n., *ballot, vote.*
illō (11), adv., *to that place.*
versus (14), **-ūs,** m., *a verse.*
anima (19), **-ae,** f., *soul.*
sīdus (22), **-eris,** n., *constellation.*
mundus (22), **-ī,** m., *the universe.*

660. The Dative with Special Verbs. — The dative is used with certain intransitive verbs which imply their own object. Such are verbs meaning to do injury to, grant pardon to, be favorable to, yield obedience to, etc.

Winds injure the forests, **ventī silvīs nocent.**
They obey the decisions of the Druids, **dēcrētīs druidum parent.**

COMPOSITION

661. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. A chief presides over the Druids, one who is elected by the vote of the others. 2. Sometimes one who excels the others in prestige succeeds. 3. They used to meet in a place which they consider the center of Gaul. 4. Those who brought quarrels to them obeyed their decisions. 5. The Druids obey their chief, and the people obey the Druids. 6. They believe that the soul passes from one body into another after death.

QUESTIONNAIRE

662. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quis druidibus praeerat?
2. Quis succēdit?
3. Quō tempore?
4. Quō conveniēbant?
5. Cūr eō conveniēbant?
6. Quō tempore?
7. Quī hūc veniēbant?
8. Ubi disciplīna inventa est?
9. Quāre druidēs litterīs nōn saepe ūtēbantur?
10. Quibus litterīs ūtēbantur?
11. Quid persuādēre volēbant
12. Dē quā rē etiam disputābant?

663. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

life, **vīta, -ae,** f.
punishment, **supplicium, -ī,** n.
heavy, serious, **gravis, -e**
to a degree, **admodum,** adv.
dwell, be occupied with, been gaged in, **versor, versārī, versātus sum**
give in return, **reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus**
be lacking, fail, **dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus**

Gallī Religiōnibus Dēditī Sunt

664. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Deōs Quōsdam Colunt

665. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

immolō (4), **-āre,** *sacrifice.*
voveō (4), **-ēre,** n., *vow.*
administer (5), **-tri,** m., *executor.*
nūmen (7), **-inis,** n., *divine will.*
plācō (7), **-āre,** *appease.*
immānis (8), **-e,** *huge.*
vīmen (9), **-inis,** n., *withe.*
fūrtum (12), **-ī,** n., *theft.*
latrōcinium (12), **-ī,** n., *highway robbery.*
noxiā (12), **-ae,** f., *crime.*
colō (15), **-ere, -uī, cultus,** *worship.*
artificium (22), **-ī,** n., *trade.*

666. The Objective Genitive. — A genitive may be used to limit a noun containing a verbal idea. To determine whether the genitive is objective turn the noun into a verb. If the noun in the genitive becomes the object, it is an objective genitive.

They descend to the punishment of the innocent, **ad supplicia innocentium dēscendunt.**

TEST: They punish *the innocent.*

COMPOSITION

667. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Those who are seriously ill vow to offer sacrifices to the gods. 2. They will use the Druids as the executors of these sacrifices. 3. They used to think that the gods could not be appeased, unless a human life had been given for a life. 4. Their statues were of giant size, and were used for the punishment of those who were caught in crime. 5. When sickness came, they asked Apollo to ward off the disease.

QUESTIONNAIRE

668. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quibus rēbus Gallī dēditī erant?
2. Quid faciēbant adfectī maiōribus morbīs?
3. Quālēs victimās habēbant?
4. Cūr hominēs immolābant?
5. Quid arbitrābantur?
6. Quid aliī habēbant?
7. Quid complēbant?
8. Quid tum faciēbant?
9. Quōs immolābant?
10. Quid arbitrābantur?
11. Quid faciēbant cum cōpia nocentium dēficeret?
12. Quōs deōs colēbant?
13. Cūr Mercurium colēbant?

669. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

disgraceful, **turpis, -e**
relative, **propinquus, -ī, m.**
view, **cōnspectus, -ūs, m.**
just as, **sīcut,** adv.
find out, **comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus**
bring together, collect, **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus**

Gallī Mōrēs Singulārēs Habent

670. Martī, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Virī Uxōrēsque Coniūnctim Bona Habent

671. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sīcut in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

superāvērunt (2), explain the mode.
animal (3), **-ālis,** n., *living creature.*
Dīs (4), **Dītis,** m., *Pluto,* god of the underworld.
prōdō (5), **-ere, -dīdī, -itus,** *hand down.*
nātālis (7), **-e,** *birthday.*
palam (10), adv., *openly.*
dōs (12), **dōtis,** f., *dowry.*
aestimātiō (13), **-ōnis,** f., *valuation, appraisal.*
coniūnctim (14), *jointly.*
frūctus (16), **-ūs,** m., *profit.*
inlūstris (18), **-e,** *distinguished.*
excruciō (22), **-āre,** *torture.*

672. Iterative Use of *Cum*. — When **cum** is used in the sense of *whenever*, it is followed by the indicative.

Whenever they have conquered, they offer sacrifices, **cum superāvērunt, sacrificia faciunt.**

COMPOSITION

673. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Whenever they conquer, they devote a part of the booty to Mars. 2. It is said that the Druids teach many facts (things) about the people. 3. Whenever they compute time, they do it in such a way (so) that the days come after the nights. 4. When children stand near their fathers, their mothers take them away because they consider this disgraceful. 5. When the father dies, an investigation is held by his next of kin. 6. Husbands and wives have a joint account of their property.

QUESTIONNAIRE

674. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid vovēbant Gallī?
2. Cuī vovēbant?
3. Quid immolābant?
4. Ubi haec immolābant?
5. Unde oriēbāntur?
6. Quō modō tempus dīvidēbant?
7. Quō modō diēs observābant?
8. Quid dē puerīs cōnstituēbant?
9. Quid uxōrēs ferēbant?
10. Quid virī faciēbant?
11. Quid tum fiēbant?
12. Alterō mortuō, quid accīdit?
13. Quō modō accidēbat?
14. Quid servīs ēveniēbat?

675. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

previous to, above, **suprā**
and not, nor, **nēve**
a little, **paulō,** adv.
council, **concilium, -ī,** n.
it is evident, **cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus**
speak, **loquor, -ī, locūtus sum**
be in charge of, **praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus**

Magistrātūs Cēnsūram Gerunt

676. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Germānī ā Gallīs Differunt

677. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student. Prōmiscuē in flūmina perluuntur et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs magnā corporis parte nūdā ūtuntur.

fūnus (1), **-eris,** n., *funeral.*
cultus (1), **-ūs,** m., *civilization.*
vīvus (2), **-ā, -um,** *living.*
dīligō (4), **-ere, -lēxī, -lēctus,** *be fond of.*
cremō (5), **-āre,** *burn, cremate.*
vēnātiō (21), **-ōnis,** f., *hunting.*
dūritia (22), **-ae,** f., *hardship.*
perluor (23), **-ī, -lūtus sum,** *bathe.*
pellis (23), **-is,** f., *skin, hide.*
rēnō (23), **-ōnis,** f., *deerskin.*

678. The Relative Clause of Purpose. — A relative clause may be used to express purpose when the emphasis is upon the persons mentioned. It may be translated by an infinitive phrase.

They have men to look after these things, **habent eōs quī hīs rēbus praesint.**

COMPOSITION

679. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The Gauls threw into the fire what was dear to the man while he was alive. 2. Formerly even living creatures beloved by them were cremated along with the person (him) who had died. 3. Some states provide by law that all news must be brought to the chiefs. 4. It is not permitted to debate public questions unless the chiefs are present. 5. The Gauls had Druids to preside over their councils.

QUESTIONNAIRE

680. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quālia erant fūnera?
2. Quid in īgnem īnferēbant?
3. Quī suprā crēmātī erant?
4. Quid hae cīvitātēs exīstimābant?
5. Quid ad magistrātūs dēferendum erat?
6. Quid iī occultābant?
7. Quid multitūdinī prōdēbant?
8. Dē quā rē differēbant Germānī?
9. Quid iī nōn habēbant?
10. Quōs deōs incolēbant?
11. Cūr eōs incolēbant?
12. Quibus rēbus studēbant?

681. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

nation, **gēns, gentis,** f.
at the same time, **simul**
resources, **opēs, -um,** f.
as much as, **quantus, -a, -um**
assign, **attrībuō, attribuere, attribuī, attribūtus**
be borne, **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**
take away, **tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**

In Annōs Singulōs Agrī Tribuuntur

682. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus quantum agrī et quō locō vīsum est attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Ēius reī multās adferunt causās: nē, adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī, studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Sōlitūdinēs Habēre Gaudent

683. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est, quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

vīctus (2), **-ūs,** m., *diet.*
lac (2), **lactis,** n., *milk.*
cāseus (2), **-ī,** m., *cheese.*
proprius (3), **-a, -um,** *personal.*
aliō (6), adv., *elsewhere.*
adsiduus (7), **-a, -um,** *unbroken.*
accūrātē (9), adv., *with care.*
frīgus (10), **-oris,** n., *cold.*
aestus (10), **-ūs,** m., *heat, tide.*
dissēnsiō (11), **-ōnis,** f., *strife.*
aequitās (12), **-ātis,** f., *fairness.*
solitūdō (16), **-inis,** f., *desert.*
dēfendit (18), *repels, wards off.*
nex (19), **necis,** f., *death.*

684. The Gerundive Construction as Objective Genitive. — Frequently the gerundive construction replaces the English infinitive as the modifier of a noun. It may be translated by *for* with the present participle, or by the infinitive.

Their zeal to wage war is great, or *their zeal for waging war is great,* **studium bellī gerendī magnum est.**

COMPOSITION

685. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. The desire to till the fields is not very strong among the Germans. 2. For this reason they apportion the fields for only one year. 3. Influenced by the desire to wage war, they are devoted to hardship. 4. They assert many reasons for holding the territory for one year only. 5. They are desirous of doing great deeds.

QUESTIONNAIRE

686. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Cuī reī nōn studēbant?
2. Quid erat vīctus?
3. Habēbantne agrōs propriōs?
4. Quō modō eōs obtinēbant?
5. Quamdiū eōs tenēbant?
6. Quae erat ūna causa?
7. Quae erat causa secunda?
8. Quae erant etiam aliae causae?
9. Cūr cīvītātī laus erat?
10. Quid arbitrābantur?
11. Bellō factō, quid faciēbant?
12. Quid eīs mandābātur?
13. In pāce quid faciēbant?

687. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

unencumbered, without pack, **expedītus, -a, -um**
whoever, whatever, **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**
happen, be done, be made, **fīō, fierī, factus sum**
lie open, extend, be open, **pateō, patēre, patuī**
to know, know of, **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus**

Hospitem Violāre nōn Fās Est

688. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab inīūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Anteā Germānī Colōniās Trānsmittēbant

689. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ūltrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mittērent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant. Volcae occupāvērunt, quae gēns ad hoc tempus summam opīniōnem laudis habet. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt.

īnfāmia (1), **-ae,** f., *disgrace.*
exerceō (2), **-ēre,** *train.*
dēsidia (3), **-ae,** f., *laziness.*
profiteantur (5), *let them,* etc.
cōnsurgō (5), **-ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus,** *rise together.*
dēsertor (7), **-ōris,** m., *deserter.*
prōditor (8), **-ōris,** m., *traitor.*
Hercynius (16), **-a, -um (silva),** *the Hercynian forest,* the region of Germany from the Black Forest to Bohemia.
Eratosthenēs (16), **-is,** m., a Greek philosopher, and geographer, born B.C. 276.
Orcynia (17), **-ae,** f., *Hercynia.*

690. The Gerundive with *Causā*. — The genitive of the gerundive is used with **causā** to express purpose. It may be translated *for the sake of*, *with a view to*, or simply *for*.

For the sake of training the youth (or, *with a view to training the youth*), *brigandage is permitted*, **iuventūtis exercendae causā latrōcinium permittitur.**

COMPOSITION

691. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Robbery is permitted for the sake of training the young men in cunning (**dolus**) and for the purpose of decreasing laziness. 2. A chief usually rises and says that he will be their leader; those who approve shout out that they will give him aid. 3. It is unlawful to mistreat those who come to them from distant lands for the sake of buying grain. 4. For the stranger who is a wayfarer the latch string hangs out (*idiom*).

QUESTIONNAIRE

692. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quāle latrōcinium īnfāmia nōn habētur?
2. Quā rē id fit?
3. Quō modō dux dēligitur?
4. Quid dīcēbant ducēs?
5. Quid fēcit plēbs?
6. Quō modō aliī habēbantur?
7. Quō modō hospitēs habēbant?
8. Quid Gallī olim faciēbant?
9. Quō iī ierant?
10. Quālia erant loca?
11. Quī dē eīs scrīpserant?
12. Quid huius locī nōmen erat?

693. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

kind, class, **genus, generis**, n.
anyone, anything, **quisquam, quicquam**
it is evident, **cōnstat, -stāre, -stetit**
surpass, excel, **antecēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessūrus**
assist, raise up, **sublevō, sublevāre, sublevāvī, sublevātus**
just . . . as, **sīc . . . ut**
very like, **cōnsimilis, -e**

Silva Fīnēs Multārum Gentium Attigit

694. Orītur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracorum fīnibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuviī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus ad remōtās ā flūmine regiōnēs multārumque gentium fīnēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius partis Germāniae quī sē adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter sexāgintā prōcēsserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint.

In Silvā Sunt Multa Animālia

695. Est bōs cervī figūrā cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab ēius summō sīc ut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt.

sinistrōrsus (3), **-a, -um,** *to the left.*
dīcat (7), *will say.*
fera (8), **-ae,** f., *wild beast.*
cervus (10), **-ī,** m., *stag, deer.*
excelsus (11), **-a, -um,** *high, tall.*
dērēctus (11), **-a, -um,** *straight.*
rāmus (13), **-ī,** m., *branch.*
alcēs (15), **-is,** f., *elk.*
capra (16), **-ae,** f., *she goat.*
mutilus (17), **-a, -um,** *maimed.*
crūs (17), **crūris,** n., *the leg.*
nōdus (17), **-ī,** m., *knot, joint.*
articulus (18), **-ī,** m., *knuckle.*
cubīle (20), **-is,** n., *lair.*
applicō (21), **-āre (sē),** *learn.*

696. The Dative with *Similis*. — The dative is used with **similis** and its compounds when the resemblance is physical.

The stag of the Germans is like our bull, **cervus Germānōrum cōnsimilis bovī nostrō est.**

COMPOSITION

697. Write the following sentences in Latin:

There is no forest in Italy like the Hercynian forest of Germany, which begins in the territories of the Helvetians and extends from the Danube River far into the interior. In this there are many animals which are very unlike the animals of Italy and which ought to be mentioned. There is the deer, with very large horns. There is an elk very like the goat in regard to spotted character (**varietās**) of its pelt, but much larger.

QUESTIONNAIRE

698. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi silva orītur?
2. Proxima cui flūminī est?
3. Unde initium capit?
4. Quot gentēs attigit?
5. Quid in eā erat?
6. Quot genera erant?
7. Quālis erat cervus?
8. Quid erat eī mediā in fronte?
9. Quid est fēminae marīque?
10. Cuī animālī cōnsimilis erat alcēs?
11. Quālia crūra habēbat?
12. Quae animālia nōn prōcumbēbant?
13. Quid nōn facere poterant?
14. Quō modō quiētem capiēbant?

699. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

notice, **animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus**
become accustomed, **cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus**
catch sight of, **cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus**
search for, **conquīrō, cōnquīrere, cōnquīsīvī, conquīsītus**
bring back, return, report, **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**

Dē Prōgenitōre Bovum Nostrōrum

700. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

Tertium est genus eōrum quī urī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna velōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint tēstimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

Bellum Cōnfectum Est

701. Caesar, Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, rebelliōne Senonum factā et oppressā, duce Accōne captō et omnibus cruciātibus interfectō mōre maiōrum, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

vēstīgium (1), **-ī,** n., *track.*
vēnātor (2), **-ōris,** m., *hunter.*
rādīx (3), **-icis,** f., *root.*
subruō (3), **-ere, -ruī, -rūtus,** *undermine.*
accīdō (3), **-ere, -cīdī, -cīsus,** *notch.*
ūrus (7), **-ī,** m., *wild ox, bison.*
taurus (9), **-ī,** m., *bull.*
fovea (11), **-ae,** f., *pitfall.*
circumclūdō (18), **-ere, -clūdī, -clūsus,** *encase, inclose.*
epulae (19), **-ārum,** f., *feasts.*
pōculum (19), **-ī,** n., *goblet, cup.*

702. Substitute for the Partitive Genitive. — The ablative with **ex** is frequently substituted for the partitive genitive after superlatives, numerals, and indefinite pronouns.

They slay many of these animals, **plūrimōs ex hīs animālibus interficiunt.**

One of these is here, **ūnus ex hīs adest.**

COMPOSITION

703. Write the following sentences in Latin:

By means of tracks, hunters judge where the animals have gone. Whenever they have found the spot they dig pitfalls in order to capture very many of the animals. These cannot be tamed as the animals do not spare man or beast. In hunting them, some of the young men are trained to hardship. At their greatest feasts, the horns of these animals serve as (are for) drinking goblets for the chiefs.

QUESTIONNAIRE

704. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid animadvertērunt vēnātōrēs?
2. Quid tum fēcērunt?
3. Quid relictum est?
4. Quō modō ferae captae sunt?
5. Quid est tertium genus?
6. Cuī simile est?
7. Quid faciēbant?
8. Quō modō captī sunt ūrī?
9. Quid testimōniō erat?
10. Quō modō eīs ūtēbantur?
11. Quod Caesar cōnfēcerat?
12. Quid oppresserat?
13. Quō profectus est?
14. Quā rē eō profectus est?

705. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

favorable, **commodus, -a, -um**
each (of two), **uterque, utraque, utrumque**
aid, **subsidium -ī,** n.
summon, send for, call in, **arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus**
conspire, plot, **coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātus**
peaceful, **quiētus, -a, -um**
journey, **iter, itineris,** n.

Triumvirī Inter Sē Pangunt

706. Cum esset Caesar in Galliā, utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, foedus cum Pompēiō et Crassō renōvandum erat. Annō LVI ante Christī nātum Caesar Luccam, quae urbs est in Etrūriā, vēnit, et ad eundem locum convēnērunt Pompēius et Crassus et ducentī senātōrēs et magistrātūs quī hīs triumvirīs cōnsēnsērunt. Pactum est ut Caesar prōcōnsul aliud quīnquennium in Galliā esset, Crassus et Pompēius essent cōnsulēs, deinde Pompēius Duās Hispāniās prōvinciam habēret, et Crassus Syriam. Vacātiō mīlitibus Caesaris data est ut Rōman reverterentur ad suffrāgium in comitiīs dandum. Eae omnēs rēs ēvēnērunt ita ut cōnstitūtae erant. Intereā Crassus in Syriam profectus est. Ibi in proeliō occīsus est. Fīliā Caesaris, quae post pactiōnem Pompeiō nūpta erat, mortuā, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērūpit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat.

Rēs Pūblica Permōta Est

707. Caesar adhūc in Galliā dētinēbātur. Rēs suae Rōmae Clōdiō, virō audācī et atrōcī, commissae sunt. Unō diē manus Clōdī et manus Milōnīs, amīcī optimātium, in viā Appiā cōnflīxērunt. Cum ācriter pugnātum esset, Clōdius interfectus est. Perturbātiō magna Rōmae incīdit.

Amīcī ambōrum īnfēnsī erant. In forō, in viīs, perīculum armōrum erat. Post breve tempus tamen Pompēius pācem urbī restituit.

pangō (6), **-ere, pepigī, pāctus,** *agree, covenant.*
quīnquennium (7), **-ī,** n., *a term of five years.*
aemulātiō (14), **-ōnis,** f., *rivalry.*
optimās (19), **-ātis,** adj., *aristocratic, best;* as subs., in plur., *aristocracy.*

708. The Suffixes *-āx* and *-ōx*. — The suffixes **-āx** and **-ōx** are added to roots to form adjectives denoting a tendency to some quality, which is often objectionable. The corresponding English suffix is *-acious* (*-ocious*).

aud(eo), *dare;* **audāx,** *daring, bold, audacious*
ferus, *wild, untamed;* **ferōx,** *fierce, headstrong, ferocious*

EXERCISES

709. Explain the meaning of the following:

ferāx	atrōx	rapāx	contumāx
mendāx	precōx	loquāx	fūrāx

Explain the derivation of the following:

fallacious	salacious	veracious	vivacious
pugnacious	sagacious	voracious	contumacious

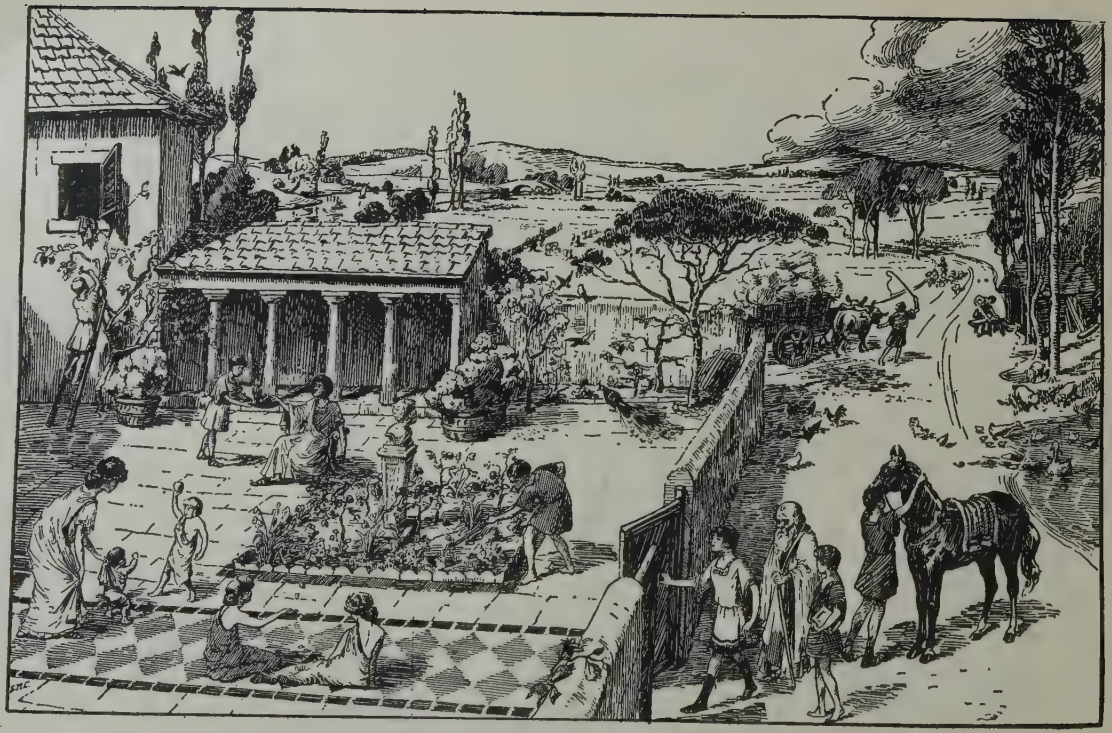
QUESTIONNAIRE

710. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi erat Caesar?
2. Quid renovandum erat?
3. Quō Caesar vēnit?
4. Ubi erat Lucca?
5. Quī triumvirīs cōnsēnserant?
6. Quid pāctum est?
7. Quamdiū Caesar prōcōnsul futūrūs erat?
8. Quī cōnsulēs futūrī erant?
9. Quid mīlitibus datum est?
10. Quō Crassus profectus est?
11. Quid accidit?
12. Cuius fīlia mortua est?
13. Ubi Caesar dētinēbātur?
14. Quid Rōmae accidit?

711. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

bold, **audāx, audācis**
compel, collect, **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus**
agree together, conspire, **cōnsentiō, cōnsentīre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus**
replace, renew, restore, **restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus**
cut into, cut, **incīdō, incīdere, incīdī, incīsus**
enemy (personal), **inimīcus, -ī,** m.



A Scene from Roman Life

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS

During the winter of 52–53 the unrest in Gaul which had become widely disseminated found conditions favorable to fostering a new attempt for independence. While Caesar was in Nearer Gaul holding court, trouble broke out in the city between the friends of Caesar and those of Pompey. In addition to this, the senate had decreed that all the youth of Italy should take the military oath. Caesar decided to hold a levy throughout the entire province.

These matters, the Gallic insurrectionists believed, would keep Caesar away from the army for a long period of time. Accordingly many of the tribes formed a confederacy under the leadership of Vercingetorix to regain the independence of Gaul. Advised of these matters, Caesar hurried back to the army and undertook an active campaign against Vercingetorix. One of the most serious defections from imperial allegiance was the falling away of the Haeduans, which seemed so important to Caesar that he turned aside from his pursuit of the army of Vercingetorix in an attempt to restore them to their allegiance to Rome. They, however, revolted again and practically all the Gauls joined them.

Labienus who had been carrying on a war against the Parisii joined Caesar. The enemy made an attack in the territory of the Sequani, but were utterly routed. Caesar followed up this success by pursuing Vercingetorix until he took refuge in the city of Alesia. Froud, the historian, says that the siege and capture of Alesia was "the most daring military feat in the military annals of mankind."

After the fall of Alesia, a final stand of the Gauls against Roman rule was made at Uxellodunum, where Caesar signally defeated them. He then invited the leaders of Gaul to a conference at which he explained to them the advantages of being a part of a great empire. He treated them so generously that they were won over, and never again revolted.

DĒ GALLŌRUM CŌNĀTŪ LĪBERTĀTEM RECUPERANDĪ

Rūmōribus Audītīs Gallī Concilia Dīcunt

712. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt.

Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs, miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

caedēs (3), **-is,** f., *murder.*
cōnsultum (3), **-ī,** n., *decree.*
iūniōrēs (4), **-um,** m., *men of military age* (17–46).
coniūrō (4), **-āre,** *take the oath of allegiance* — **coniūrārent** (4), indir. command.
quod (7), *as.*
doleō (10), **-ēre,** *bemoan.*
indīcō (12), **-ere, -dīxī, -dictus,** *call.*
silvester (12), **-ris, -re,** *in the forest.*
miseror (13), **-ārī,** *bewail.*
vindicō (16), **-āre,** *claim.*
clandestīnus (17), **-a, -um,** *secret.*

713. The Infinitive as Appositive. — The infinitive phrase may be used as an appositive.

They add this, that Caesar is detained in the city, **id addunt, Caesarem retinērī in urbe.**

COMPOSITION

714. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Caesar's friends in Rome had written to him concerning the decree that the young men should take the military oath throughout the regions around the city. When the Gauls heard this they began to hold secret conclaves in the woods. At these it was said that Caesar could not return to the army. The chiefs asked who was willing at the risk of his life to attempt to recover the liberty of Gaul. The (this) rumor that the Gauls were adopting plans to make a rebellion, came to Caesar.

QUESTIONNAIRE

715. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quō Caesar ierat?
2. Cūr ibi ierat?
3. Quid ibi cognōvit?
4. Quid senātus dēcrēverat?
5. Quid īnstituit?
6. Quō modō eae rēs trānslātae sunt?
7. Quid Gallī addidērunt?
8. Quid dē Caesare dīxērunt?
9. Cūr eum in Galliam venīre nōn posse dīxērunt?
10. Quā rē dolēbant?
11. Quid facere incēpērunt?
12. Quid miserābantur?
13. Ubi concilium habēbātur?
14. Quid ibi fēcērunt?
15. Quid dēposcēbant?
16. Quid facile vidēbātur?

716. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

horseman, **eques, -itis,** m. *miles,* **mīlia passuum**

refuse, repudiate, object to, **recūsō, -āre,** takes **nē** with the subjunctive.

lose hope, **dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, ātus;** the participle, *without hope of success.*

happen, fall upon, **incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsūrus**

mean, denote, **sīgnificō, sīgnificāre, sīgnificāvī, sīgnificātus**

Rēs Iūre Iūrandō Sancītur

717. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur petunt, conlātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

Gallī Cīvēs Rōmānōs Interficiunt

718. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō concurrunt, cīvēsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque inlūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

profiteor (1), **-ērī, professus sum,** *declare, assert.*
factūrōs (3), explain the tense.
caveō (4), **-ēre, cāvī, cautus,** *take precautions.*
efferātur (4), explain the mode.
sanciō (5), **-īrī, sānxī, sānctus,** *make binding.*
dēserantur (7), explain the mode.
negōtior (12), **-ārī, -ātus sum,** *carry on business.*
iūssū (14) (defective noun), *by order of, at the order of.*
deinceps (18), adv., *thereupon, in turn.*
essent (20), explain the mode.

719. Place to Which. — Place to which is expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad**. With **domus, rūs,** and the names of towns the **ad** is omitted. If **ad** is used with the name of a town, it means *in the vicinity of*.

They gather in haste at Cenabum, **Cēnabum concurrunt.**

COMPOSITION

720. Write the following sentences in Latin:

The Carnutes had summoned the Gauls to the woods to hold a council. Here the chiefs promised that they would fight for the liberty of all Gaul. It was decided that they should march upon (to) Cenabum. They took every precaution that their plan should not leak out (be reported). When they arrived there they killed the Romans who had come to the town to gather grain.

QUESTIONNAIRE

721. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid dīxērunt Carnutēs?
2. Quid pollicitī sunt?
3. Quārē obsidēs nōn dabant?
4. Quō modō rēs conciēbātur?
5. Quō modō caerimōnia habēbātur?
6. Quā rē rēs sancienda erat?
7. Quī iūs iūrandum dedērunt?
8. Quī ducēs erant?
9. Quōs Rōmānōs Cēnabī interfēcērunt?
10. Quid eīs accidit?
11. Quō modō fāma efferēbātur?
12. Quā hōrā accidit?
13. Quā hōrā fāma ad Avērnōs vēnit?
14. Quantum spatī intererat?

722. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

embassy, **lēgātiō, -ōnis,** f.
punishment, **supplicium, -ī,** n.
vassal, **cliēns, -ēntis,** m.
torture, **tormentum, -ī,** n.
inflame, **incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus**
approach, go to, **adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus**
conduct, win over, **perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus**

Vercingetorīx Exercitum Cōgit

723. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum adpetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum.

Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit: nam maiōre commissō dēlictō ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

quod (4), *the fact that.*
patruus (6), **-ī,** m., *uncle on the father's side.*
Gergovia (8), **-ae,** f., *Auvergne,* capital of the Arverni.
egēns (9), **-tis,** *needy.*
perditus (10), **-ī,** m., *ne'er-do-well.*
quōqueversus (15), *everywhere.*
obtestor (16), **-ārī,** *beseech.*
dēlictum (19), **-ī,** n., *breach.*
necat (19), supply **eōs quī id fēcērunt.**
dēsecō (20), **-āre, -secuī, -sectus,** *cut off.*
effodiō (20), **-ere, -fōdī, -fossus,** *dig out.*
documentum (21), **-ī,** n., *example.*

724. The Ablative of Accordance. — The ablative may often be translated by *in accordance with* or *according to*.

They waged war in accordance with a similar plan, **similī rātiōne bellum gerēbant.**

In accordance with their custom, they protect strangers, **mōre suō hospitēs servant.**

COMPOSITION

725. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. In a similar manner Vercingetorix, a man of great power, raised an army from his vassals. 2. In accordance with the nature of the Gauls, a rebellion quickly broke out (arose) and often quickly collapsed (**ruō**). 3. In accordance with the examples of his ancestors (**maiōrēs**) his uncle tried to dissuade him. 4. Since the farmers were unfriendly to the townsfolk he easily gathered together a large number of men from the fields.

QUESTIONNAIRE

726. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quālis erat Vercingetorīx?
2. Quā rē pater interfectus erat?
3. Quid fēcit Vercingetorīx?
4. Quid accidit?
5. Quid fēcit patruus?
6. Quid fēcērunt prīncipēs?
7. Quis manum conlēgit?
8. Quī eum iuvābant?
9. Quā rē oppidānī eum nōn iuvābant?
10. Quid etiam fēcit?
11. Quō modō imperium crēscēbat?
12. Quālia supplicia sūmēbat?

727. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

punishment, **supplicium, -ī,** n.
reinforcement, **subsidium, -ī,** n.
convenient, **commodus, -a, -um**
cavalry, **equitātus, -ūs,** m.
meet, sustain, cope with, **sustineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus**
join, unite, **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus**
fight, do battle, **dīmicō, dīmicāre, dīmicāvī, dīmicātus**

Vercingetorīx Bellum Incipit

728. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Ēius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Hī, nūllā rē factā, revertērunt; statim sē Biturīgēs cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Caesar dē Hāc Rē Certior Fit

729. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam Caesar urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et magnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur.

audācia (2), **-ae,** f., *daring.*
peditātus (7), **-ūs,** f., *infantry.*
subsidiō (8), explain the case.
urbānus (11), **-a, -um,** *in the city.*
versus (22), *toward,* prep. with acc.; often follows its noun.
inruptiō (22), **-ōnis,** f., *raid.*
cōnsiliīs (23), explain the case.
antevertō (23), **-ere, -tī, -versus,** *attend to beforehand.*
proficīscerētur (24), subst. clause of implied command.

730. Genitive of Description. — The genitive when modified by an adjective may be used to denote a particular characteristic.

He was a man of great boldness, **magnae audāciae vir erat.**
The Haedui had great authority, **Haeduī magnae auctōritātis erant.**

COMPOSITION

731. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Vercingetorix was a man of great courage. 2. He compelled the rest to do what he ordered. 3. He was the man who tried to obtain the supreme power over all Gaul. 4. His aid (lieutenant) Lucterius was a man of great strength and wisdom (plan). 5. Vercingetorix was keen (**ācer**) but Caesar was a man of greater genius (**ingenium**). 6. The Gauls were men of great courage, but also of great fickleness (mobility).

QUESTIONNAIRE

732. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quem ducem Vercingetorīx dēlēgit?
2. Quō modō exercitum coēgit?
3. Quō eum mīsit?
4. Quālis is erat?
5. Quid fēcerunt Biturīgēs?
6. Quid fēcērunt Haeduī?
7. Quid fēcērunt equitēs?
8. Quid cognōvit Caesar?
9. Quid fēcit?
10. Quā rē dubitāvit?
11. Quid fēcit Lucterius?
12. Quid factūrus erat?
13. Quid exīstimābat Caesar?
14. Quid cōnstituit?
15. Quid, eā rē cōnstitūtā, fēcit?

733. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

although, **etsī**, with indicative
height, **altitūdō, -inis**, f.
prayer, **prex, precis**, f.
messenger, **nūntius**, m.
plunder, pillage, **dīripiō, dīripere, dīripuī, dīreptus**
lie open, extend, spread, **pateō, patēre, patuī**
allow, suffer, **patior, patī, passus sum**

Caesar ad Fīnēs Arvernōrum Pervenit

734. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum VI atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Caesar Supplēmentum Quaerit

735. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit.

Caesar, copiīs ēductīs, multīs conātibus, Avaricum, urbem magnam hostium expūgnāvit.

intrō (2), **-āre,** *enter.*
disclūdō (4), **-ere, -clūsī, -clūsus,** *shut off.*
discussā (5), *having been cleared away.*
nix (5), **nivis,** f., *snow.*
inopīnāns (7), **-tis,** *unsuspecting.*
obsecrō (13), **-āre,** *beseech.*
supplēmentum (19), **-ī,** n., *recruits.*
datūrum (22), ind. discourse after **moneō.**

736. Appositive Clauses with *ut*. — A substantive clause introduced by **ut** or **nē** may be used as an appositive to certain words or phrases implying a command.

He makes it his business (or *takes care*) *not to be away*, **operam dat nē absit.**

COMPOSITION

737. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Caesar made it his business to set out for the territories of the Arverni. After he had arrived at that place, he made it the task of Brutus to take care of the camp. He did this with this end in view (plan), that the enemy might think that he himself (**ipse**) was still there. He gave Brutus these instructions (commands), namely, that he should hold his army in the camp, and that he should not fight the enemy.

QUESTIONNAIRE

738. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid Lucteriō accidit?
2. Cūr Caesar profectus est?
3. Ubi erat mōns Cevenna?
4. Quid iter impediēbat?
5. Quārē Arvernī inopīnantēs erant?
6. Quālis erat sēmita?
7. Quid imperāvit Caesar?
8. Quid fēcērunt Arvernī?
9. Quid petīvērunt?
10. Quid fēcit Vercingetorīx?
11. Quid fēcit Caesar?
12. Quō profectus est?
13. Quem cōpiīs praefēcit?
14. Quid post haec Caesar fēcit?

739. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

slavery, **servitūs, -ūtis,** f.
official, **magistrātus, -ūs,** m.
speak with, **colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum**
find out, **comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus**
clash, dash together, fight, **cōnflīgō, cōnflīgere, cōnflīxī, cōnflīctus**
tamper with, bribe, **sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātus**

Prīncipēs Haeduōrum ad Caesarem Veniunt

740. Dum haec geruntur, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut māximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat: summō esse in perīculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Cīvitātem esse in armīs, dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat. Quod lēgibus Haeduōrum iīs quī summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex fīnibus nōn licēret, ipse in Haeduōs profectus senātum et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convictolitavem, per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis creātum, potestātem obtinēre iūssit. Posteā Convictolitavis sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus colloquitur.

Haeduī Rebelliōnem Faciunt

741. Nūntiātum est Caesarem pulsum esse. Haeduī prīmīs nūntiīs acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cognōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit.

subveniō (3), **-īre, -vēnī, -ventus,** *come to aid.*
alō (7), **-ere, -uī, -itus,** *nourish, feed.*
cōnflīgat (8), *would be fighting.*
vīvō utrōque (12), *if both were living.*
vetō (13), **-āre, vetuī, vetitus,** *forbid.*
īrācundia (20), **-ae,** f., *anger.*

742. Substitute for the Future Passive Infinitive. — The Romans preferred to express the future passive infinitive by the future infinitive of **sum** followed by a noun clause.

He says they will be captured, he says the result will be that they will be captured, **dīcit fore ut capiantur.**

COMPOSITION

743. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. They say that the ambassadors will be captured. 2. They say that ambassadors will be sent to ask what Caesar wishes. 3. Unless Caesar comes to our aid, we think that the state will be divided. 4. We have been informed that one part of the state will battle with the other part. 5. Caesar thought that this event (outcome) ought to be avoided. 6. He thought that he ought to decide who should be chief.

QUESTIONNAIRE

744. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī ad Caesarem vēnērunt?
2. Quā rātione vēnērunt?
3. Quō in stātū erat cīvitās?
4. Quī erat mōs Haeduōrum?
5. Quid dīcēbant magistrātūs?
6. Quid accidere oportuit?
7. Quid cōnstituit Caesar?
8. Quā rē id fēcit?
9. Quō eōs convocāvit?
10. Quid lēgēs vetābant?
11. Quid fēcit Caesar?
12. Quid iussit?
13. Quid fēcit is?
14. Quid fēcit convictolitavis?
15. Quid fēcērunt Haeduī?
16. Cūr eam rem fēcērunt?
17. Quid eōs impulit?

745. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

leadership, **prīncipātus, -ūs,** m.
achieve, follow up, **cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum**
get possession of, obtain, **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum**
increase, augment, enlarge, **augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus**
unwilling, **invītus, -a, -um**

Cōnsēnsū Omnium Vercingetorīx Fit Imperātor

746. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Cōnsilia Vercingetorīx Indīcit

747. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, XV mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant.

dēfectiō (1), **-ōnis,** f., *revolt.*
nītor (4), **-ī, nīsus sum,** *strive.*
frequēns (10), **-tis,** *in crowds.*
requīro (14), **-ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus,** *lament the loss of.*
frūmentātiō (22), **-ōnis,** f., *gathering grain.*
pābulātiō (22), **-ōnis,** f., *gathering fodder.*
iactūra (24), **-ae,** f., *loss.*

748. Commands in Indirect Discourse. — A command in indirect discourse is expressed by the subjunctive.

He said, "Let them gain their liberty," **dīxit, lībertātem suam cōnsequerentur.**

He says they shall do this, **dīcit, id faciant.**

COMPOSITION

749. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. He demanded that hostages be given. 2. Then he ordered that a supply of grain be brought in. 3. When this had been done, he called (together) an assembly. 4. He said they were about to do battle in behalf of their liberty. 5. He added that the safety of all Gaul depended upon (was placed in) their bravery. 6. In order that the Romans might have no grain supply, let the Gauls destroy that which they had in their fields.

QUESTIONNAIRE

750. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid fēcērunt Haeduī?
2. Quibus modīs ratiōnem effēcērunt?
3. Quid nactī erant?
4. Quid ā Vercingetorīge petēbant?
5. Dē quā rē contendēbant?
6. Quid accidit?
7. Quō modō rēs cōnstitūta est?
8. Quō modō Haeduī id ferēbant?
9. Quid querēbantur?
10. Quid nōn audēbant?
11. Quā rē dīmicāre nōlēbant?
12. Quid iussit dux?

751. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

mind, **mēns, mentis,** f.
foot soldier, **pedes, -itis**
happening, change, **cāsus, -ūs,** m.
frequent, **crēber, -bra, -brum**
be accustomed, be wont, **cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus**
watch over, look out for, protect, **tueor, tuērī, tūtus**
cut off, shut off, **interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūdī, interclūsus**

Vercingetorīx Cōpiās in Allobrogēs Mittit

752. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar Equitēs ā Germāniā Arcessit

753. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur, complūribus interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā subleārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

prōvinciae (2), explain the case.
dēpopulor (6), **-ārī,** *lay waste.*
clandestīnus (6), **-a, -um,** *secret.*
resīdō (8), **-ere, -sēdī,** *settle down, grow calm.*
cāsūs (11), *eventualities.*
ad . . . oppōnēbantur (13), *were stationed to (guard) every point.*
proelior (14), **-ārī,** *do battle.*

754. Dative of the Indirect Object. — The dative is used with many compound verbs which also take a direct object.

He levied cavalry upon the Haedui, **Haeduīs equitēs imperat.**
They will bring war upon the enemy, **hostibus bellum īnferent.**

COMPOSITION

755. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. He will levy infantry upon the states which are next to our province. 2. They say that he will place in charge of these the brother of one of the chiefs. 3. Then he will wage war upon the Allobroges, who are near the Haeduans. 4. He has promised to the Allobroges the rule of the whole land. 5. The soldiers, however, did not think that the time was suitable for battle. 6. Therefore the leader sent ahead men to find a place suitable for a camp.

QUESTIONNAIRE

756. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid imperāvit dux?
2. Quibus eōs imperāvit?
3. Quid tum fēcit?
4. Cūr cōpiās ēmīsit?
5. Quā rē lēgātiōnēs mīsit?
6. Quid pollicitus est?
7. Quid Helviīs accidit?
8. Quōs sollicitābant?
9. Quō modō sollicitāvit?
10. Quid fēcērunt Allobrogēs?
11. Quid intellegēbat Caesar?
12. Quid fēcit?
13. Quā rātione id fēcit?
14. Quid tum fēcit?
15. Cūr id fēcit?
16. Quid Germānīs distribuit?

757. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

side, **latus, -eris,** n.
approach, **aditus, -ūs,** m.
no one, **nēmō, -inis,** m., f.
twice, **bis,** adv.
hinder, burden, **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus**
attack, **adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum**
take, take to one's self, assume, **sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus**

Vercingetorīx Suōs Cohortātur

758. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit; convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.'

Equitēs Hostium Impetum Faciunt

759. Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.' Factum est. Posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet.

adoriantur (13), explain the mode.
tēctum (20), **-ī**, n., *house*.
recipiātur (20), explain the mode.
perequitārit (22), translate the mode by *should*.

760. Temporal Clauses with *Dum* Meaning *While*. — Temporal clauses with **dum** meaning *while*, have their verb in the present indicative. The present is translated by the past, when the main verb is perfect.

While these things are being done he escapes, **dum haec geruntur, fugit.**

While these things were being done he escaped, **dum haec geruntur, fūgit.**

COMPOSITION

761. Write the following sentences in Latin:

The cavalry which he had levied on the Haedui had come together. While the soldiers were preparing for battle, Vercingetorix thought he ought to call a council. Therefore he ordered the soldiers to be gathered together (into one place). While this was being done, it was reported that Caesar's army was not far away. When the soldiers had assembled, Vercingetorix explained his plan.

QUESTIONNAIRE

762. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Ubi erat Caesar?
2. Cūr erat in Sēquanīs?
3. Quī conveniēbant?
4. Quot cōpiae coāctae erant?
5. Quid fēcit Vercingetorīx?
6. Quid dīxit?
7. Quid Rōmanī facient?
8. Quid exspectat?
9. Quid faciet Vercingetorīx?
10. Cūr id faciet?
11. Quid clamant equitēs?
12. Quid fēcērunt?
13. Quid fēcit Caesar?
14. Quid iubet?

763. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

of foot, infantry, **pedester, pedestris, pedestre**
pitch camp, halt, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessūrus**
turn, **convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus**
secure, obtain, get, **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum**
follow up, pursue closely, **īnsequor, īnsequī, insecūtus sum**

Equitātus Vercingetorīgis Fugit

764. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Captus est Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedes tribus cōpiīs praefuerat; et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorīx Alesiam Iter Facit

765. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; impedīmentaque ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

tardō (5), **-āre,** *slow up.*
tandem (6), *at length.*
circumvenīrentur (10), explain the mode.
fugae (10), explain the case.
dēfectiō (11), **-ōnis,** f., *revolt.*
quantum (20), explain the case.
situs (22), **-ūs,** m., *site.*
circumvāllō (25), **-āre,** *throw a wall around.*

766. *Nē* with Verbs of Fearing. — Verbs of fearing are followed by **nē** with the subjunctive when they indicate what is expected to happen.

They feared they would be surrounded, **veritī sunt nē circumvenīrentur.**

They fear they will be surrounded, **verentur nē circumveniantur.**

COMPOSITION

767. Write the following sentences in Latin:

1. Caesar feared that the cavalry of the enemy would attack his men while they were marching. 2. Therefore he ordered the German horsemen to be prepared to attack the Gauls. 3. The Gauls, fearing that the Germans would surround them, fled toward the river. 4. The rest of the enemy feared to attack the Germans. 5. Caesar feared to pursue too closely, lest the enemy should suddenly attack them while impeded.

QUESTIONNAIRE

768. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quō modō pugnātum est?
2. Quō impedīmenta recepta sunt?
3. Quid lēgiōnēs fēcērunt?
4. Quid iussit Caesar?
5. Quid fit?
6. Quid fēcērunt Germānī?
7. Quō fūgērunt hostēs?
8. Quī captus est?
9. Quis alīus captus est?
10. Ubi erat Alesia?
11. Quid fēcit Vercingetorīx?
12. Quid fēcit Caesar?
13. Quō ierunt hostēs?
14. Quid īnstituit Caesar?
15. Quōs Caesar hortātus est?

769. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

picket, **statiō, -ōnis,** f.
sally, **ēruptiō, -ōnis,** f.
redoubt, **castellum, -ī,** n.
favorable, **opportūnus, -a, -um**
little by little, **paulātim,** adv.
scarcely, **exiguē,** adv.
far, farther, farthest, **longē, longius, longissimē**
well, better, best, **bene, melius, optimē**

Vāllum Rōmānī Īnstruunt

770. Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ērup-
5 tiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

Vercingetorīx Parcē Cibum Distribuit

771. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum
10 cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia homi-
15 num dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referrī
20 iubet; capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum
25 administrāre parat.

interdiū (4), *by day.*
excubitor (5), **-ōris,** m., *sentry.*
perficiantur (8), explain the mode.
dīmittere (9), explain the mode.
merita (11), **-ōrum,** n., *deserts.*
obtestor (12), **-ārī,** *call to witness.*
indīligēns (14), **-entis,** *dilatory.*
parcē (22), *sparingly.*

772. The Suffix *-tor* or *-sor*. — Many nouns denoting the doer or agent (one acting) are formed by substituting the suffix **-tor** or **-sor** for the **-tum** of the supine of verbs.

Verb:	**excubō**, *lie* or *camp out*	**dēfendō**, *protect*
Supine:	**excubitum**	**dēfēnsum**
Noun:	**excubitor**, *one who camps out*	**dēfēnsor**, *one who*, etc.

EXERCISES

773. Form Latin nouns denoting the doer from the following:

administror	dēbeō	opprimō	succēdō
dēmōnstrō	doceō	perficiō	spondeō

774. Explain the meaning of the following through derivation:

liberator	spectator	conductor	depositor
navigator	captor	victor	censor
actor	competitor	assessor	inquisitor

QUESTIONNAIRE

775. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quanta erat mūnitiō?
2. Quot castra erant?
3. Quī in castellīs interdīu pōnēbantur?
4. Cūr ibi pōnēbantur?
5. Quid cēpit Vercingetorīx?
6. Quālem ratiōnem cēpit?
7. Cūr hōs dīmīsit?
8. Quid eīs imperāvit?
9. Cūr eīs id imperāvit?
10. Quantum frūmentum habuit?
11. Quandō equitēs dīmīsit?
12. Quid ad sē referrī iussit?
13. Quid virītim distribuit?
14. Quid exspectābat?

776. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

former, **prīstinus, -a, -um**	*confidence*, **fīdūcia, -ae**, f.
a little while, **paulisper**, adv.	*of one's own accord*, **ultrō**
almost, **paene**	*disgraceful*, **turpis, -e**

admit to, **adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibuī, adhibitus**

Gallī Exercitum Cōnficiunt

777. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī exercitum cōnficiunt. Tanta ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut omnēs et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur.

Critognātus Eruptiōnem nōn Probat

778. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur ' Nihil,' inquit, ' dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant.'

Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem, sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus. Quid, hominum mīlibus octōgintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur?

plēnus (5), **-a, -um,** *full.*
inquam (11), *I say.*
mollitia (15), **-ae,** f., *weakness.*
offerant (16), subjunctive in clause of characteristic.
dolor (17), **-ōris,** m., *suffering.*
probārem (18), *would*, etc.
praeterquam (18), *except.*
respiciāmus (20), *let us*, etc.
cadāver (22), **-eris,** n., *corpse.*

779. Direct Discourse. — Direct discourse in Latin is used with the verbs **āiō,** *I say,* and **inquam,** *I say.*

"*I shall say nothing,*" *said he,* "**nihil,**" **inquit,** "**dictūrus sum.**"
"*This was best,*" *said he,* "**hoc optimum erat,**" **ait.**

COMPOSITION

780. Write the following sentences in Latin:

"We have come," said he, "with aid for Alesia." This news (these things) brought so much joy to those in the town that they shouted to be led against the Romans. "We are not yet prepared," said the leader, "we have little food." "Let us fight for our liberty," exclaimed the soldiers, "the hour of victory is at hand." At this point Vercingetorix with much pain said, "You are brave but you are rash."

QUESTIONNAIRE

781. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid fēcērunt Gallī?
2. Quis ad eōs profectus est?
3. Quārē omnēs alacrēs erant?
4. Quid Alesiae gerēbāntur?
5. Quid fēcit Critognātus?
6. Quid cōnsilium aliōrum appellābat?
7. Quid cēnsēbat?
8. Quid erat cōnsilium?
9. Quid Critognātus id appellābat?
10. Quid dē morte dīxit?
11. Quārē nōn probābat?
12. Quid respiciendum erat?
13. Quid dē propinquīs dīxit?
14. Quid is cupiēbat?

782. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

slavery, **servitūs, -ūtis,** f.
defenses, **mūnītiō, -ōnis,** f.
eternal, **perpetuus, -a, -um**
safety, **salūs, -ūtis,** f.
daily, **cotīdiē**
further, **ulterior, -ius**
not to know, **ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī, ignōrātus**
be busy in, be occupied, live, **versor, versārī, versātus sum**
drill, exercise, **exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus**

Critognātus Eōs Hortātur ut Resistantur

783. "Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbecillitāte omnem Galliam perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ūlteriōribus mūnītiōnibūs animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Cuius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī cōnsiliī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum īnūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Dēpopulāta Galliā Cimbrī aliquandō excessērunt, et iūra, agrōs, lībertātem nobīs relīquērunt.

Rōmānī Gallōs in Servitātem Redigent

784. "Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid voiunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt tamen ut eī, quī sint inūtilēs bellō, exeant; at Caesar prohibēbat.

imbēcillitās (3), **-ātis,** f., *weakness.*
an (4), *or.*
animī causā (6), *for the sake of amusement;* **-ne,** sign of a question.
ergō (8), *then.*
aliquandō (13), *at length.*
invidia (16), **-ae,** f., *envy.*
secūris (22), **-is,** *lictor's ax.*
servitūte (22), explain the case.

785. The Imperative Mode. — The imperative mode is used to express a direct command.

Be unwilling to act the part of slaves, **nōlite servīre.**
Look at the rest of Gaul, **respicite reliquam Galliam.**

COMPOSITION

786. Write the following sentences in Latin:

Be unwilling to surrender your wives and children to the Romans. What do the Romans want? Your land, your property, your liberty, all these they want. Look at your fields beyond the fortifications of the Romans. They were your fathers', and now they are yours. Defend them with your lives, preserve your liberty for your children and your children's children. See how the Romans fear the arrival of your friends.

QUESTIONNAIRE

787. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quid ducēs neglēxerant?
2. Quā rē dubitābant?
3. Quā rātiōne mūnītiōnēs fīēbant?
4. Quō tempōre Rōmānī labōrābant?
5. Quī Galliām invāserant?
6. Quid fēcerant Gallī?
7. Quō modō sē dēfenderant?
8. Quid tum fēcērunt hostēs?
9. Quō stātū tum erant Gallī?
10. Cūr Rōmānī ibi erant?
11. Quid voluērunt?
12. Quā ratiōne bellum gerēbant?
13. Quid exemplō fuit?
14. Quid fēcērunt cīvēs?

788. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

shout, **clāmor, -ōris,** m. *booty,* **praeda, -ae,** f.
raise, lift up, elevate, **tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**
catch sight of, see, behold, **cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus sum**
blockade, besiege, **obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus**
give way, retreat, **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus**

Auxilium ad Oppidānōs Pervenit

789. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre parant. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs. Fit magna caedēs.

Vercingetorīx Proeliō Victus sē Dēdit

790. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur; ex captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris līttерīs cōgnitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

campester (5), **-ris, -re,** *of the fields.*
prōturbō (8), **-āre,** *dislodge.*
arx (10), **arcis,** f., *citadel.*
necessitās (14), **-ātis,** f., *interests.*

791. The Ablative Absolute. — The ablative absolute may be used to replace any clause of time, circumstance, or condition. It is often best translated by the English perfect active participle, or by a coördinate clause.

Having raised a shout, they warned their comrades, **clāmōre sublātō, suōs admonuērunt.**

The citizens heard the shout and rushed forth, **clāmōre audītō, cīvēs ērūpērunt.**

COMPOSITION

792. In translating use the ablative absolute construction wherever possible:

1. The leaders, having pitched their camp, awaited a signal from the townsfolk. 2. When the troops had been seen, great joy seized the soldiers in the town. 3. They raised a shout and rushed out against our fortifications. 4. When the uproar was heard by our men, the trumpet gave the signal for battle. 5. Having heard this, our men did as had been instructed. 6. Having lost the last battle, Vercingetorix surrendered.

QUESTIONNAIRE

793. Answer in complete Latin sentences:

1. Quī pervēnērunt?
2. Ubi cōnsēdērunt?
3. Quid tum fēcērunt?
4. Quō modō oppidānī certiōrēs factī sunt?
5. Quid parāvērunt?
6. Quid ēvēnit?
7. Quid tum fēcērunt Gallī?
8. Ubi stābat Vercingetorīx?
9. Quid accidit?
10. Quid tum fēcit Vercingetorīx?
11. Quid dēmōnstrāvit?
12. Quid offerēbat?
13. Quid iussit Caesar?
14. Quid fēcērunt hostēs?
15. Quid Caesar tōtī exercituī distribuit?
16. Quid cōnstituit?
17. Quid Rōmae factum est?

BOOK I

The Geography of Gaul

I. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The Helvetian War

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent; perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique

locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; dam-

nātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

V. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent); alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem

dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur.

VIII. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima

altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit, — Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

X. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

XI. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eō-

rumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.' Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

XII. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantīs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

XIII. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita

exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et internecione exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

XIV. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre, sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint,

item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

XV. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmem īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter XV iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

XVI. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septemtriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat (quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem), graviter eōs accūsat quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus

ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

XVII. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre, neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.'

XVIII. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmo. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam

adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

XIX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

XX. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset,

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēse tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.' Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

XXI. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē

proelium committeret nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē quō cōnsuērat intervāllō hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

XXIII. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

XXV. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā

disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant; multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt, prīma et secunda aciēs ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret, tertia ut venientīs sustinēret.

XXVI. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientīs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō; in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: 'Quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.' Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

XXVII. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia sex ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnēs suōs unde erant profectī revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

XXIX. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae, et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Lato-

brigōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

The Campaign against Ariovistus

XXX. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.' Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

XXXI. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt, petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.' Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum

prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Galliōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs seme atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse, et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur, atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallis idem esse facien-

dum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant, fortūnamque quaecumque accidat experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

XXXII. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.'

XXXIII. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: 'Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrā-

bātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat, neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

XXXIV. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret: 'Velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīsque rēbus cum eō agere.' Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

XXXV. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M.

Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent. Item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.'

XXXVII. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant, — Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī

Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit, reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

XXXIX. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed

angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvetiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantīs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītās locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem

spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

XLI. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius L circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum IIII et XX abesse.

XLII. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum

mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātis, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum ad equum rescrībere.

XLIII. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque

iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent; quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in eōs essent; ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. 'Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere sed grātiā, dīgnitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset?' Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret, obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere; ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit.

'Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae

prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.'

XLV. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

XLVI. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit, suīsque imperāvit nē

quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pugnandī māius exercituī iniectum est.

XLVII. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: 'Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: 'Quid ad sē venīrent? An speculandī causā?' Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

XLVIII. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut sī

vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant. Hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

XLIX. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omnī omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxilōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

L. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium com-

mittī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'

LI. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

LII. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Et ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam īī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus

inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quos Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt; īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

IDIOMS

Page 10

(4) **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus,** *influenced by the desire for royal power.*
(5) **in animō habēre,** *to intend, to plan.*
(11) **sē dolōre magnō effectum esse,** *to be overcome with sorrow.*

Page 12

(5) **apud centaurum,** *with a centaur, at the home of a centaur.*
(6) **alterum calceum,** *one of his shoes.*
(6) **in flūmine trānseundō,** *while crossing a river.*
(10) **alterō pede nūdō,** *with one foot bare.*
(10) **in rēgiam pervēnit,** *arrived at the palace.*
(12) **ratiōne captā,** *adopting a plan, forming a plan.*
(18) **quī vellere potīrētur,** *to get the fleece.*
(20) **eum certiōrem fēcit,** *he informed him.*

Page 14

(2) **omnēs in partēs,** *in all directions.*
(3) **quī docērent,** *to explain.*
(5) **animum advertit,** *he turns attention to.*
(19) **tōtā ē rōbore,** *entirely of oak.*

Page 16

(3) **ad locum cōnstitūtum,** *to the appointed place.*
(6) **in hōc numerō,** *among them.*
(13) **ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāre,** *to provide for every contingency.*
(19) **perīculō vacuum,** *free from danger.*
(20) **marī terrāque,** *on land and sea, by sea and land.*

Page 18

(1) **nōn multō post,** *not long afterward.*
(2) **in nāvī vehēbantur,** *sailed in the ship.*
(3) **nōmine Cyzicum,** *by the name of Cyzicus.*
(3) **ē nāvī ēgredī,** *to disembark.*
(6) **ad sōlis occāsum,** *westward.*
(10) **in terram prōgredī,** *to land.*
(14) **eōs ēgredī prohibēbant,** *opposed their landing.*
(16) **ācriter pugnātum est,** *a lively fight took place.*
(18) **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak, at dawn.*

Page 20

(1) **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** *on the following day, the next day.*
(3) **ancorās sustulit,** *he weighed anchor.*
(4) **in ancorīs exspectāre,** *to ride at anchor.*
(6) **aquam iam dēficere,** *that the water was already getting low.*
(10) **hōrum in numerō,** *among these.*
(13) **iuvenī vīsō,** *upon seeing the boy.*
(14) **negat sē id factūrum esse,** *he says he will not do it.*

Page 22

(2) **cursum tenēre,** *to direct one's course, to steer.*
(4) **sē crūdelissimum praebēre,** *to act very cruelly.*
(8) **cibum adpositum,** *the food that had been served.*
(10) **simul atque,** *as soon as.*
(13) **auxilium ferre,** *to assist, to help.*
(16) **ut remedium reperīrent,** *to find a remedy.*
(18) **cēnā adposita,** *when the dinner had been served.*
(20) **hoc nihil prōdesse,** *that this was useless.*
(21) **alīs īnstrūctī,** *equipped with wings.*

Page 24

(2) **meritās grātiās referre,** *to show proper gratitude.*
(6) **parvō intervallō,** *a short distance apart.*
(10) **lēnī ventō prōvectus,** *wafted by a gentle breeze.*
(15) **hōc vīsō,** *seeing this, on seeing this.*
(18) **in celeritāte positam esse,** *depended on speed.*

Page 32

(2) **rēmīs contendere,** *to ply the oars.*
(5) **sē conferre,** *to betake oneself.*
(6) **quam ob rem,** *why.*
(8) **īrā commōtus est,** *was moved to anger.*
(10) **spem potiendī dēponere,** *to dismiss the idea of getting.*
(16) **ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse,** *that he was ready to undergo any danger.*
(17) **iugendī erant taurī,** *bulls had to be yoked.*
(21) **reī bene gerendae,** *of* (or *for*) *succeeding.*

Page 34

(5) **rem aegrē ferre,** *to dislike the idea.*
(9) **cōnsilium inīre,** *to form a plan, to adopt a plan.*
(20) **in venātiōnibus cōnsistere,** *to spend in hunting, to consist in hunting.*

Page 36

(2) **ortā lūce,** *at dawn, at daybreak.*
(5) **iugum imponere,** *to yoke.*
(6) **hīs rēbus vīsīs,** *upon seeing these things.*
(7) **nihil valēre,** *to be powerless.*
(8) **omnibus adspicientibus,** *in the sight of all, with all looking on.*
(18) **eī imperāre,** *to command him, to demand of him.*
(21) **exspectāns ut virī gignerentur,** *waiting for the men to spring up.*

Page 38

(1) **sub vesperem,** *toward evening.*
(6) **nōn omittendum esse,** *ought not to be passed over, neglected.*
(8) **in mediōs virōs,** *among the men.*
(9) **cupiditās habendī,** *a desire to possess.*
(10) **cēpit (quemque),** *seized (each one).*
(15) **īrā graviter commōtus est,** *was exceedingly angry.*
(20) **īnsciente patre,** *without her father's knowledge.*

Page 40

(1) **ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit,** *she threw herself at Jason's feet.*
(2) **in tantō discrīmine,** *in such a plight, in such a predicament.*
(3) **eī tantum prōdesse,** *to be so useful to him.*
(4) **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember.*
(8) **nāvem dēdūcere,** *to launch the ship.*
(12) **ad mare,** *by the shore, by the sea.*
(12) **quī praesidio nāvī essent,** *to protect the ship.*

Page 42

(2) **animō anxiō,** *anxiously.*
(4) **ad occāsum sōlis,** *until sunset.*
(6) **mātūrandum sibi,** *that they ought to hurry.*
(17) **nāvem cōnscendere,** *to go on board, to embark.*
(19) **inimīcō in eōs animō,** *hostile toward them.*
(22) **nāvis longa,** *a galley, a warship.*

Page 44

(1) **rem in discrīmine esse,** *that the situation was critical.*
(5) **ā Colchīs sequentibus,** *by the Colchians who were pursuing.*
(6) **neque longius intererat quam quō,** *they were not farther apart than.*
(7) **quō in locō rēs essent,** *how matters stood.*
(16) **neque opīniō eam fefellit,** *nor was she deceived in this.*

(21) **prius . . . quam,** *until.*
(22) **nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus,** *thinking that it would be useless, thinking that it would avail him nothing.*
(23) **animō dēmissō,** *dejectedly, in a fit of depression.*

Page 46

(7) **mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum,** *that I am bowed down with age.*
(8) **ad suprēmum meum diem,** *up to the last day of my life.*
(9) **quīn ea diēs adsit,** *that that day is near.*
(14) **mortem rēgī īnferre,** *to bring about the king's death.*
(19) **Num hoc fierī potest,** *can such a thing be done?*
(22) **puellae īnscientēs,** *the girls, without knowing it.*

Page 48

(6) **erat Creontī fīlia ūna,** *Creon had one daughter.*
(7) **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to marry.*
(12) **nihil malī suspicāns,** *suspecting no evil.*
(14) **post paulum,** *soon afterward.*
(24) **subitō dēlapsa,** *suddenly falling over.*

Page 64

(4) **inter sē differunt,** *differ from one another.*
(11) **reliquōs Gallōs,** *the rest of the Gauls.*

Page 66

(4) **civitāti perusāsit ut,** *he persuaded the state to.*
(9) **locī nātūrae continēre,** *to be hemmed in by natural barriers.*
(9) **unā ex parte,** *on one side, in one direction.*
(16) **quā ex parte,** *for this reason, for which reason.*
(16) **alicui bellum īnferre,** *to make war upon someone.*
(17) **magnō dolōre afficere,** *be greatly annoyed, be very discontented.*

Page 68

(3) **quam maximus,** *as great as possible.*
(10) **in Sēquanīs,** *among the Sequanians.*
(15) **in mātrimōnium dare,** *to give in marriage.*
(18) **nōn dubium est quīn fortis sit,** *there is no doubt that he is brave.*

Page 70

(2) **ex vinculīs causam dīcere,** *to plead one's case (while) in irons.*
(7) **iūs exsequī,** *carry out the law, to enforce the law.*

(9) **suspiciō nōn abest quīn sit,** *nor is suspicion lacking that he is.*
(11) **mortem sibi concīverit,** *committed suicide.*
(22) **socios sibi adscīscere,** *to make allies.*

Page 72

(14) **esse bonō animō in,** *to feel friendly toward.*
(16) **eōs invītōs vī cōgere,** *to compel them if they were unwilling.*

Page 74

(1) **Caesarī nūntiātum est,** *a report came to Caesar.*
(3) **quam māximum potest,** *as great as possible.*
(4) **prōvinciae mīlitēs imperat,** *he levies soldiers on the province.*
(11) **in animō meō est,** *it is my intention.*
(11) **iter facere,** *to march.*
(13) **rogō ut mihi id facere liceat,** *I ask permission to do, I ask that I may do.*
(14) **memoriā tenēre,** *to keep in mind, to remember.*

Page 76

(7) **quō facilius prohibēre posset,** *that he might more easily stop (them).*
(7) **sē invītō,** *against his will.*
(10) **negat sē posse dare,** *he says that he cannot grant.*
(13) **eā spē dēiectī,** *disappointed in this hope.*

Page 78

(2) **suā sponte,** *on their own account, of themselves.*
(8) **novīs rēbus studēre,** *to be active in fomenting a revolution, be radically inclined.*
(14) **renūntiātur,** *the news was brought.*
(14) **Helvētiīs esse in animō,** *that the Helvetians had it in mind to, the Helvetians intended.*
(17) **magnō cum perīculō,** *very dangerous.*
(18) **futūrum ut prōvincia . . . habēret,** *it would be (very dangerous) for the province to have.*

Page 80

(1) **mūnitiōnī lēgātum praefecit,** *he placed a lieutenant in charge of the defensive work.*
(2) **magnum iter,** *forced march.*
(8) **itinere exercitum prohibēre,** *to block the progress of the army.*
(18) **rogātum auxīlium,** *to ask aid.*
(18) **ita meritī sunt dē,** *such were their deserts at the hands of.*

Page 82

(7) **sē recipiunt ad,** *betake one's self to, hurry to.*
(8) **nihil reliquī esse,** *nothing to be left.*
(19) **ad eam partem pervēnit,** *he reached that part.*

Page 84

(4) **sēsē fugae mandārunt,** *fled, took to flight.*
(8) **patrum nostrōrum memoriā,** *in the time of our fathers.*
(12) **ea prīnceps poenās persolvit,** *it was the first to pay the penalty.*
(18) **in Ararī,** *over the Arar.*
(18) **pontem faciendum cūrat,** *he had a bridge built.*

Page 86

(1) **ita cum Caesare ēgit,** *he addressed (talked with) Caesar as follows.*
(8) **Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet,** *if he were willing to disregard (forget) their former outrage.*
(9) **num etiam . . . memoriam dēpōnere posse,** *could he also overlook?*
(14) **eōdem pertinēre,** *tended to the same thing.*

Page 88

(4) **satis magna cōpia pābulī,** *a sufficient supply of fodder.*
(4) **diem ex diē dūcēbant,** *they were putting him off from day to day.*
(8) **quī summō magistrātuī praeerat,** *who held (was invested with) the highest office.*
(10) **quī creātur annuus,** *who was appointed annually.*
(13) **plūs possent,** *are more powerful* (or *influential*).
(15) **dēterrent nē cōnferant,** *restrain from collecting.*

Page 90

(2) **plūribus praesentibus,** *in the presence of many.*
(4) **quaerit ex sōlō ea,** *he inquires of him personally concerning those things.*
(7) **apud plēbem,** *with the common people.*
(13) **facultātēs ad largiendum magnās,** *abundant means for lavish giving (for bribery).*

Page 92

(1) **in eum animadvertere,** *to punish.*
(13) **abs tē,** *at your hands.*
(14) **apud tē,** *with you, in your esteem.*
(18) **fīnem facere,** *stop, put an end to.*
(20) **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future.*
(21) **praeterita,** *bygones, the past.*

Page 94

(9) **terrōre perterritus,** *in a fit of panic.*
(12) **ā novissimō agmine,** *the rear guard.*
(16) **in colle mediō,** *half way up the hill.*
(17) **in summō iugō,** *on the top of the ridge.*
(22) **cōnfertissimā aciē,** *in mass formation.*

Page 96

(3) **proelium committere,** *begin the battle.*
(8) **ita ferrum sē īnflexit,** *the iron became bent.*
(11) **nūdō corpore,** *with body unprotected.*
(12) **pedem referre,** *to yield ground, to fall back.*
(16) **ex itinere,** *in march formation.*
(19) **conversa sīgna intulērunt,** *wheeled and advanced.*

Page 98

(1) **ācriter pugnātum est,** *the battle was fought sharply.*
(5) **ad vesperum,** *till almost nightfall.*
(5) **āversum hostem,** *an enemy in flight (with back turned)*
(6) **ad multam noctem,** *until late at night, far into the night.*

Page 100

(18) **ratiō cōnfecta erat,** *a calculation had been made.*
(23) **cēnsum habēre,** *to take a census.*

Page 102

(3) **sibi licēret,** *permission be granted them.*
(3) **concilium indīcere,** *announce a gathering, call a meeting.*
(4) **in diem certam,** *for a given date.*
(5) **ex commūnī cōnsēnsū,** *by general agreement.*
(11) **mercēde arcessīrentur,** *to be hired.*

Page 104

(1) **peius accidere,** *to turn out worse.*
(12) **sibi eam rem cūrae futūram,** *the matter would receive his attention.*
(13) **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *deliver a speech.*

Page 106

(2) **iūs bellī,** *the law of war.*
(2) **quī vīcerint,** *the conquerors.*
(3) **eīs imperāre,** *impose one's authority upon them.*
(3) **quem ad modum,** *as, how.*

(7) **nōn oportet mē impedīrī,** *I ought not to be interfered with.*
(7) **in meō iūre,** *in the exercise of my right.*
(13) **quid virtūte possent,** *how formidable they were.*

Page 108

(6) **hīs congressōs,** *having attacked them.*
(6) **aciem oculōrum,** *flash of the eyes.*
(13) **voltum fingere,** *disguise their feelings.*
(13) **lacrimās tenēre,** *hold back their tears.*

Page 110

(9) **quam rem paucīs contegisse,** *which honor had fallen to but few.*
(13) **ipsīs cum Haeduīs intecēderent,** *existed between themselves and the Haeduans.*
(14) **cōnsulta facta sunt,** *decrees had been passed.*
(21) **meā spontā,** *of my own free will and accord.*

Page 112

(2) **hospitiō ūtī,** *to enjoy the hospitality.*
(4) **exercitū suō praesente,** *in the hearing of his army.*
(11) **copiās prōdūcere,** *to draw up one's forces.*

Page 114

(2) **proeliō dēcertāre,** *resort to combat, decide the issue by battle.*
(3) **cōnsuētūdō erat ut,** *it was the practice to.*
(5) **ex usū,** *to advantage, of advantage.*
(11) **prō numerō,** *in comparison with the number.*
(12) **ad speciem,** *to make a display of force, for the sake of appearance.*
(20) **singulīs legiōnibus singulōs legātōs,** *a general officer over each legion.*

Page 116

(1) **impetum facere,** *to attack.*
(8) **terga vertere,** *to turn and run.*
(22) **conventūs agere,** *to hold court.*

Page 120

(3) **certior fīebat,** *he was kept informed.*
(5) **inter sē dare,** *to exchange.*
(11) **molestē ferēbant,** *they took it to heart.*
(11) **partim quī,** *in part by those who.*
(12) **novīs imperiīs studēbant,** *had a hankering for a change in government.*
(18) **initā aestāte,** *at the beginning of summer.*

Page 122

(1) **dat negōtium Senonibus ut,** *makes it the business of the Senones to, employs the Senones to.*
(4) **manūs cogī,** *that troops are being mustered.*
(5) **nōn dubitō quīn proficīscam,** *I do not hesitate to set out.*
(9) **sua omnia,** *all their possessions.*
(9) **in fīdem atque potestātem permittere,** *surrender.*
(17) **deterrēre quīn faciant,** *to prevent from making.*
(20) **quid possent,** *how powerful they are.*
(20) **plērīque Belgae,** *most of the Belgians.*

Page 124

(1) **habēmus explorāta,** *we have investigated and found out.*
(5) **plūrimum valent,** *wield the greatest influence.*
(6) **cōnficere armata mīlia centum,** *to muster a hundred thousand armed men.*
(8) **summa totīus bellī,** *supreme command of the entire war.*

Page 126

(1) **līberāliter ōrātīone prōsecūtus,** *following up with a gracious speech.*
(6) **salūtis interest,** *it concerns the safety.*
(11) **in ūnum locum coāctus,** *which had been mobilized.*
(15) **post eum quae erant,** *his rear, his line of communications.*
(17) **in flūmine pōns est,** *there is a bridge across the river.*
(20) **ab eīs,** *from the reports of those.*

Page 128

(2) **circumiectā multitūdine,** *after they had thrown a host of men about.*
(4) **testūdine factā,** *having formed a covering of shields.*
(23) **quid hostis posset,** *what the enemy's ability was.*

Page 130

(8) **trānsversa fossa,** *a ditch transversely.*
(9) **extrēma fossa,** *the end of the ditch.*
(11) **tantum multitūdine poterant,** *they were so strong* (or, *overwhelming*) *in numbers.*
(14) **sī quō opus esset,** *in case need should arise at any point.*
(19) **initium facere trānseundī,** *start to cross.*

Page 132

(4) **eō cōnsiliō, ut expugnārent,** *with the intention of storming.*
(6) **certior factus,** *on being informed.*

(10) **circumventōs interfēcērunt,** *they surrounded and slew.*
(14) **locum inīquiōrum,** *a less favorable position.*
(24) **hīs persuādēre nōn poterat,** *they could not be persuaded.*

Page 134

(9) **novissimī,** *the rear guard.*
(17) **exaudītō clāmōre,** *having heard clearly the shout.*
(18) **sibi praesidium pōnere,** *place one's reliance.*
(19) **quantum fuit diēī spatium,** *as daylight lasted.*
(20) **sub occāsum sōlis,** *toward evening, toward sunset.*

Page 136

(4) **ex itinere,** *in marching order.*
(12) **Remīs petentibus,** *on the petition of the Remi, at the request of the Remi.*
(17) **maiōrēs nātū,** *elders.*

Page 138

(1) **facit verba,** *speaks.*
(2) **in fidē atque amīcitiā,** *loyal and friendly to.*
(4) **in servitūtem redāctōs,** *reduced to a state of slavery.*
(5) **populō bellum īnferre,** *to wage war on a people.*
(8) **clēmentīa ūtī,** *to show mercy.*
(9) **in eōs,** *toward them.*
(11) **sī quā,** *whatever.*
(14) **in fidem recipere,** *receive in surrender.*
(17) **sē dēdere,** *to surrender.*
(19) **nūllus aditus est mercātōribus,** *merchants have no access.*
(20) **nihil vinī,** *no wine.*

Page 140

(1) **trīduum iter,** *a three days' march.*
(2) **nōn amplius mīlia x passuum ab,** *not more than ten miles away.*
(9) **quō aditus nōn esset,** *which was inaccessible to.*
(17) **neque esse quicquam negōtī,** *that it would not be difficult.*
(20) **futūrum ut,** *the result would be that.*

Page 142

(4) **adversus huic et contrārius,** *opposite this and facing it.*
(5) **īnfimus apertus,** *free from woods at the bottom.*
(7) **in occultō,** *hidden, concealed.*
(11) **ratiō ōrdōque agminis,** *plan and arrangement of the column.*
(11) **aliter sē habēbat ac,** *was different from what.*

(20) **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as.*
(23) **ad flūmen,** *by the river.*
(24) **ad silvās,** *at the edge of the woods.*
(24) **in manibus nostrīs,** *upon us, fighting us hand to hand, at close quarters.*

Page 144

(1) **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,** *Caesar had to do everything at once.*
(2) **ad arma concurrī,** *to arm.*
(4) **paulō longius,** *an unusual distance.*
(15) **aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,** *in another quarter two legions in different places.*
(18) **ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs,** *unprotected on the front and on the left wing.*
(23) **summum castrōrum locum,** *the height on which the camp stood.*

Page 146

(3) **sē recipere in,** *retreat to, take refuge in.*
(3) **adversī hostēs,** *enemy advancing from the opposite direction.*
(8) **sē fugae mandāre,** *to turn and run, commend oneself to flight.*
(13) **virtūtis opīniō,** *reputation for courage.*
(23) **sībī impedimentō fuērunt,** *they were in each other's way.*

Page 148

(4) **ab novissimīs,** *of the rear guard.*
(5) **dēsertō locō,** *leaving their stations.*
(5) **proeliō excēdere,** *to leave the battle ground.*
(11) **sīgna īnferre,** *to advance the standards, advance into action.*
(12) **manipulōs laxāre,** *to open the ranks.*
(15) **etiam extrēmīs suīs rēbus,** *even in a situation of utmost danger to himself.*
(15) **operam novāre,** *do one's best.*

Page 150

(1) **etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis,** *even in utter despair of safety.*
(2) **prīmī eōrum,** *their foremost ranks.*
(5) **pīla intercepta remittere,** *to pick up javelins and hurl them back.*
(7) **iūdicārī dēbet,** *one must conclude.*
(9) **magnitūdō animī,** *remarkable courage.*
(9) **ex difficillimīs,** *in themselves very difficult.*
(21) **ex litterīs,** *learned through the letters*
(22) **quod nullī accīdit,** *(a distinction) which no one had received.*

Page 154

(2) **initā hieme,** *at the beginning of winter.*
(13) **omnēs . . . habent vectīgālēs,** *hold all subject to tribute.*
(14) **eō marī ūtī,** *to sail this sea.*
(14) **ab hīs fit initium bellī,** *these took the first step toward war.*
(21) **cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit,** *as soon as the season of the year permitted.*

Page 156

(1) **iniūra retentōrum equitum,** *the wrong done by arresting the cavalrymen.*
(4) **reliquae nātiōnēs,** *the rest of the tribes.*
(4) **sibi idem licēre,** *they are free to do likewise.*
(7) **omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātī student,** *all men naturally are eager for liberty.*
(18) **sē aestus incitat,** *the tide rises.*
(20) **minuente aestū,** *at low tide.*

Page 158

(1) **ad hunc modum,** *in the following manner.*
(6) **quamvis vīs,** *the utmost violence, any sort of violence.*
(16) **neque facile tēlum adigēbātur,** *nor could a weapon easily be hurled up (onto them).*
(17) **eādem dē causā,** *for the same reason.*
(18) **accēdēbat ut,** *there was the further advantage that.*
(19) **sē ventō dēdērunt,** *they ran before the wind.*
(19) **tempestātem ferre,** *to weather a storm.*

Page 160

(7) **omnīs ūsus,** *all control.*
(8) **reliquum erat certāmen positum,** *the rest of the struggle depended on.*
(11) **rēs gerēbātur,** *the contest was being fought out.*
(16) **eī reī nūllam auxilium,** *no remedy for these tactics.*
(18) **quō ventus ferēbat,** *in which the wind was blowing.*
(19) **sē movēre,** *stir.*
(23) **ūsque ad occāsum sōlis,** *until sunset.*

Page 164

(9) **singula mīlia,** *a thousand each.*
(12) **ratiō atque ūsus bellī,** *the theory and practice of war.*
(16) **multum sunt in,** *devote much time to.*
(18) **in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt,** *they have hardened* (or *inured*) *themselves to this practice.*

Page 166

(3) **quibus dēlectantur,** *for which they have a particular fancy.*
(4) **impēnsō pretiō,** *at a high price.*
(7) **summī labōris,** *capable of the greatest endurance.*
(9) **eōdem remanēre vēstigiō,** *to stand in their tracks.*
(10) **ūsus est,** *there is need, need arises.*
(14) **ad labōrem ferendum,** *for enduring hardship, to endure hardship.*

Page 168

(3) **nihil hīs committendum,** *that no reliance whatever should be placed on them.*
(4) **est Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis ut cogant,** *it is a custom of the Gauls to compel.*
(11) **nē graviōrī bellō occurreret,** *lest he be faced with quite serious war.*

Page 170

(2) **dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis,** *measured to correspond to the depth of the river.*
(3) **inter sē iungēbat,** *he joined together.*
(4) **māchinatiōnibus immissa,** *let down by means of mechanical devices.*
(6) **prōnē ac fastīgātē,** *leaning forward at a decided slant.*
(7) **ad eundem modum,** *in the same way.*
(8) **ab īnferiōre parte (flūminis),** *on the lower side.*
(11) **quantum iunctūra dīstābat,** *the amount of the joining (of the piles).*
(12) **ab extrēma parte,** *at the end.*
(13) **in contrāriam partem revīnctus,** *braced in the opposite direction.*
(15) **sē incitāre,** *to increase, swell, rise.*

Page 172

(8) **exiguā parte aestātis reliquā,** *since a small part of summer remained.*
(15) **quae omnia ferē,** *nearly all of these things.*
(21) **ūsum bellī,** *methods of warfare.*

Page 174

(1) **perīculum facere,** *assume* (or *take*) *the risk.*
(4) **quam prīmum,** *at the earliest opportunity.*
(8) **classem convenīre iubet,** *he orders the fleet to mobilize.*
(13) **līberāliter pollicitus,** *having made generous promises.*
(13) **in eā sententiā permanēre,** *stick to their purpose, remain of the same mind.*
(17) **magnī habētur,** *is held in high estimation.*
(21) **quantum eī facultātis darī potuit,** *so far as opportunity afforded him.*

Page 176

(3) **sē excūsāre dē,** *to make one's position clear with regard to.*
(9) **quod nāvium longārum,** *whatever in the way of galleys* (or *warships*).
(12) **ā mīlitibus passuum,** *two miles away.*
(13) **quō minus venīre possent,** *from coming.*
(22) **ancorīs exspectāre,** *ride at anchor.*

Page 178

(7) **nōs ēgredī prohibent,** *they stop us from disembarking.*
(9) **mīlitibus . . . dēsiliendum,** *the soldiers had to jump down.*
(16) **eādem alacritāte ūtēbantur,** *were displaying the same readiness.*
(20) **remīs incitārī,** *to be propelled by oars.*
(20) **ad latus āpertum,** *adjacent to the exposed flank.*

Page 180

(5) **ego certē,** *I, at any rate.*
(13) **alius ex aliā nāvī,** *one from one ship and another from another.*
(21) **subsidium submīttere,** *to send reinforcements.*
(23) **in fugam dēdērunt,** *put to flight.*

Page 182

(20) **lēnis ventus,** *a light breeze.*
(24) **sōlis occāsum,** *the west.*
(24) **magnō suō cum perīculō,** *with great danger to themselves.*

Page 184

(1) **quī dīes,** *a day which.*
(4) **in aridum,** *on dry land.*
(7) **nāvis frācta erat,** *a ship was wrecked.*
(9) **perturbātiō facta est,** *a panic broke out.*
(15) **inter sē conlocūtī,** *having conferred together.*
(16) **nāvēs Rōmānīs dēesse,** *that the Romans were short of ships.*
(21) **rem prōdūcere,** *prolong the campaign.*

Page 186

(4) **ad omnēs cāsūs,** *for any emergence.*
(4) **subsidia compārāre,** *to make provision.*
(6) **gravissimē adflictae nāvēs,** *most seriously damaged ships.*
(16) **aliquid novī ab Barbarīs initium cōnsilī,** *some new scheme on the part of the natives.*
(17) **in statiōnem succēdere,** *to relieve guard.*
(21) **aegrē sustinēre,** *to hold out with difficulty.*

Page 188

(2) **terrōre equōrum,** *through the fright caused by the horses.*
(7) **ad suōs,** *to their own lines.*
(13) **quō factō,** *although this had been accomplished.*
(22) **praedae faciendae,** *of obtaining booty.*

Page 190

(8) **impetum ferre,** *withstand the attack.*
(16) **propinquā diē equinoctī,** *as the season of equinox was near.*
(20) **portum capere,** *to make the harbor.*

Page 192

(1) **ex nāvibus expōnī,** *to be disembarked.*
(5) **arma pōnere,** *lay down their arms.*
(16) **rebelliōnem facere,** *to rebel, revolt.*
(19) **in potestātem venīre,** *to surrender.*
(23) **sē recipere,** *return.*

Page 196

(5) **hīs rēbus constitūtīs,** *these steps having been taken.*
(12) **magnī animī,** *of great ambitions, of great resolution.*
(13) **accedēbāt hūc,** *to this was added the fact.*
(15) **graviter ferre,** *to take to heart.*

Page 198

(4) **quid nocēre,** *to do some (any) injury to, harm in some way.*
(8) **operam dare,** *to take pains, to see that, to make it one's business to.*
(8) **in officiō,** *in a state of allegiance, in line of duty.*
(10) **omnium impedītīs animīs,** *the attention of all being occupied.*
(12) **īnscientē Caesare,** *unbeknown to Caesar, without Caesar's knowledge.*
(16) **vim facere,** *to offer resistance.*

Page 200

(2) **ventō intermissō,** *the wind having died down.*
(5) **meridiānō tempore,** *at noon.*
(7) **summa imperiī bellīque administrandī,** *the supreme command of the war.*
(12) **ipsā memōriā,** *according to their tradition.*
(15) **hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō,** *the population is beyond number.*
(18) **nāscitur plumbum album,** *tin is found.*

Page 202

(9) **mediō cursū,** *half way across.*
(12) **sub brūmam,** *during the winter.*
(13) **ex aquā,** *by means of the water clock.*
(15) **ut opīniō illōrum fert,** *according to their estimate.*
(16) **cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra,** *opposite which is no land.*

Page 204

(1) **ex hīs omnibus hūmānissimī,** *the most civilized of all these.*
(3) **interiōrēs plērīque,** *most of those living in the interior.*
(7) **capillō prōmissō,** *with flowing hair.*
(9) **inter sē commūnēs,** *in common.*
(18) **quid . . . vectīgālis,** *what tribute, how much tribute.*
(18) **in annōs singulōs,** *annually.*

Page 206

(8) **nūlla pars ad labōrem intermittitur,** *work stopped at no time.*
(11) **facultās quiētis,** *an opportunity for rest, chance to rest.*
(13) **tenuissimā valetūdine,** *in very delicate health.*
(15) **sibi parcēre,** *reserve one's strength, spare oneself.*
(17) **potestātem facere,** *to grant permission, allow an opportunity.*
(20) **fideī faciendae causā,** *in order to inspire belief, by way of evidence.*

Page 208

(3) **quōsdam dē exercitū,** *certain men connected with the army.*
(4) **nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā,** *having no store of iron tools.*
(16) **testūdinēs agere,** *to move up sheds.*
(17) **vallum ascendere,** *to scale the rampart.*
(19) **turrim adigere,** *to advance a tower.*

Page 210

(3) **inter sē,** *with each other.*
(10) **mediocrī spatiō relictō,** *(arriving) at a moderate distance.*
(17) **impedītum circumsistunt,** *they surround him thus handicapped.*
(18) **succurrere illī,** *to run to his rescue.*
(20) **rem comminus gerere,** *to carry on the fight hand to hand, to fight it out at close quarters.*

Page 212

(1) **salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnere,** *to rely solely on despatch for safety, to place one's sole reliance for safety in despatch.*
(3) **apud Cicerōnem,** *in Cicero's camp.*

(15) **perlēctam recitat,** *having read it through, he reads it aloud.*
(16) **laetitiā omnēs adficit,** *brings great joy to all, fills all with joy.*
(18) **dubitātiōnem expellere,** *to remove doubt.*
(21) **datā facultāte,** *now that an opportunity is afforded.*

Page 214

(1) **movet castra,** *breaks camp.*
(5) **remittō dē,** *let up on, relax.*
(9) **angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest,** *by making the camp streets as narrow as possible.*
(10) **in contemptiōnem venīre,** *to be held in contempt.*
(15) **prōductā lēgiōne,** *when the legion had been drawn up for inspection.*
(16) **nōn decimum quemque,** *not one in ten.*
(23) **contiōne habitā,** *having held an assembly.*
(23) **rem gestum prōpōnere,** *to explain what had happened.*

Page 218

(2) **duābus dē causīs,** *for two reasons.*
(6) **nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne,** *in accordance with his well-known and established plan.*
(8) **ab hīs,** *from among these.*
(10) **pūrgandī suī causā,** *in order to vindicate themselves.*
(17) **in ūnum locum cōpiās agere,** *to mobilize troops.*
(23) **ad inīquam condiciōnem pugnandī,** *into an unfavorable battle ground.*

Page 220

(1) **paucīs diēbus intermissīs,** *after an interval of a few days.*
(8) **iniūriīs incursiōnibusque,** *injury through raids.*
(11) **ad hunc locum perventum est,** *this point has been reached.*
(11) **nōn aliēnum,** *not out of place.*
(12) **dē . . . prōpōnere,** *to give an account of.*
(18) **summa omnium rērum adit ad,** *the final decision of all matters rests upon.*
(23) **in summā,** *in general, on the whole.*

Page 222

(2) **per sē,** *of themselves.*
(3) **minus valēre,** *to wield little influence, to be less influential.*
(8) **ad sē trādūcere,** *to win over to oneself.*
(9) **pūblicē iūrāre,** *to take an oath in the name of the state.*
(13) **īnfectā rē,** *without accomplishing his purpose.*
(15) **commutātiō rerum,** *a change in the political situation.*
(23) **sē in clientēlam dicāre,** *to attach oneself as a dependent.*

Page 224

(1) **aliquō numerō,** *of any account.*
(3) **locō servōrum,** *in the same condition as slaves.*
(3) **nihil audet per sē,** *takes no action on its own initiative.*
(5) **sē in servitūtem dīcant,** *they bind themselves to servitude.*
(6) **in hōs,** *over whom.*
(10) **religiōnēs interpretantur,** *they explain matters of religion.*
(15) **īdem dēcernunt,** *they likewise render judgment.*
(18) **numerō impiōrum,** *in the category of accused, as godless and desperate men.*

Page 226

(10) **et nunc,** *even now.*
(13) **abesse ā bellō,** *refrain from war.*
(15) **in disciplīnā,** *under instruction.*
(17) **prīvātae ratiōnēs,** *private records.*
(21) **multa . . . disputant,** *they treat many subjects.*

Page 228

(1) **admodum dēdita religiōnibus,** *rather devoted (quite devoted) to religious observances.*
(2) **graviōribus morbīs adfectus,** *seriously ill, afflicted with the more serious diseases.*
(17) **ferunt,** *they assert.*
(17) **quaestus pecūniae,** *making money.*
(22) **initia trādere,** *bestow the rudiments.*
(23) **bella regere,** *to direct wars.*

Page 230

(6) **spatia temporis fīniunt,** *they measure periods of time.*
(8) **in reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs,** *with respect to customs of living.*
(12) **dōtis nōmine,** *as a dowry.*
(14) **coniūnctim rātiō,** *joint account.*
(15) **rotiōnem habēre,** *keep on account.*
(18) **in uxōrēs,** *over the wives.*
(20) **in servīlem modum,** *in accordance with the method used toward slaves.*
(21) **quaestiōnem habēre,** *to hold an investigation.*

Page 232

(2) **vīvīs cordī esse,** *to be dear to them while alive.*
(3) **suprā hanc memoriam,** *previous to this time* (or *generation*).
(6) **rem pūblicam administrāre,** *to conduct public affairs.*

(7) **habent lēgibus sānctum,** *have it sanctioned by law.*
(12) **quae vīsa sunt,** *what seems advisable.*
(13) **ex ūsū,** *expedient.*
(14) **dē rē pūblicā loquī,** *to discuss public questions.*
(20) **nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt,** *have not heard of.*
(22) **labōrī studēre,** *devote oneself to.*

Page 234

(3) **fīnēs propriōs,** *fields of their own.*
(5) **vīsum est,** *seemed advisable.*
(12) **aequītāte animī,** *in a state of contentment, in a contented state of mind.*
(22) **iūs dīcunt,** *administer justice.*
(22) **contrōversiās minuunt,** *settle disputes.*

Page 236

(1) **īnfāmiam habēre,** *to hold it a disgrace.*
(4) **quī sequī velint, profiteantur,** *let those who wish volunteer to follow him.*
(17) **fāmā nōtum esse,** *known by hearsay.*
(21) **expedītō,** *for one traveling light.*

Page 238

(2) **rēctā regiōne,** *in a course parallel with.*
(3) **sē flectit,** *winds, turns.*
(10) **bos cervī figūrā,** *reindeer.*
(10) **ā mediā fronte,** *from the center of the forehead.*
(12) **ab summō,** *from the top.*
(14) **fēminae marisque,** *of male and female.*
(19) **adflictae cāsū,** *having met with mishap* (or *accident*).

Page 240

(3) **tantum ut,** *just so much that.*
(7) **hī sunt speciē,** *they have the appearance.*
(14) **ferunt laudem,** *win praise.*
(18) **ab labrīs argentō,** *with a rim of silver.*

Page 246

(4) **dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre,** *to make a levy on the entire province.*
(6) **addunt et fingunt,** *make additions and embellishments.*
(9) **ante sē,** *in each other's presence.*

(13) **omnibus pollicitiōnibus,** *by every kind of promise.*
(13) **initium facere,** *to start, commence.*
(15) **in lībertātem vindicāre,** *win back to liberty.*
(16) **ratīonem habēre,** *adopt a plan, take precautions.*

Page 248

(2) **prīncipēs bellum factūrum,** *that they will be the first to make war.*
(3) **in praesentiā,** *in the present instance.*
(4) **ĭnter se cavēre,** *to take mutual precautions.*
(4) **nē efferātur,** *that the news should not be broadcast.*
(8) **omnēs quī adsunt,** *all those present.*
(9) **tempus cōnstituere,** *to fix a time, set a time, name a date.*
(14) **reī praeesse,** *to superintend an activity.*
(16) **fāma perfertur,** *the news spreads, the report is spread.*
(19) **ut tum accidit,** *as happened in this case.*

Page 250

(6) **ad arma concurritur,** *there is a rush to take up arms.*
(7) **hanc fortūnam temptandam,** *they ought to take this chance.*
(11) **perdūcere ex cīvitāte,** *to win over such of the citizens.*
(11) **ad suam sententiam,** *to his own view.*
(16) **ut in fidē maneant,** *to remain loyal.*
(17) **summam imperī sevēritātem,** *the utmost rigor of authority.*

Page 252

(11) **urbānēs rēs,** *conditions in the city.*
(11) **in statum pervenīre,** *to reach a state.*
(13) **difficultāte adficī,** *to be faced with a difficulty.*
(15) **in itinere,** *while marching.*
(15) **proeliō dīmicāre,** *to fight a battle.*
(23) **omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum,** *ought to take precedence of all his other plans.*

Page 254

(1) **repressō Lucteriō et remōtō,** *with Luctirius checked and forced to retreat.*
(4) **dūrissimō tempore annī,** *at the severest time of the year.*
(7) **oppressus inopīnāns,** *taken unawares.*
(10) **haec,** *the news.*
(16) **in . . . versus,** *towards.*
(17) **haec,** *these movements.*
(17) **dē Vercingetorīge,** *on the part of Vercingetorix.*
(18) **ūsū ventūra,** *would naturally follow.*

(18) **opīniōne praecipere,** *to conjecture, to anticipate.*
(18) **per causam,** *on the pretext.*

Page 256

(2) **necessāriō tempore,** *at critical period.*
(2) **cīvītāte subvēnīre,** *to assist the state.*
(5) **magistrātum gerere,** *hold office.*
(7) **fōre ut,** *the result would be that.*
(9) **summus magistrātus,** *highest office.*
(14) **imperium dēpōnere,** *lay aside his claims to office.*
(16) **sollicitātus pecūniā,** *bribed.*
(22) **levem audītiōnem,** *mere hearing.*
(25) **plēbem impellere,** *stir the common people.*

Page 258

(7) **contendere ut,** *insist that.*
(8) **in contrōversiam dēductus,** *having led to a dispute.*
(9) **concilium indīcere,** *call a meeting.*
(11) **ad ūnum,** *to a man.*
(12) **magnō dolōre ferunt,** *take keenly to heart the fact that.*
(13) **Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt,** *they lament the loss of Caesar's favor.*
(23) **aequō animō,** *without hesitation.*
(24) **reī familiāris iactūra,** *loss of private property.*
(23) **summa imperī,** *entire command.*

Page 260

(1) **Haeduīs imperat,** *he levies on the Haedui.*
(2) **hūc addit,** *to this he adds.*
(8) **mentem resīdere,** *passions cool.*
(11) **ad hōs omnēs cāsūs,** *for all these contingencies.*
(14) **suā sponte,** *on their own initiative.*
(14) **proeliō congressī,** *having given battle.*
(17) **fīnēs tuērī,** *to guard one's territory.*

Page 262

(8) **tempus victōriae vēnisse,** *that the hour of victory was at hand.*
(9) **praesēns lībertās,** *liberty for the present.*
(10) **reliquī temporis,** *for the future.*
(11) **parum prōficī,** *to be of little use, to amount to nothing.*
(14) **in eō,** *in this act.*
(15) **salūtī cōnsulere,** *take thought of one's safety.*

(16) **maiōre animō,** *with all the more courage.*
(23) **ab duōbus lateribus,** *on both flanks.*
(24) **ā prīmō agnime,** *on the van.*

Page 264

(1) **cōnstitit agmen,** *the column halted.*
(3) **sīgna īnferre,** *advance the standards.*
(6) **ab dextrō latere,** *on the right flank.*
(10) **sē fugae mandāre,** *take to flight.*
(19) **ex novissimō agmine,** *of the rear lines.*
(21) **alterō die,** *on the second day.*
(22) **perspectō sitū,** *having examined the site.*

Page 266

(12) **ratiōnem habēre,** *to take account of.*
(13) **optimē meritus,** *who deserved the best possible treatment.*
(13) **dē lībertāte,** *for his efforts in behalf of liberty.*
(15) **ratiōne initā,** *having made an inventory.*
(17) **parcendō,** *by being sparing, by exercising economy.*
(19) **poenam capitis,** *death penalty.*
(21) **compellere,** *to requisition from.*

Page 268

(9) **conciliō coāctō,** *having met in council.*
(13) **cīvium locō habēre,** *regard as citizens.*
(14) **mihi rēs est,** *my quarrel is with those.*
(15) **animī molletia,** *weakness.*

Page 270

(3) **imbecilitās animī,** *faint-heartedness.*
(6) **dūbitāre dē,** *to doubt.*
(6) **quid ergō,** *what then.*
(7) **animī causā,** *for recreation, for their health.*
(13) **vītam tolerāre,** *maintain one's existence.*
(21) **iūre et lēgibus commutātīs,** *its rights and privileges lost.*
(22) **secūribus subiecta,** *obedient to the Roman symbol of authority.*

Page 272

(6) **quā sīgnificātiōne,** *that by this sign.*
(16) **ad utramque rem,** *for either alternative.*
(21) **nōmine praedae,** *as booty.*
(21) **capita singula,** *one apiece.*
(26) **suplicātiō redditur,** *a thanksgiving is voted.*

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

801. First Declension *Ā* Stem Nouns

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.
Nom.	via	viae	fīlia	fīliae	Aenēās
Gen.	viae	viārum	fīliae	fīliārum	Aenēae
Dat.	viae	viīs	fīliae	fīliābus	Aenēae
Acc.	viam	viās	fīliam	fīliās	Aenēam(an)
Abl.	viā	viīs	fīliā	fīliābus	Aenēā

802. Second Declension — *O* Stem Nouns

Singular

Nom.	servus [1]	fīlius [2]	ager	vir	templum
Gen.	servī	fīlī,-iī	agrī	virī	templī
Dat.	servō	fīliō	agrō	virō	templō
Acc.	servum	fīlium	agrum	virum	templum
Abl.	servō	fīliō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

Nom.	servī	fīliī	agrī	virī	templa
Gen.	servōrum	fīliōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
Dat.	servīs	fīliīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Acc.	servōs	fīliōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Abl.	servīs	fīliīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

[1] Masculine nouns in **-us** have a vocative case in **-e**, **serve**.

[2] Masculine nouns in **-ius** have a vocative in **-ī**, **fīlī**; **Lūcī** (*voc.* of **Lūcius**).

803. Third Declension — Consonant Stems

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	mercātor	mercātōrēs
Gen.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	mercātōris	mercātōrum
Dat.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	mercātōrī	mercātōribus
Acc.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	mercātōrem	mercātōrēs
Abl.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	mercātōre	mercātōribus

			Singular		
Nom.	rēx	mīles	virtūs	pēs	aestās
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	pedis	aestātis
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	pedī	aestātī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	pedem	aestātem
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	pede	aestāte
			Plural		
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	pedēs	aestātēs
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	pedum	aestātum
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	pedibus	aestātibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	pedēs	aestātēs
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	pedibus	aestātibus

			Singular		
Nom.	homō	pater	flūmen	tempus	caput
Gen.	hominis	patris	flūminis	temporis	capitis
Dat.	hominī	patrī	flūminī	temporī	capitī
Acc.	hominem	patrem	flūmen	tempus	caput
Abl.	homine	patre	flūmine	tempore	capite
			Plural		
Nom.	hominēs	patrēs	flūmina	tempora	capita
Gen.	hominum	patrum	flūminum	temporum	capitum
Dat.	hominibus	patribus	flūminibus	temporibus	capitibus
Acc.	hominēs	patrēs	flūmina	tempora	capita
Abl.	hominibus	patribus	flūminibus	temporibus	capitibus

804. Third Declension — *I* Stems

			Singular		
Nom.	hostis	caedēs	mōns	animal	mare
Gen.	hostis	caedis	montis	animālis	maris
Dat.	hostī	caedī	montī	animālī	marī
Acc.	hostem	caedem	montem	animal	mare
Abl.	hoste	caede	monte	animālī	marī
			Plural		
Nom.	hostēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	maria
Gen.	hostium	caedium	montium	animālium	marium
Dat.	hostibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	maribus
Acc.	hostīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	montīs (-ēs)	animālia	maria
Abl.	hostibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	maribus

805. Fourth Declension — *U* Stems

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua	domus	domūs
Gen.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum	domūs	domuum
Dat.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus	domuī, -ō	domibus
Acc.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua	domum	domūs, -ōs
Abl.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus	domū, -ō	domibus

806. Fifth Declension — *Ē* Stems

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

807. First and Second Declension Adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	mas.	fem.	neu.	mas.	fem.	neu.
Nom.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Gen.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat.	lātō	lātae	lātō	latīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Abl.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

	mas.	fem.	neu.	mas.	fem.	neu.
Nom.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

	mas.	fem.	neu.	mas.	fem.	neu.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

808. Adjectives with Irregular Genitive in *-ius*

Nine adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have the genitive singular in **-ius** and the dative singular in **-i** in all genders. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **lātus**.

	Singular					
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter [1]	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

[1] Note that **alter** has a short **i** in the genitive.

809. Third Declension Adjectives

	Singular		Singular	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve
Gen.	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	brevem	breve
Abl.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	brevī	brevī
	Plural		Plural	
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus
Acc.	audācīs, -ēs	audācia	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	ācer, ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus
Nom.	celer, celeris	celere	celerēs	celeria
Gen.	celeris	celeris	celerium	celerium
Dat.	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus
Acc.	celerem	celere	celerīs, -ēs	celeria
Abl.	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus

810. Present Active Participles

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs,-ēs	amantia
Abl.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
Abl.	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

811. Declension of Comparatives

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

812. Declension of Numerals

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -īs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Nom.	ducentī	ducentae	ducenta	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	ducentōrum	ducentārum	ducentōrum	——	mīlium
Dat.	ducentīs	ducentīs	ducentīs	——	mīlibus
Acc.	ducentōs	ducentās	ducenta	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	ducentīs	ducentīs	ducentīs	——	mīlibus

813. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus (alto-)	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser (misero-)	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

814. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um multī, -ae, -a	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
senex, senis	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, *outside*	exterior	extrēmus
īnferus, *below*	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus
posterus, *behind*	posterior	postrēmus
superus, *above*	superior	suprēmus, summus
(prae, *before*)	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
(citrā, *this side of*)	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
(ultrā, *beyond*)	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*
(in, intrā, *in, within*)	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
(prope, *near*)	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next*

815. Regular Comparison of Adverbs

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
laetus	laetē	laetius	laetissimē
miser	miserē	miserius	miserrimē
pulcher	pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācer	ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
facilis	facile	facilius	facillimē
bonus	bene	melius	optimē
malus	male	pēius	pessimē

816. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pēius	pessimē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, *too, little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
magnoperē, *greatly*	magis	maximē

817. Numeral Adjectives

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (*or* alter)
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim *or* sexdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22.	vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēsimus
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus *or* centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus

	Cardinals	Ordinals
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sēscentī *or* sexcentī	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus

818. Personal Pronouns

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
Gen.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

819. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neu.	masc.	fem.	neu.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Nom.	īdem	e'adem	idem	iīdem eīdem	eaedem	e'adem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	e'adem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

820. The Relative Pronoun

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

821. Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.	MASC.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	(cūius)	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

822. First Conjugation — *Ā* Stems

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus**

Indicative

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
		PRESENT	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
līberō	līberāmus	līberor	līberāmur
līberās	līberātis	līberāris *or* -re	līberāminī
līberat	līberant	līberātur	līberantur
		PAST PROGRESSIVE	
līberābam	līberābāmus	līberābar	līberābāmur
līberābās	līberābātis	līberābāris *or* -re	līberābāminī
līberābat	līberābant	līberābātur	līberābantur
		FUTURE	
līberābō	līberābimus	līberābor	līberābimur
līberābis	līberābitis	līberāberis *or* -re	līberābiminī
līberābit	līberābunt	līberābitur	līberābuntur
		PERFECT	
līberāvī	līberāvimus	līberātus sum	līberātī sumus
līberāvistī	līberāvistis	līberātus es	līberātī estis
līberāvit	līberāvērunt	līberātus est	līberātī sunt
		PAST PERFECT	
līberāveram	līberāverāmus	līberātus eram	līberātī eramus
līberāverās	līberāverātis	līberātus erās	līberātī erātis
līberāverat	līberāverant	līberātus erat	līberātī erant
		FUTURE PERFECT	
līberāverō	līberāverimus	līberātus erō	līberātī erimus
līberāveris	līberāveritis	līberātus eris	līberātī eritis
līberāverit	līberāverint	līberātus erit	līberātī erunt

Imperative

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
PRESENT			
2d Pers.	līberā līberāte	*2d Pers.*	līberāre līberāminī

Infinitive

Pres.	līberāre	līberārī
Perf.	līberāvisse	līberātus esse
Fut.	līberātūrus (esse)	līberātum īrī

Participle

Pres.	līberāns	*Pres.*	——
Fut.	līberātūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	līberandus, -a, -um
Perf.	——	*Perf.*	līberātus, -a, -um

Gerund		Supine	
Nom.	——	*Acc.*	līberātum
Gen.	līberandī	*Abl.*	līberātū
Dat.	līberandō		
Acc.	līberandum		
Abl.	līberandō		

823. Second Conjugation — *Ē* Stems

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moveō, mōvēre, mōvī, mōtus**

Indicative

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
PRESENT			
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
moveō	movēmus	moveor	movēmur
movēs	movētis	movēris	movēminī
movet	movent	movētur	moventur
PAST PROGRESSIVE			
movēbam	movēbāmus	movēbar	movēbāmur
movēbās	movēbātis	movēbāris	movēbāminī
movēbat	movēbant	movēbātur	movēbantur

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
Future			
movēbo	movēbimus	movēbor	movēbimur
movēbis	movēbitis	movēberis	movēbiminī
movēbit	movēbunt	movēbitur	movēbuntur
Perfect			
mōvī	mōvimus	mōtus { sum, es, est	mōtī { sumus, estis, sunt
mōvistī	mōvistis		
mōvit	mōvērunt		
Past Perfect			
mōveram	mōverāmus	mōtus { eram, erās, erat	mōtī { erāmus, erātis, erant
mōverās	mōverātis		
mōverat	mōverant		
Future Perfect			
mōverō	mōverimus	mōtus { ero, eris, erit	mōtī { erimus, eritis, erunt
mōveris	mōveritis		
mōverit	mōverint		

Imperative

Present			
2d Pers. movē	movēte	*2d Pers.* movēre	movēminī

Infinitive

Pres.	movēre	*Pres.*	movērī
Perf.	mōvisse	*Perf.*	mōtus, -a, -um (esse)
Fut.	mōtūrus, -a, -um (esse)	*Fut.*	mōtum īrī

Participles

Pres.	movēns	*Pres.*	——
Fut.	mōtūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	movendus, -a, -um
Perf.	——	*Perf.*	mōtus, -a, -um

Gerund		**Supine**	
Nom.	——	*Acc.*	mōtum
Gen.	movendī	*Abl.*	mōtū
Dat.	movendō		
Acc.	movendum		
Abl.	movendō		

824. Third Conjugation — Consonant Stems

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

Indicative

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris, -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
PAST PROGRESSIVE			
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris, -re	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE			
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris, -re	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur
PERFECT			
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus { sum	rēctī { sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis	es	estis
rēxit	rēxērunt, -re	est	sunt
PAST PERFECT			
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rectus { eram	rēctī { erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	erās	erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant	erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus { erō	rēctī { erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	eris	eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint	erit	erunt

Imperative

PRESENT			
2d Pers. rege	regite	*2d Pers.* regere	regimini

Infinitive

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*
Pres.	regere	regī
Perf.	rēxisse	rēctus esse,
Fut.	rēctūrus esse,	rēctum īrī

Participles

Pres.	regēns, -entis	*Pres.*	——
Fut.	rēctūrus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	regendus, -a, -um
Perf.	——	*Perf.*	rēctus, -a, -um

Gerund		**Supine**	
Nom.	——	*Acc.*	rēctum
Gen.	regendī	*Abl.*	rēctū
Dat.	regendō		
Acc.	regendum		
Abl.	regendō		

825. Third Conjugation — Short *I* Stems

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

Indicative

Active Voice — *Passive Voice*

Present

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis, -re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Past Progressive

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Indicative

Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
FUTURE			
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

PERFECT

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. captus sum, es, est, etc.

PAST PERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

Imperative

2d Pers.	cape	capite	*2d Pers.*	capere	capimini

Infinitive

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

Participles

Pres.	capiēns, -ientis	*Pres.*	——
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	capiendus, -a, -um
Perf.	——	*Perf.*	captus, -a, -um

Gerund		**Supine**	
Gen.	capiendī	*Acc.*	captum
Dat.	capiendō	*Abl.*	captū
Acc.	capiendum		
Abl.	capiendō		

826. Fourth Conjugation — *I* Stems

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus.**

Indicative

Active Voice

PRESENT

mūniō	mūnīmus
mūnīs	mūnītis
mūnit	mūniunt

PAST PROGRESSIVE

mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus
mūniēbās	mūniēbātis
mūniēbat	mūniēbant

FUTURE

mūniam	mūniēmus
mūniēs	mūniētis
mūniet	mūnient

PERFECT

mūnīvī	mūnīvimus
mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis
mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)

PAST PERFECT

mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus
mūnīverās	mūnīverātis
mūnīverat	mūnīverant

FUTURE PERFECT

mūnīverō	mūnīverimus
mūnīveris	mūnīveritis
mūnīverit	mūnīverint

Passive Voice

PRESENT

mūnior	mūnīmur
mūnīris (-re)	mūnīminī
mūnītur	mūniuntur

PAST PROGRESSIVE

mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur
mūniēbāris (-re)	mūniēbāminī
mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur

FUTURE

mūniar	mūniēmur
mūniēris (-re)	mūniēminī
mūniētur	mūnientur

PERFECT

mūnītus	sum	mūnītī	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

mūnītus	eram	mūnītī	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

mūnītus	erō	mūnītī	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

Present Imperative

2d Sing.	mūnī	mūnīre
2d Plur.	mūnīte	mūnīminī

Infinitive

	Active Voice	*Passive Voice*
Pres.	mūnīre	mūnīrī
Perf.	mūnīvisse	mūnītus esse
Fut.	mūnītūrus esse	

Participles

Pres.	mūniēns	
Perf.		mūnītus, -a, -um
Fut.	mūnītūrus, -a, -um	mūniendus, -a, -um

Gerund

Gen. mūniendī
Dat. mūniendō
Acc. mūniendum
Abl. mūniendō

827. Deponent Verbs

Conj. I	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum	*to attempt*
Conj. II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum	*to fear*
Conj. III	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	*to follow*
Conj. IV	potior	potīrī	potītus sum	*to get possession*

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
	cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	potīris
	cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

828. Irregular Verbs

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī**

Indicative

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

Perfect		Past Perfect		Future Perfect	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
fuī	fuimus	fueram	fuerāmus	fuerō	fuerimus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt	fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

Imperative

Present

es, *be (thou)* este, *be (ye)*

Future

estō, *thou shalt be* estōte, *ye shall be*
estō, *he shall be* suntō, *they shall be*

	Infinitives	Participles
Pres.	esse, *to be*	——
Perf.	fuisse, *to have been*	——
Fut.	futūrus esse, *to be about to be*	futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

829.

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itus,** *to go*

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	eō, īs, it	eam, eās, eat
	īmus, ītis, eunt	eāmus, eātis, eant
P. Prog.	ībam, ībās, ībat	īrem, īrēs, īret
	ībāmus, ībātis, ībant	īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
Fut.	ībō, ībis, ībit	
	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt	
Perf.	(īvī) iī	(īverim) ierim
P. P.	(īveram) ieram	(īvessem) iissem
F. P.	(īverō) ierō	

	Imperative	Infinitive	
Pres.	ī, īte	*Pres.*	īre
		Perf.	(īvisse) iisse
		Fut.	itūrus esse

	Participles	Gerundive
Pres.	iēns, euntis, euntī, etc.	eundum (neuter only)
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	**Gerund** **Supine**
		eundī, etc. itum, itū

830. **Fīō**, *be made, become*, is the regular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Observe the **ī** before all vowels except **e** in the combination **-er**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	Indicative	Subjuactive	Imperative
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit fīmus, fītis, fīunt	fīam	*Pres.* fī, fīte
P. Prog.	fīēbam	fierem	
			Infinitive
Fut.	fīam		*Pres.* fierī
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim	*Perf.* factus esse
P. P.	factus eram	factus essem	*Fut.* factum īrī
F. P.	factus erō		

Participle	Gerundive
Perf. factus	faciendus

831.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear*

	Active		*Passive*	
	Indicative	**Subjunctive**	**Indicative**	**Subjunctive**
Pres.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris (-re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
P. Prog.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
P. P.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Imperative

	Active Voice		*Passive Voice*	
Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī

Infinitive

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

Participles

Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus, -a, -um
Fut.	lāturus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	ferendus, -a, -um

Gerund	**Supine**
ferendī, etc.	latum
	lātū

SYNTAX

SPECIAL USES OF NOUNS

832. As Appositive. — A noun used to describe or explain another noun meaning the same person or thing is called an appositive. It is in the same case as the noun that it describes or explains.

Caesar, imperātor Rōmānus, Galliam pācāvit, *Caesar, a Roman general, subdued Gaul.*

833. As Subjective Complement. — A noun used to complete the meaning of a copulative verb or a passive verb and likewise to express an attribute of the subject is called a subjective complement or a predicate noun. A subjective complement is in the same case as the subject.

Orgetorīx erat dux Helvētiōrum, *Orgetorix was a leader of the Helvetians.*

Urbs Rōma appellātur, *the city was called Rome.*

CASES OF NOUNS

Nominative

834. A Subject. — The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb (one that has person and number).

835. As Subjective Complement. — A subjective complement, or predicate noun, is in the nominative case.

836. As Subject of the Historical Infinitive. — The nominative is used as subject of the historical infinitive, which may be used in vivid narration to replace the past progressive.

Interim cotīdiē *Caesar* frūmentum *flāgitāre,* *in the meantime Caesar demanded grain daily.*

Vocative

837. In Direct Address. — The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative. It is independent of the rest of

the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntactical relationship to any other word.

Dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs (IV. 25), *jump down, fellows!*

Accusative

838. Direct Object. — The direct object of a verb is in the accusative. Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin. Such words require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows:

queror, *complain (of)*; **contendō,** *strive (for)*, **labōrō,** *work (for)*; **horreō,** *shudder (at)*; **dēspērō,** *despair (of)*.

Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially **fugiō** (*flee*) and its compounds **dēfugiō** and **effugiō,** in the sense of *escape, shun,* or *avoid.*

839. With Compounds. — All verbs compounded with **circum, per, praeter, trāns,** and **subter**; many with **ad, in,** and **super**; some with **ante, con, inter, ob,** and **sub** are followed by the accusative.

Id Helvētiī trānsībant (I. 12), *this the Helvetians (were going across) were crossing.*

Nostrōs circumvenīre temptāvērunt, *they tried to surround ours.*

Reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt (I. 1), *they (go before) surpass the rest of the Gauls* (a rare use).

840. Two Accusatives with Some Compounds. — If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the direct object of the verb becomes the subject. The object of the preposition remains accusative.

Trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxērunt (I. 12), *they have led three fourths of their troops across this river.*

Multitūdō Rhēnum trādūcitur (I. 31), *a great number is being led across the Rhine.*

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but **circum** is not.

841. Extent in Degree. — The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much?* or, *To what extent?* This use is largely confined to neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns, often classed as adverbs, such as: **multum,** *much;* **plūs,** *more;* **plūrimum,** *very much, very, most;* **paulum,** *a little;* **nihil,** *not at all;* **quid** (indefinite), *at all;* **aliquid nōn nihil,** *somewhat;* etc.

Plūrimum posse (I. 3), *to be the most powerful.*

Māximam partem vīvunt (IV. 1), *they live for the most part.*

842. Extent in Time and Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the adverbial objective. It answers the question, *How long? How far?* With **longus, lātus,** or **altus,** it answers the question, *How?*

Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre (I. 3, 4), *to hold royal power many years.*

Mīlia passuum CCXL patēre (I. 2, 5), *to extend two hundred and forty miles.*

843. Two Accusatives, the Person and the Thing. — Verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing sometimes govern two accusatives, one of which is a person, the other of which is a thing.

Magister puerōs multa docuit, *the teacher taught the boys many things.*

Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre (I. 16), *he was demanding grain (of) the Aeduans.*

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

NOTE. Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the *ablative of source.*

Ab eō postulāre (I. 34), *to demand of him.*

844. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing. — Verbs of naming, making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

Cīvēs Mārcum rēgem creāvērunt, *the citizens chose Marcus king.*

Puerōs Rōmulum et Remum nōmināvit, *he named the boys Romulus and Remus.*

In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a subjective complement, or, predicate nominative.

Mārcus ab cīvibus rēx creātus est, *Marcus was chosen king by the citizens.*

Puerī Rōmulus et Remus nōmināti sunt, *the boys were named Romulus and Remus.*

845. Place to Which. — The place to, toward, or into which an action is directed is expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in;** but with **domus, rūs,** and the names of towns the preposition is omitted.

Epistulās ad Sextum mīsimus, *we sent letters to Sextus.*

Epistulās Rōmam (rūs, domum), *we sent letters to Rome (to the country, home).*

846. Subject of an Infinitive. — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.

Caesar nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit (II. 8), *Caesar perceived that our men were not inferior.*

Dative Case

847. Indirect Object of Transitive Verbs. — The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs in the active or in the passive voice. It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for.*

Eī fīliam suam dat (I. 3), *he gives him his daughter,* or, *he gives his daughter to him.*

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta (I. 4), *this matter was made known to the Helvetians,* or, *was told the Helvetians.*

Illīs rēgna conciliāre (I. 3), *to win* (for) *them the power.*

1. Some verbs, especially **donō,** *present,* **circumdō,** *put around, surround,* and **circumiciō,** *throw around,* may take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative (of means) of the thing.

Patrem cīvitāte donāre (I. 47), *to present his father with citizenship.*

This might have been written:

Patrī cīvitātem donāre, *to present his father citizenship.*

In *Caesar,* **circumdō** always takes the accusative and the ablative.

848. Indirect Object of Intransitive Verbs. — The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs. Many of these imply their own object, and some of them have a clause as object.

Fortūnae cēdere (VII. 80), *to yield to fortune.*

1. The translation of the verb may supply the direct object, as in **īgnōscō,** *grant pardon;* **studeō,** *devote attention to;* **cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent,** *he brought conviction to the state that they should go out.* The verbs in the ***Bellum Gallicum*** that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: persuādeō (17), studeō (16), noceō (6), parcō (6), resistō (5), īgnōscō (3), indulgeō (3), placeō (3), pāreō (3), cōnfīdō (3), dēspērō (3), diffīdō (2), serviō (2), faveō (2), imperō (2), cupiō (1), dēnūntiō (1), invideō (1), temperō (1), obtemperō (1), repugnō (1), satisfaciō (4).

2. Having no expressed object, when they are in the passive, these verbs are used impersonally, thus: **mihi persuādētur,** (*it is persuaded me*) *I am persuaded;* **tibi persuādētur,** *you are persuaded;* **eī persuādētur,** *he is persuaded.*

849. With Compounds. — The dative of indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes with **circum.** This

dative is due to the prepositional part of the compound. When one of these prepositions compounded with a transitive verb has both an accusative and a dative, the latter is indirect object.

Fīnitimīs bellum īnferēbant, *they were waging war on their neighbors.*

Hīs lēgātōs praefēcit (II. 11), *he placed lieutenants in charge of these.*

In the ***Bellum Gallicum*** the intransitive verbs that take the dative under this rule and the number of times the dative is used with them are as follows: appropinquō (11), occurrō (10), succēdō (6), subveniō (4), obveniō (3), intercēdō (2), succurrō (2), accēdō (1), adsum (1), īnsistō (1), obsistō (1), praestō (1), intersum (1).

NOTE. The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally.

Quibus rēbus occurrendum est (I. 33), (*it must be run against these things*) *these conditions must be met.*

Huic reī praevertendum exīstimāvit (VII. 33), *this matter he thought should be forestalled.*

850. Dative of Reference. — The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation *with reference to.* It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate. This use is frequently translated by a possessive.

Caesarī ad pedēs sēsē prōiēcērunt (I. 31), (*they threw themselves, with reference to Caesar, at his feet*) *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet.*

Mīlitibus spem minuit (V. 33), (*with reference to the soldiers it lessened hope*) *it lessened the soldiers' hope.*

851. Dative of Reference with Verbs of Separation. — This use of the dative occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** It is usually

best translated as the object of the preposition *from*, suggested by the verb.

Haeduīs lībertātem ēripere (I. 17), *to take away liberty from the Aeduans.*

Hostibus spēs discessit (II. 7), *from the enemy hope departed.*

Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestābant, *the Helvetians excelled all the rest in valor.*

Iccius tum oppidō praeerat, *Iccius was then in command of the town.*

852. Dative of the Possessor. — The dative is used with forms of the verb **sum** to denote the person possessing the subject.

Nobīs nihil est (I. 11), (*nothing is to us*) *we have nothing.*

Nobīs est in animō iter facere (I. 7), (*to make a march is to us in mind; we have in mind to march*) *we intend to march.*

Potestās erat nūllī (II. 6), (*the power was to no one, no one had the power*) *no one could.*

Some compounds of **sum,** especially **absum** and **dēsum,** take this construction.

853. Dative of Apparent Agent. — The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative.

Mihi faciendum est, (*it is mine to be done*) *I must do it.*

Mihi exspectandum est, (*it must be waited by me*) *I must wait.*

Omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum (I. 31), *the same thing must be done by all the Gauls.*

854. Dative of Purpose. — A dative is used to denote the purpose, use, or service to which a thing is to be put. It answers the question, *As what?*

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the double dative.

The dative of purpose is usually translated as the object of the preposition *for;* but the best translation when used with a form of **sum** is by a predicate noun. In most other cases by *as*.

Equitātus quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant (I. 18), *the cavalry which the Haeduans had sent (for aid to Caesar) as an auxiliary force to Caesar.*

Gallīs impedīmentō erat (I. 25), *it was a disadvantage to the Gauls.*

Praesidiō impedīmentīs erant (II. 19), *(were for a guard to the baggage) guarded the baggage.*

855. Dative with Adjectives. — Adjectives requiring a noun to complete their meaning take the dative.

Proximī sunt Germānis (I. 1), *they are nearest (to) the Germans.*

Castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, *he chose a place suitable for a camp.*

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also require a dative.

Legiōnī fēliciter (IV. 25), *fortunately for the legion.*

Genitive Case

Genitive with Nouns

856. General Rule. — A noun in the genitive is used to limit or describe another noun usually denoting a different person or thing.

857. Appositional Genitive. — The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as **vōx** (*expression*), **nōmen** (*name*), **verbum** (*word*), **urbs** (*city*).

Nōmen obsidum (III. 2), *the name (of) hostages.*

858. Genitive of Material. — The genitive is sometimes used to explain the content of the noun it modifies.

Locus grātiae (I. 18), *a position of favor.*

Cōpia pābulī (II. 2), *plenty of fodder.*

859. Possessive Genitive. — The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.

Fīnēs Belgārum (I. 1), *the territory of the Belgians.*

860. Subjective and Objective Genitives. — The subjective genitive and the objective genitive are used *only with nouns denoting verbal ideas.*

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb.

SUBJECTIVE: **Occāsus sōlis,** *the setting of the sun* (*the sun sets*).

Omnium opīniō, *the expectation of all* (*all expect*).

Patrum nostrōrum memoria, *the memory of our fathers* (*our fathers remembered*).

OBJECTIVE: **Orgetorīx rēgnī cupitāte inductus est,** *Orgetorix was led on by a desire for royal power* (*he desired royal power*).

SUBJECTIVE: **Tantus erat timor hostium ut terga verterent** (this means that the enemy feared).

OBJECTIVE: **Tantus erat timor hostium ut nostrī terga verterent** (this means that our soldiers feared the enemy).

861. The Genitive of Quality. — When modified by an adjective or its equivalent, the genitive is used to denote a quality.

Levis armātūrae Numidae (II. 10), (*Numidians of light armor*) *light-armed Numidians.*

Hominēs magnae virtūtis, *men of great bravery.*

With this use compare the ablative of quality. The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time, and space.

Under this use is included the *genitive of measure.*

Trium mēnsium molita cibāria (I. 5, 3), *three months' flour;* i.e. *flour enough to last three months.*

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

trīduī viam (I. 38), *a three days' march.*

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

Erat altitūdō pedum trium (II. 18), *the depth was (of) three feet.*

862. Predicate Possessive Genitive. — The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with a form of **sum** or a similar verb. **Sum** with this construction may often be translated *belong to.*

Quid suī sit cōnsilī ostendit (I. 21), *he explains (what is of his plan) what his plan includes.*

Iūdicium est imperātōris (I. 41), *the decision is the commander's, belongs to the commander.*

Gallia est Ariovistī (I. 45), *Gaul belongs to Ariovistus.*

863. Genitive of the Whole. — The genitive denotes the whole of a class of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows:

(1) With substantives of quantity, number, and weight.

Carrōrum magnum numerum coëmērunt, *they bought a large number of carts.*

Multitūdō eōrum Rhēnum trānsierant, *a great number of them had crossed the Rhine.*

(2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. Here the English uses no preposition.

Nihil reliquī, *nothing* (of) *left.*

Minus dubitātiōnis, *less* (of) *hesitation.*

Satis causae, *sufficient* (of) *reason, reason enough.*

Nihil vinī (*nothing of wine*), *no wine.*

Genitive with Adjectives

864. Objective Genitive. — The objective genitive is used with adjectives having a verbal significance that require a noun to complete their meaning.

Germānī erant bellandī cupidī, *the Germans were eager to carry (desirous of carrying) on war.*

Hī hominēs erant nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī, *these men were unacquainted with (of) our customs.*

Genitive with Verbs

865. Genitive with Verbs of Memory. — Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting govern the genitive. This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

Reminīscere veteris incommōdī (I. 13), *remember the former defeat.*
Veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī nolēbat, *he was not willing to overlook (forget) the old insult.*

Ablative with Prepositions

866. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The person or persons in company with whom one performs an action is expressed by **cum** and the ablative.

Puerī cum patribus labōrant, *the boys are working with their father.*
Cum puerīs et mulieribus in silvās sē abdidērunt, *they hid in the woods with the women and children.*

867. Ablative of Agent. — The person by whom an action is performed is expressed by **ā** or **ab** and the ablative.

Urbs ā Titō capta est, *the city was taken by Titus.*
Ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitābantur, *they were stirred up by certain (some) Gauls.*

868. Place in Which. — The place in which, on which, or at which is expressed by the ablative with **in,** but with **domus, rūs,** and the names of towns the preposition is omitted.

Mārcus in urbe (in vīco, in oppidō) habitat, *Marcus lives in a city (village, or town).*
Sextus nec Athēnīs nec Pompēis habitat, *Sextus lives neither at Athens nor at Pompeii.*

869. The Locative Case. — There used to be in Latin an additional case known as the locative. It has been merged with the ablative almost everywhere except in the names of places of the first and second declensions singular. In these declensions the locative case is the same in form as the genitive singular.

Domus, *house,* and **rūs,** *country,* have the following locative forms: **domī,** *at home, in the house,* and **rūrī,** *in the country.*

With **domus, rūs,** and the names of towns in the singular of the first and second declensions, the place at which or in which is expressed by the locative case.

I shall be	*at Rome*	*tomorrow.*	**Rōmae**	**crās erō.**
	at Corinth		**Corinthī**	
	at Bovianum		**Bovīanī**	
	at home		**domī**	
	in the country		**rūrī**	

870. The Place from Which. — The place from which is expressed by the ablative with **ab, ex,** or **dē;** but with **domus, rūs,** and the names of towns the preposition is omitted.

Yesterday we came	*from Aprica.*	**Aprīcā**	**herī vēnimus.**
	from Athens.	**Athēnīs**	
	from Bovianum.	**Boviānō**	
	from Corinth.	**Corinthō**	
	from home.	**domō**	
	from the country.	**rūre**	

Note. The preposition is usually omitted with **locō, locīs, parte,** and **partibus** when they are modified by a genitive or an adjective.

871. Ablative of Material. — The ablative is used with **ex** or **dē** to denote the material of which anything consists.

Argō tōta ē rōbore facta est, *the Argo was made entirely of oak.*

The Ablative Sometimes With and Sometimes Without Prepositions

872. Ablative of Manner. — The manner in which an action is performed may be expressed by **cum** and an ablative.

Equī cum patientiā labōrant, *horses work patiently.*

Note. When the noun is modified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted.

873. Ablative of Separation. — Actual literal separation is expressed by **ā** or **ab** and the ablative.

Puella ab latrōne līberāta est, *the girl was freed from the robber.*

874. Ablative of Figurative Separation. — When the idea of separation is figurative, the ablative is used without a preposition.

Cūrā līberāmur, *we are freed from care.*

875. Ablative of Origin. — The ablative is used with or without **ab** or **ex** to denote the source from which anything is derived.

Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs, *the Belgians are sprung from the Germans.*

With **nātus** and **genitūs** the preposition is more commonly omitted.

Dux nōbilissimā familiā genitus est, *the leader was born of (from) a very noble family.*

The Ablative without Prepositions

876. General Rule. — With the exception of the uses given above nearly all English phrases introduced by *in, from, by,* and *with* are translated by the ablative without a preposition.

877. Ablative of Means. — The means or instrument by which an action is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Virī carrīs frūmentum transportant, *the men carry the grain in carts.*

Eōdem itinere contendit, *he hastened by the same route.*

878. Ablative of Time. — The time when or within which an action takes place is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Diēbus tribus advenient, *they will arrive within three days.*

Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellentur, *within a few years all will be driven from the confines of Gaul.*

879. Ablative of Comparison. — After a comparative without **quam** the ablative may be used to complete the comparison.

Rōma erat clārior Albā Longā, *Rome was more famous than Alba Longa.*

Caesar celerius omnium opīniōne vēnit (II. 3), *Caesar came more quickly than anyone had expected (than the expectation of all).*

880. Ablative Absolute. — A noun or pronoun and participle in agreement in the ablative case may be used as the equivalent of a dependent clause.

Pēnsīs parātīs, puerī ad stāgnum properāvērunt, *having prepared their lessons, the boys hastened to the pond.*

881. Ablative of Cause. — The cause or reason for an action may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Spē praemiōrum cum studiō labōrāvērunt, *because of the hope of rewards they worked zealously.*

882. Ablative of Specification. — The ablative without a preposition is used to show the respect in which a verb, adjective, or noun applies.

Ducēs duo sunt et sapientiā et virtūte parēs, *the two leaders are equal both in wisdom and in courage.*

883. Ablative of Description. — The ablative with an adjective in agreement is used to express a physical or mental quality.

Cornēlia erat formā magnā et prūdentiā singulārī, *Cornelia was (a woman) of great beauty and singular prudence.*

884. Ablative of Measure of Difference. — The ablative is used with comparatives to express the amount of difference between the objects compared.

Ego sum altior capite quam frater, (literally, *I am taller by a head than my brother*) *I am a head taller than my brother.*

Haec via est vīgintī pedibus lātior quam illa, *this street is twenty feet wider than that.*

885. Ablative of Value or Price. — With verbs of buying and selling the price is expressed by the ablative.

Omnia vectīgālia ā Dumnorīge parvō pretiō redēmpta sunt, *all the revenues had been bought up by Dumnorix at a low price.*

886. Ablative of Accordance. — The ablative may express that in accordance with which anything is, or is done, often with **ex** or **dē**.

Īnstitūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, *Caesar led out his forces according to his custom* (I. 50).

887. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. — The circumstance or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative.

Eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī nōn poterant, *they could not accomplish that under our rule.*

888. Ablative with Special Words. — The ablative is used:

a. With the verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compound

Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus est, *Caesar employed the same guides.*

Castris nostrī potītī sunt, *our men got possession of the camp.*

NOTE. **Potior** may take the genitive.

b. With the verbs **fīdō, cōnfidō, nītor,** and the verbal adjective **frētus.**

Eīs Crassus nōn multum cōnfīdēbat, *Crassus placed little reliance in them.*

c. With **opus est** and **ūsus est,** *there is need.*

Opus factō est, *there is need of action.*

NOTE. **Opus** may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative.

Sī quid mihi opus est, *if I need anything.*

889. Roman Dates. — The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, *Calends* (**Kalendae**), *Nones* (**Nōnae**), and *Ides* (**Idūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kalendae Iānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Idūs**

Martiae. The Calends are the first days, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later.

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

The Romans counted both the day on which the period started and that on which it ended. They thus gained one day on our reckoning when taking time from Nones or Ides. When figuring from the Calends, they included the first of the next month, gaining two days on our system.

In counting backward the Romans used for *the day before*, **prīdiē** with the accusative.

Prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās, *Dec. 31.*

The longer intervals are expressed by **ante diem tertium, quārtum,** etc., before the accusative, so that **ante diem tertiam Kal. Ian.** means *two days before the Calends of January.* These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

890. To Turn Roman Dates into English. — For dates reckoned before Nones and Ides, subtract 1 from the given days and subtract the result from the day on which Nones or Ides occur.

For dates reckoned from the Calendas subtract two from the given number of days, and then subtract the result from the number of days in the month *preceding* the one named.

a. d. III. Id. Apr. = April 13 − (3 − 1) = Apr. 11
a. d. IV. Cal. Apr. = March 31 − (4 − 2) = March 29.

SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES

891. Agreement of Adjectives. — An adjective or a participle agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number, and case.

If an adjective modifies two or more substantives, it usually agrees with the nearest, but sometimes with the most important.

Mīlitēs et cōnsilia bona, *good soldiers and good plans.*

892. Substantive Use of Adjectives. — Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx, *Orgetorix was by far the noblest (man) among the Helvetians.*

Rēmī sua omnia in potestātem populī Rōmānī permīsērunt, *the Remi intrusted all their (property) to the power of the Roman people.*

893. Partitive Use of Adjectives. — Certain superlative adjectives implying order, sequence, or degree sometimes designate a part of a following substantive. **Prīmus, extrēmus, summus, medius, īnfimus (imus), reliquus** are so used.

Summus mōns, *the highest part of the hill, the top of the hill.*

Ad extrēmās fossās, *at the ends of the ditches.*

894. Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives. — Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject. In the ***Bellum Gallicum*, annuus, laetus, invītus, frequēns, trīstis, praeceps** are so used.

Quī creātur annuus (I. 16), *who is chosen annually.*

Praecipites fugae sēsē mandābant (II. 24), *they took to flight precipitately.*

895. Adjectives Contrasted with Adverbs. — **Prīmus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from corresponding adverbs.

Prīmus prōgressus est, *he was the first to advance.*

Prīmum prōgressus est, *he first advanced.*

Prīmō celeriter prōgressus est, *at first he advanced quickly.*

896. Translating the Comparative. — The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative, but by *too*,

rather, *somewhat*, or *quite*, with the positive; and by *very* when the comparative is negative.

897. Translation of the Superlative. — The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative, but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by **vel** or by **quam** with a form of **possum** expressed or understood.

SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS

898. Classes of Pronouns. — All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax, substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).

899. Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun. — Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

900. Omission of the Nominative of the Personal Pronouns. — The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when the subject of a finite verb, being then expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

Is coniūrātiōnem fēcit (I. 2), *he formed a conspiracy.*

901. Direct and Indirect Reflexives. — The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, **ēius, eōrum, eārum**) are adjectives, they take their gender, number, and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. It is therefore necessary to find the antecedent of a form of **suus, -a, -um,** in order to translate it correctly.

Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupat (I. 2), *Casticus seizes the royal power in his state.*

For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person note the following sentence:

Helvētiī aut suīs (*i.e.* **Helvētiōrum**) **fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt** (I. 1), *the Helvetians either keep them (the Germans) out of their own territory or carry on war themselves in their (Germans') territory.*

1. PERSONAL PRONOUN: **eī fīliam dat** (I. 3), *he gives him his daughter.*

2. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās** (I. 3), *for completing these preparations.*

3. ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: **id quod** (I. 5), *that which.*

a. **Ipsī** is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *-self* in *himself*, with which it is joined. When it is nominative, its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

Ipsī bellum gerunt (I. 1), *they themselves carry on war.*
Ipsī bellum gerimus, *we ourselves carry on war.*

b. When **ipse** is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person, it may be translated in various ways.

In ipsīs rīpīs (II. 23), *right on the bank(s).*
Hōc ipsō tempore (VI. 37), *at this very time; just at this time.*

c. The genitive case of **ipse** is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, **suus, -a, -um,** and is then translated *his own, their own,* etc.

Ipsōrum linguā (I. 1), *in their own language.*

Here **suā** might have been used, but contrast with the following **nostrā** is desired.

d. **Ipse** is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*).

Ipse sibi mortem cōnscīvit (I. 4), (*he himself decreed death to himself*) *he committed suicide.*

Sibi ipsī sunt impedīmentō (II. 25), (*they themselves are for a hindrance to themselves*) *they hinder each other.*

902. Relative Pronouns. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands. The use of the relative adjective in Latin is extremely common.

Quae cīvitās (I. 10), (*which state*) *a state which.*

1. The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence where the English uses a demonstrative or a personal pronoun.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *for this reason the Helvetians excel the rest of the Gauls in bravery.*
Quae cum ita essent, *since these things were so.*

903. Interrogative Pronouns. — In Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. The interrogative pronouns used in the ***Bellum Gallicum*** are **quis, quī, quisnam,** and **uter.** The last is used both adjectively and substantively.

904. Indefinite Pronouns. — Forms of **quis** and **quī** are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num.** Other indefinite pronouns used in the ***Bellum Gallicum*** are **aliquis, aliquī, quīdam, quispiam, quisquam, quīvīs, quisque. Quisque** following a superlative is used idiomatically.

Nōbilissimī cuiusque līberī (I. 31), (*the children of each most prominent man*) *the children of all the most prominent men.*

SYNTAX OF VERBS

905. Agreement of the Verb. — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

1. The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

Matrona et Sequana dīvidit (I. 1), *the Marne and Seine* (*together*) *divide.*

2. Collective nouns often take the predicate in the plural.

Cum tanta multitūdō conicerent (II. 6), *when such a great number (were) was throwing.*

906. Impersonal Verbs. — Impersonal verbs are (*a*) those which pertain to the state of the weather (*it rains*, etc.), (*b*) those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive, or a clause as the subject (**oportet, licet, interest**).

Nōs properāre oportet, (*that we hurry is best*) *we ought to hurry.*

The passive of the following verbs may be used impersonally.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice.

These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. They imply their subject.

Pugnātum est (I. 26), (*it was fought*) *they fought, the battle raged.*

Sustentātum est (II. 6), (*it was sustained*) *the attack was sustained.*

3. The passive periphrastic of deponent verbs is used in the same way.

Dubitandum nōn esse exīstimāvit, *he thought he ought not to hesitate.*

Tenses of the Indicative

907. Use of the Indicative. — The indicative is used to state an idea as a fact, or to ask for information.

908. Specific Present. — The present tense is used of (*a*) that which is now going on or of (*b*) that which is undefined or habitual in the present.

Quō proficīscimur (VII. 38), *where are we going?*

Turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant (VII. 77), *they term the basest slavery a surrender.*

909. Universal Present. — The present tense is used of statements that apply to all time.

Omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātī student (III. 10), *all men naturally desire liberty.*

910. Historical Present. — The present tense is used as a lively representation of the past.

Prōfectiōnem cōnfīrmant (I. 3), *they decree (decreed) their departure.*

911. Past Progressive. — The past progressive (imperfect) indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past is used in translating.

Hiemābant (I. 10), *they were passing the winter.*

912. Repeated Action. — The past progressive also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

1. **Prohibēbant** (V. 9), *they tried to prevent.*
2. **Coniciēbant** (I. 26), *they kept throwing.*
3. **Servī crēmābantur** (VI. 19), *slaves used to be burned.*

913. Perfect Tense. — The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past or (2) to the English present perfect.

Ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, *as we have shown above.*

The Subjunctive

914. Uses of the Subjunctive. — The subjunctive combines the uses of two originally separate modes: (*a*) the optative, or mode of wish; (*b*) the pure subjunctive, or mode of cautious statement.

915. Pure Subjunctive. — The pure subjunctive indicates that the assertion made depends on circumstances within the control or experience of some one other than the speaker. Compare in English *You say* and *You may say*. The latter is the mode of cautious statement. The optative expresses a wish.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

916. General Use. — The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time.

917. Present Subjunctive. — The present subjunctive refers to incomplete action with respect to both near and indefinite future time.

Amēmus patriam, *let us love our country.*

918. Perfect Subjunctive. — The perfect subjunctive denotes action completed either in near past or indefinite future time.

Fuerit malus, *he may have been bad.*

919. The Past Progressive Subjunctive. — The past progressive (imperfect) subjunctive denotes an action as possible in the near past.

Crēderēs victōs, *you would probably believe them conquered.*

920. The Past Perfect Subjunctive. — The past perfect subjunctive denotes action possible in the remote past.

Utinam exspectāvissem, *would that I had waited.*

921. Sequence of Tenses in Subordinate Clauses. — The tense denotes both time and state of the action. The tenses of main verbs are regarded as either present (including future) or past; the action denoted by subordinate verbs as incomplete (imperfect) or complete (perfect).

922. Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — To the time of the main verb add the state of action denoted by the subordinate verb.

NOTE. (1) The historical present may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the ***Bellum Gallicum*** it is considered a present tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as present.

PRESENT TIME		INCOMPLETED ACTION	
PRESENT:	**cognōscō,**	*I am finding out*	**quid faciās,** *what you are doing*
FUTURE:	**cognōscam,**	*I shall (try to) find out*	**quid fēceris,** *what you have done*

PRESENT TIME		COMPLETED ACTION	
PRES. PF.:	**cognōvī,**	*I have found out*	**quid fēceris,** *what you have been doing, what you did*
FUTURE PF.:	**cognōverō,**	*I shall have found out (I shall know)*	**quid fēceris,** *what you have been doing, what you did*

PAST TIME		INCOMPLETED ACTION	
HIST. PRES.:	**cognōscō,**	*I found out*	**quid facerēs,** *what you were doing*

PAST TIME		COMPLETED ACTION	
IMPF.:	**cognōscēbam,**	*I was finding out*	**quid fecissēs,** *what you had done*
HIST. PF.:	**cognōvī,**	*I found out*	**quid fecissēs,** *what you had been doing*
PAST PF.:	**cognōveram,**	*I had found out*	**quid fecissēs,** *what you were doing (before)*

Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, where they are sometimes required by the sense, or for clearness, or for vividness.

When the future is emphasized, the active periphrastic conjugation is used.

923. Subjunctive of Purpose. — The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with **ut (uti) nē, quō, quō minus,** forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.

1. **Ut,** the normal introductory word in this construction, means *that* or *in order that*. When either of these conjunctions

is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might*.

Sēmentēs facere cōnstituērunt, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret (I. 3), (*they decided to make plantings*) *to plant corn in order that a supply of grain might be available.*

2. **Nē** is the negative of **ut**; it means *that not* or *in order that . . . not*. The verb is translated as with **ut**.

Ibi tormenta collocāvit nē hostēs suōs circumvenīre possent (II. 8), *he placed his artillery there, that the enemy might not be able to surround his troops.*

924. With Verbs of Fearing. — When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing will happen, though the purpose is that it shall not happen, **nē** is translated *lest*, and the subjunctive usually by *shall* or *should*.

Nōluit eum vacāre, nē Germān. trānsīrent (I. 28), *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied, lest the German should cross.*

925. Purpose Clauses with *Quō*. — **Quō** is really an ablative of degree of difference and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. **Quō,** *by which* = **ut eō,** *that thereby*, or simply *that*.

Castella commūnit, quō facilius prōhibēre posset (I. 8), *he constructed forts that* (*thereby*) *he might be able more easily to prevent them* (*from crossing*).

1. **Quō minus** is used after verbs of hindering, refusing, preventing, and the like.

926. Purpose Clauses with a Relative Pronoun. — The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equivalent translation is by the infinitive or by *shall* or *should*.

Lēgātōs mittunt quī dīcerent (I. 7), *they sent ambassadors* (*who were to say*) *to say, etc.*

1. A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding form of **is**.

Diem dīcunt quā (**ut eā**) **diē conveniant** (I. 6), *they appoint a day on which* (*day they shall assemble*) *to assemble.*

927. Clauses of Result. — The subjunctive is used to denote result with **ut** (**uti**), **ut nōn**, and **quīn**, and with forms of the relative.

Tantī tua grātia est uti condōnem (I. 20), *your favor is so great that I pardon.*

Collis erat silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset (cf. II. 18), *the hill was wooded* (*so that it could not easily be seen into*) *so thickly that one could not easily see within.*

928. Noun Clauses of Result. — A noun clause expressing result may be used with **ut** or **ut nōn** in the following cases:

1. As object of verbs of doing, like **efficiō**.

He causes the boys to prepare their lessons, **efficit ut puerī pēnsa parent.**

2. As subject of an impersonal verb, like **accidit, ēvenit, sequitur.**

It happened that Romulus was away, **accidit ut Rōmulus abesset.**
It came about that he could not remain, **ēvēnit ut nōn manēre posset.**

929. Causal Clauses with *Quod*, etc. — Causal clauses introduced by **quod** (*because*), **quia, quoniam,** and **quandō** (*since*) take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, *as they thought*, or a similar phrase.

INDICATIVE: **Fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt** (I. 1), *the bravest are the Belgians because they are farthest away.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **Ubiī orābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur** (IV. 16), *the Ubii were asking him to aid them because* (*as they said*) *they were hard pressed by the Suebi.*

930. Causal Clauses with *Cum*. — Causal clauses introduced by **cum** (*since*) take the subjunctive. This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

Hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt (I. 9), *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*

931. Causal Clauses with *Quī*. — Causal clauses introduced by **quī** take the subjunctive. The relative is here equivalent to **cum** causal and the corresponding form of **is.**

Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat (I. 36), *Caesar is doing me great injury, since he is making my revenue less.*

Temporal Clauses

932. Temporal Relationships. — The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb.

1. It may precede the action of the main verb, in which case the conjunction *after* is used.
2. It may accompany the action of the main verb, in which case the conjunction *while* or *as long as* is used.
3. It may follow the action of the main verb, in which case the conjunction *before* is used.

933. Temporal Clauses with *Postquam*, etc. — Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam, posteā quam** (*after*), **ut, ubi** (*when*), **simul ac** or **atque** (*as soon as*) take the indicative, usually the perfect.

Ubi dē ēius adventū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt (I. 7), *when they were informed of his arrival, they sent ambassadors.*

Postquam eōs nōn longē abesse cognōvit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit (II. 5), *after he had learned that they were not far away he hastened to lead his army across.*

934. Temporal Clauses with *Dum*, *Donec*, and *Quoad*. — The English word *while* has two distinct meanings: (1) *as long as* and (2) *during the time that.*

1. Temporal clauses with **dum** in the sense of *while* (*during the time that*) take the historical present indicative.

Dum ea conquīruntur, ē castrīs ēgressī sunt (I. 27), *while these were being sought for, they set out from camp.*

2. Temporal clauses with **dum, donec, quoad,** and **quam diū,** in the sense of *while* (*as long as*) take any tense of the indicative.

Quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, *he resisted as long as he could.*

3. Temporal clauses with **dum, donec,** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive to represent an act as expected or anticipated. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*.

INDICATIVE: **Neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad praecipitēs ēgērunt** (V. 17), *and they did not cease pursuing until they put the enemy to flight.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **Dum nāvēs convenīrent exspectāvit,** *he waited until the ships should arrive.*

935. Temporal Clauses with *Antequam* and *Priusquam*. — Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive to represent an act as expected or anticipated.

The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*. The words are often separated (**ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam,** *sooner than, before, until*).

INDICATIVE: **Nec prius fugere rēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt** (I. 53), *and they did not stop fleeing* (*sooner than*) *until they reached the Rhine.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **Priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum vocārī iubet** (I. 19), (*sooner than*) *before he attempted* (*to do*) *anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned.*

Priusquam hostēs sē ex terrōre reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit (II. 12), *before the enemy could recover from their fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.*

Temporal Clauses with cum

936. *Cum* Clauses with the Indicative. — Temporal clauses with **cum** take the indicative of any tense when they indicate a definite time at which the action of the leading verb occurs.

Contendunt cum suīs fīnibus prōhibent (I. 1), *they fight at the time when they are keeping them out of their own territory.*

Cum meaning *whenever* is followed by the indicative.

Hīs cum funēs comprehēnsī adductīque sunt, praerumpēbantur (III. 14), *when (whenever) the ropes had been caught by these (hooks) and drawn taut, they were snapped off short.*

937. *Cum* Clauses with the Subjunctive. — Temporal clauses take the past progressive or past perfect subjunctive to portray the circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. **Cum** then implies that the action portrayed by the main verb grew out of the situation portrayed by the subordinate verb. Being an inference, it takes the subjunctive.

Cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est (I. 4), *when the state was trying to assert its right by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*

938. *Cum* Inverse. — When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

Iam nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cognōscunt (VI. 7), *they were now not more than two days' march away, when they learned that the two legions had come.*

Conditional Sentences

939. Conditional Sentences with *Sī*, *Nisi*, or *Sīn*. — Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, sīn,** or **sīnōn** may be divided into three classes as regards time: present, past, and future.

When a condition is regarded as a fact, it may be called a simple condition if in the present or past, and a more vivid condition if in the future.

When a condition is regarded merely as a possibility, it may be called in the present or past an unreal or contrary to fact condition. In the future it may be called a less vivid condition.

In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative and in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as a possibility is put in the potential or subjunctive in English and in the subjunctive in Latin.

Conditional Sentences

940. Nature of a Conditional Sentence. — A conditional sentence consists of two parts. The first of these expresses a condition or a supposition and is introduced by **sī** (*if*), **nisi** (*unless*), or **sīn** (*but if*). The second part expresses a conclusion or consequence which must be true if the condition is fulfilled.

If he comes, I shall be surprised.

The surprise of the second clause (the conclusion) will result provided the first part (the condition) is fulfilled.

941. Kinds of Conditional Sentences. — There are three types of conditions:

I. Simple conditions, pertaining to questions of facts.

II. Ideal conditions, pertaining to possible but rather doubtful matters of future time.

III. Contrary-to-fact conditions, pertaining to suppositions known to be unreal.

942. Simple Conditions. — In simple conditions that may readily be true the indicative is used, in any tense required. These conditions are translated by the English indicative.

Sī pēnsum est parātum, puerī gaudent, *if the lesson is prepared, the boys are rejoicing.*

Sī pēnsa paranda habēbant, erant occupatissimī, *if they had lessons (to be prepared) to prepare, they were very busy.*

Note. In English the present tense in conditions may be used for a future or a future perfect tense, but in Latin the tenses are used according to the time implied.

Sī pater veniet, gaudēbō, *if father (shall come) comes, I shall rejoice.*

943. Ideal Conditions. — Conditions pertaining to rather doubtful matters of future time may take either the present or perfect subjunctive in both clauses, or may take the perfect subjunctive in the condition with the present subjunctive in the conclusion. These conditions are translated by *should* or *would*.

Sī iter faciat, bene sit, *if he should march, it would be well.*
Sī mihi dēfueris, perierim, *if you should fail me, I should be ruined.*
Sī puerī pēnsa bene parāverint, laudentur, *if the boys should (have) prepared their lessons well, they would be praised.*

944. Contrary-to-Fact Conditions. — Mere suppositions expressing conditions regarded as contrary to fact may take the past progressive or past perfect subjunctive in either or both clauses. In this type of sentence the verb in the conditional clause is usually translated by the indicative and the verb in the conclusion by *would*, *might*, *would have*, or *might have*.

sī iter faceret, bene esset; *if he were marching it would be well.*
sī vēnisset, melius fuisset, *if he had come, it would have been better.*

Concessive Clauses

945. Concessive Clauses with *Quamquam*. — Concessive clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

Quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs (IV. 3), *although they are of the same race, they are more civilized.*

946. Concessive Clauses with *Etsī*. — Concessive clauses introduced by **etsī, etiamsī,** etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with **sī**.

Iāsōn etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit, *although he well knew that the undertaking was very difficult, Jason willingly undertook the task.*
Nam etsī . . . vidēbat, tamen putābat (I. 46), *for although he saw . . . yet he thought.*

947. Concessive Clauses with *Cum*, etc. — Concessive clauses introduced by **cum** or the relative pronoun take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

Cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit (I. 26), *though the battle continued from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in flight.*

Cicerō quī . . . militēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs mittit (XV. 36), (*Cicero who*) *although Cicero had kept the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts.*

Subordinate Clauses

948. Kinds of Subordinate Clauses. — Subordinate clauses are divided into three classes according to their use:

1. *Adjective clauses*, which are used like adjectives, to modify nouns or pronouns.

2. *Adverbial clauses*, which are used like adverbs, to modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

3. *Noun clauses*, which are used like nouns, as subject, object, or appositive.

949. Adjective Clauses. — Adjective clauses are clauses that are introduced by relative pronouns or relative adverbs, and are used to explain, describe, or identify the antecedent of the relative.

1. *This house, which is Galba's,* **ea domus, quae est Galbae.**
2. *This house, which was new and beautiful,* **ea domus quae erat nova et pulchra.**
3. *The house which stands by the bridge,* **domus quae ad pontem stat.**
4. *The house where Galba lives,* **domus ubi Galba habitat.**

950. Adverbial Clauses. — Adverbial clauses may be classified according to their use:

1. *Purpose clause*, which explains the intention behind the action of the principal verb.

We sent Quintus that he might see for himself, **Quīntum mīsit ut ipse vidēret** (explains why we sent Quintus).

2. *Result clause*, which explains a consequence of the action or condition expressed by the main clause.

The river had overflowed so that we could not cross, **flūmen efflūsum erat, ut trānsīre nōn possent** (explains a consequence of the overflowing of the river).

3. *Temporal clause*, which explains in some way the time of the action of the principal clause, by connecting it with some other happening or condition.

When Romulus was king, the city was small, **cum Rōmulus erat rēx, urbs erat parva** (explains when the city was small).

4. *Causal clause*, which explains what brought about the action of the main verb.

They chose Marcus, because he was wise, **Mārcum dēlēgērunt, quod erat scītus** (explains the cause of their choosing Marcus).

Since Caesar was near, they decided to ask aid, **cum Caesar prope esset, auxilium rogāre cōnstituērunt** (explains why they decided to ask aid).

5. *Conditional clause*, which explains the condition under which the statement is, or would be, true.

If he is present, it is well, **sī adest, bene est** (explains under what condition it is well).

6. *Concessive clause*, which explains some circumstance in spite of which the statement in the main clause is true.

Although the place was unfavorable, he gave battle, **cum locus idōneus nōn esset, proelium commīsit** (explains that he gave battle in spite of the unfavorable place).

951. Substantive Clauses. — Certain substantive clauses are developments of the independent uses of the subjunctive; the connective **ut** was inserted owing to confusion with adverbial clauses.

952. Substantive Clauses of Implied Command. — Verbs implying a command as the original expression (verbs of will

and desire, of warning and beseeching, of urging and demanding, of resolving and endeavoring) are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

Cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent (I. 2), *he persuaded (the state) the citizens to emigrate.* The original plea was *Go out.*

Obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret (I. 20), *he began to beseech (him) not to take any very severe measures.* The original words were, *Don't take very severe measures.*

1. Many nouns, such as **mōs, cōnsilium, iūs, opera,** and **negōtium,** imply an imperative as the original form of expression.

Negōtium dat, *he gives the task.* The original idea would be, *Do this.*

Iūs est bellī ut quī vīcērunt eīs quōs vīcērunt imperent (I, 36), *it was the law of war that the conquerors rule the conquered.* The original idea was, *Let the conquerors rule the conquered.*

2. Verbs of hindering, including verbs and phrases signifying to prevent, forbid, refuse, and beware, are often followed by **nē** with the subjunctive if they are not negative.

Nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit (I. 4), *he saved himself from pleading his case;* or, *he escaped pleading his case.*

Multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant (I. 17), *they prevent the people from bringing grain.* The original thought is, *Don't bring grain.*

3. Verbs of hindering and refusing may be followed by **quō minus** (**ut eō minus,** *that thereby the less*).

Recūsāre quō minus essent (I. 31), *to refuse to be.*

Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent (IV. 22), *the ships were prevented by the wind (from being able to come to the same port) from reaching the same port.*

953. Substantive Clauses Implying a Wish. — After verbs of fearing, **ut** means *that . . . not,* and **nē** means *that.*

Rem frūmentāriam timēmus ut supportārī posset (I. 39), *(we fear the grain supply, oh, may it be furnished!) we are afraid that a supply of grain cannot be furnished.*

Nē offenderet verēbātur (I. 19), *he was afraid that he would hurt.* The original was, *May I not hurt!*

954. Substantive Clauses of Result. — Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of effecting and accomplishing, (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen, to follow*, etc., (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

1. **Nōlī committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat** (I. 14), (*be unwilling to allow that this place take a name*) *do not allow this place to get a name* (*in history*).
   Fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae prōfectiō vidērētur (II. 11) (*they made that their departure should seem similar to a flight*) *they made their departure seem like a flight.*
2. **Fiēbat ut vagārentur** (I. 2), *it happened that they wandered.*
   Erit ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audeant (II. 17), *it will* (*be*) *happen that the rest will not dare to stand against* (*us*).

955. Substantive Clauses with *Quīn*. — Negative expressions of doubt or of hindering are followed by **quīn** and a substantive clause in the subjunctive.

Nōn dubitō quīn supplicium sūmat, *I do not doubt* (*but*) *that he will inflict punishment.*

Nōn est dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possint (I. 3), *there is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful.*

Nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant (I. 33), (*they will not restrain themselves but that they shall go out*) *they will not refrain from going out.*

Nōn recūsant quīn contendant, *they do not refuse to fight.*

956. Substantive Clauses with *Quod*. — Causal clauses with **quod** shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction **quod** has four principal meanings, (1) *because*, (2) *that* or *the fact that*, and (3) *in regard to the fact that.*

1. When **quod** means *because*, the clause may be substantive, in apposition with some such word as **propterea, eō, hōc,** *on this account.*

Eō minus dubitātiōnis mihi datur quod . . . memoriā teneō (I. 14), *I can hesitate less for this reason, because I remember.*

2. When **quod** means *that* or *the fact that*, it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

a. **Num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum, quod . . . vexāstis?** (I. 14), (*can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, that you have plundered*) *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering . . . ?*

b. **Accēdēbat quod . . . dolēbant** (III. 2), (*there approached the fact that they grieved*) *an additional fact was that they grieved.*

3. When **quod** means *in regard to the fact that*, or *as for the fact that*, it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō (I. 44), *in regard to the fact that I am bringing a host of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

957. Clauses of Indirect Discourse. — The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse, and indirect questions are also substantive clauses.

The Imperative

958. The Present Imperative. — The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English.

A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by **nōlī** (sometimes **cavē**) with the infinitive.

Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre (VII. 77), (*be unwilling to deprive*) *do not deprive them of your aid.*

The Infinitive

959. Use of the Infinitive. — The Latin infinitive has two uses: (1) as a substantive and (2) as a representative of the indicative.

The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition the gerund is used.

960. The Infinitive as Subject. — As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of **sum** and impersonal verbs.

Perfacile est cōnāta perficere, (*to accomplish the undertakings is very easy*) *it is very easy to carry out the undertakings.*
Praestat perferre (I. 17), *it is better to endure.*

961. The Infinitive as Object. — As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the predication of verbs meaning to *wish, decide, fear,* etc. These take the same construction in English.

Cōnstituerunt comparāre (I. 3), *they determined to get ready.*

An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid,* to *permit,* etc.

Eōs īre patitur, *he allows them to go.*

962. Historical Infinitive. — The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the past progressive indicative for vividness in historical narration.

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentūm flāgitāre (I. 16), *Caesar was demanding* (or *continued to demand*) *grain of the Haeduans.*

Indirect Discourse

963. Definition of Direct Discourse. — Direct discourse (**ōrātiō rēcta**) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken.

964. Definition of Indirect Discourse. — Indirect discourse (**ōrātiō oblīqua**) is the quotation of words with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense to the standpoint of the person reporting.

Direct Statement: "*I am going.*"
Indirect Statement: *He said that he was going.*

965. Introductory Verb. — Indirect discourse occurs after a verb of *saying, hearing, believing, thinking,* and the like. Such

a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

966. Introductory Particle. — In English, indirect statement is introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, expressed or understood. It is called the introductory particle. Latin uses no particle.

967. Change of Tense. — In English, when indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any past tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense. In Latin, the tense depends on the original statement.

Direct Discourse: "*I am ready.*"
Indirect Discourse: { *He says that he is ready.* / *He said that he was ready.*
Direct Discourse: "*I came yesterday.*"
Indirect Discourse: { *He says that he came yesterday.* / *He said that he had come yesterday.*

NOTE. In English an exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present.

Direct: "*All men naturally desire liberty.*"
Indirect: *He said that all men naturally desire liberty.*

968. Change of Pronouns. — In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed.

969. Indirect Questions. — When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences, especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to doubt, to wish, to know.* These sentences undergo various changes. Study carefully the following:

Direct Question: "*Where are you going?*
Indirect Question: { *He asks where you are going.* / *He asked where you were going.*

Direct Question: *"Are you going?"*

Indirect Question: { *He asks if* (or *whether*) *you are going.* / *He asked if you were going.*

970. Indirect Form of Imperatives. — In English an imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should*, or (2) the infinitive.

Direct Command: *"Shut the door."*

Indirect Command: *He said to shut the door*, or, *that you should shut the door.*

971. Indirect Discourse in Latin. — In Latin, indirect discourse is far more widely extended and the introductory verb is very often merely implied.

He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; (saying) *that it was very easy,* **cīvitāti persuāsit ut exirent; id esse perfacile.**

972. Infinitive in Indirect Statement. — An indirect statement has its main verb in the infinitive, with subject expressed in the accusative.

He says that they are going out, **dīcit eōs exīre.**

973. Translating Indirect Statement into English. — There is little difficulty in translating an indirect statement that follows a present tense, if a little thought is given to pronouns, when used. For translating indirect statements after a past tense examine carefully the following:

Dīxit sē	**appellāre.**	*He said that he*	*called* (*was calling*).
	appellārī.		*was called.*
	appellāvisse.		*had called.*
	appellātum esse.		*had been called.*
	appellātūrum esse.		*would call.*
	appellātum īrī.		*would be called.*

974. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — A subordinate clause in Latin, unless a comment by the person reporting, is expressed by the subjunctive.

He says they destroy the towns which they capture, **dīcit eōs dēlērē oppida quae expugnent.**

975. The Indirect Question. — An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive. The sequence of tenses is that given by the rule for sequence in the subjunctive.

Participles

976. Participles as Adjectives. — A participle is a verbal adjective. All Latin participles are declined like adjectives and agree with some substantive expressed or understood in gender, number, and case. At the same time they have tense and voice.

977. Tense of Participles. — The participle, both in Latin and in English, denotes the time relative to that of the principal verb.

1. The present participle denotes action that is going on at the time of the principal verb.

I saw him running (*while running*), **eum currentem vīdī.**

2. The perfect participle denotes action prior to that of the principal verb.

Having set out (*after he had set out*) *he came upon the messenger*, **profectus nūntiō occurrit.**

Influenced (*after he had been influenced*) *by a desire for royal power, he made a conspiracy*, **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem fēcit.**

978. Participles of Deponent Verbs. — A deponent verb has three active participles and the gerundive: **Cōnāns,** *trying;* **cōnātus,** *having tried;* **cōnātūrus**, *going to try;* and **cōnandus,** gerundive.

Note. Latin is more exact than English in the use of participles. The English sometimes uses a present participle to express an idea that has been completed.

Following (*having followed*) *by the same route, I overtook the boys at the next town*, **secūtus eōdem itinere oppidō proximō puerīs supervēnī.**

Coming up with (*having come up with*) *the messenger, I persuaded him to return*, **subsecūtus nūntium eī persuāsī, ut revenīret.**

979. Uses of Latin Participles. — Latin participles or participial phrases, used as direct modifiers of nouns or in the ablative absolute, may express (1) time, (2) cause, (3) condition, (4) concession, (5) attendant circumstance, (6) means, (7) the thought of a relative clause.

1. **Patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā** (II. 4), (*in the memory of our fathers, all Gaul having been overrun*) *within the memory of the last generation, when all Gaul was in confusion.*
2. **Timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt** (I. 23), *the Romans are withdrawing* (*having been terrified by fear*) *because they are afraid.*
3. **Datā facultāte nōn temperābunt** (I. 7), (*an opportunity having been given*) *if the opportunity is given, they will not refrain.*
4. **Hāc rē cognitā exercitum castrīs continuit** (II. 11), (*this thing having been ascertained*) *though he found this out, he kept the army in camp.*
5. **Persuādent fīnitimīs, uti oppidīs exūstīs prōficīscantur,** *they persuade their neighbors* (*that their towns having been burned they migrate*) *to burn their towns and migrate.*
6. **Locō superiōre pīlīs missīs phalangem perfrēgērunt** (I. 25), (*spears having been thrown*) *by throwing their spears from the higher position, they broke the line.*
7. **Frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat** (IV. 12), (*he was bearing aid to his brother, cut off by the enemy*) *he was trying to help his brother who had been cut off* (*from retreat*) *by the enemy.*

The Gerund

980. Uses of the Gerund. — The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs, the gerund after prepositions. The uses of the gerund in the ***Bellum Gallicum*** are as follows:

1. *Objective genitive:* with adjectives and with **causā** and **grātiā.**

Hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, *men (who were) eager to wage war were afflicted with great dissatisfaction.*
Causā bellandī, *for the sake of waging war.*

2. *Accusative after* **ad.**

Cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, *they decided to get together those things that pertained to setting out.*

3. *Ablative of Means.*

Aliōs tērritandō . . . aliōs cohortandō, *by frightening some . . . by encouraging others.*

The Gerundive

981. Uses of the Gerundive. — The gerundive is used (*a*) as the future passive participle, and (*b*) as a substitute for the gerund.

982. The Gerundive as a Participle. — As the future passive participle the gerundive implies necessity, obligation, or the idea of deserving. In these senses it is used as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

Adrogantia Ariovistī ferenda vidēbātur, *the arrogance of Ariovistus seemed (not to be borne) unendurable.*

2. As a predicate accusative after **cūrō,** *provide for, cause;* **dō,** *give;* **trādō,** *hand over;* and similar verbs.

Pontem faciendum cūrāvit (I. 13), *he caused a bridge to be built.*
Exercitum Sabīnō in Menapiōs ducendum dedit (IV. 22), *he gave the army to Sabinus to be led among the Menapii.*

983. Gerundive for Gerund. — When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted. It is regularly substituted after a preposition.

984. The Gerundive Construction. — The gerundive construction consists of the gerundive participle and a noun in agreement.

GERUND: **Ad effēminandum animōs** (I. 1), *to weakening the minds.*
GERUNDIVE: **Ad effeminandōs animōs; animōs** is the object of **ad** and **effēminandōs** agrees with it in gender, number, and case.
GERUND: **Lapidēs tēlaque subministrandō,** *by furnishing stones and spears.*
GERUNDIVE: **Lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs** (III. 25).

1. With **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** and **vestrī** the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

Suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt (III. 6), *they leave the enemy a chance (of collecting themselves) of collecting their wits.*

Here **suī,** referring to **hostibus,** is plural, and strict agreement would require **colligendōrum.**

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative regularly admit it.

Spēs potiendī oppidi (II. 7), *hope of capturing the town.*

THE SUPINE

985. Cases of the Supine. — The forms of the supine are the accusative and ablative of a fourth-declension verbal noun.

986. The Accusative Supine. — The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object. It is translated by an infinitive.

Lēgātos mittunt rogātum auxilium (I. 11), *they send envoys to ask help.*

987. The Ablative Supine. — The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object. It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

Perfacile factū (I. 3), *very easy (to do).*
Horribiliōrēs aspectū (V. 14), *more terrible (to view) in appearance.*

Periphrastic Conjugations

988. Active Periphrastic Conjugation. — The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of **sum.**

The participle is translated separately in its usual way and the form of **sum** according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

Quod portātūrī erant (I, 5), *what they were going to carry.*
Ubi bellum gestūrī essent (III, 9), *where they were going to wage war.*

989. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of **sum.**

From the adjective use of the future passive participle there is developed the idea of obligation or necessity, which is expressed in various ways in English.

Agendum est, *it is to be done,* (therefore) *it must be done, it has to be done, it ought to be done.*
Agendum erat, *it was to be done,* (therefore) *it had to be done.*
Agendum erit, *it will be done,* (therefore) *it will have to be done.*

Note. Note that this construction does not correspond to that in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with **dēbeō** or **oportet.** But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction. The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative.

HENDIADYS

990. Hendiadys is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

Exampla cruciātūsque omnēs (I. 31), (*examples and cruelties*) *all sorts of cruelty.*

VOCABULARY FOR FIRST HALF YEAR WITH EXERCISES

Verbs

991. Review the first three conjugations:

1. **amō,** *love*
2. **appellō,** *name, call*
3. **cōnfirmō,** *strengthen, assert.*
4. **dō,** *give*
5. **exspectō,** *look out for, wait for*
6. **labōrō,** *toil, suffer*
7. **līberō,** *set free*
8. **nāvigō,** *sail*
9. **nūntiō,** *give news, announce*
10. **occupō,** *seize*
11. **parō,** *make ready, prepare*
12. **comparō,** *make ready, buy, compare*
13. **portō,** *carry*
14. **pugnō,** *fight*
15. **servō,** *keep, save*
16. **spectō,** *look at*
17. **superō,** *overcome, surpass, defeat*
18. **vocō,** *call*
19. **habeō,** *have, hold*
20. **moneō,** *move*
21. **commoveō,** *move thoroughly, alarm*
22. **permoveō,** *move strongly, excite*
23. **removeō,** *move back, withdraw*
24. **respondeō,** *answer*
25. **teneō,** *hold*
26. **obtineō,** *hold fast, obtain*
27. **contineō,** *extend, belong to*
28. **sustineō,** *uphold, resist*
29. **timeō,** *be afraid, fear*
30. **videō,** *see*
31. **agō,** *drive, do, plead*
32. **cōgō,** *drive together, gather, compel*
33. **redigō,** *drive back, reduce*
34. **cēdō,** *move, go away, yield*
35. **discēdō,** *go away*
36. **excēdō,** *go out, withdraw*
37. **dēfendō,** *ward off, defend*
38. **dūcō,** *lead*
39. **addūcō,** *lead to, influence*
40. **indūcō,** *lead on, influence*
41. **perdūcō,** *lead through, construct*
42. **prōdūcō,** *lead forward, protract*
43. **gerō,** *carry on, wage*
44. **lūdō,** *play*
45. **mittō,** *send*
46. **āmittō,** *send away, let go, lose*
47. **committō,** *send together, entrust, join*
48. **dīmittō,** *send away, dispatch*
49. **intermittō,** *interrupt, stop*
50. **permittō,** *allow*
51. **praemittō,** *send ahead*
52. **remittō,** *send back, let go, relax*
53. **petō,** *seek, attack, ask*
54. **relinquō,** *leave behind*
55. **scrībō,** *write together, enroll*
56. **vincō,** *conquer*
57. **absum,** *be away, be absent*
58. **adsum,** *be near, be present*

992. Translate into English:

1. Amāmus, appellābant, dedit, cōnfīrmantur. 2. Datum erat, amābātur, appellātae sunt, cōnfīrmāvit. 3. Exspectābunt, labōrābimus,

līberātur, nāvigābātis. 4. Expectātus sum, labōrābit, līberātī erant, nāvigābitur. 5. Parāvit, comparābātur, occupat, nūntiātum est. 6. Pugnant, servantur, spectābat, superābuntur. 7. Superābō, pugnātum erat, habēmus, vocāmur. 8. Monentur, mōvimus, tenēbitus, continentur. 9. Timet, vīdit, sustentum est, respondit. 10. Vidēmus, timētur, continēbātur, permōtus est. 11. Agimus, cōgimur, redigētur, cēdēmus. 12. Ēgit, cogentur, cēdēbant, redāctus est. 13. Dēfendēmur, excēdit, dūcēris, adductus erat. 14. Dēfenditur, excessit, dūxērunt, adducentur. 15. Indūcimur, perductī erant, prōdūxērunt. 16. Gessimus, lūdēbant, mīsī, āmittitur. 17. Committentur, dīmittit, intermittētur, permittam. 18. Dīmīsērunt, āmissum est, eī commissa erat, praemissī sunt. 19. Petitur, scrībet, remittant, vincēmus. 20. Nōn victī sumus, scrīptum est, erimus, relinquuntur. 21. Domō abest, vincent, herī aderat, relīquit.

993. Translate into Latin:

1. He is called, we are calling, they strengthen peace, we gave. 2. They will give, we shall not want, we will have worked, he will announce. 3. They were getting ready, we carried, they had fought. 4. We were looked at, you will keep, we shall not be overcome. 5. They are calling, he was warning, they had, we did not fear. 6. We had, they were alarmed, he will answer, I did not see. 7. They were holding, he moved back, we replied, they had seen. 8. I shall drive, they will compel, they will be driven back, he is yielding. 9. We do not yield, they are going away, he was withdrawing, they will defend themselves. 10. They are led, we shall influence them, we are not influenced by these things. 11. He is leading the troops forward, the troops have been led through, they will carry on the war. 12. They are playing, he will be sent, they had lost the letter, they will not join battle. 13. He sent the messenger away, the messenger was sent back, we seek peace. 14. They will leave the town, the enemy was overcome, the letter had been written. 15. We shall be away tomorrow, he was present yesterday, they had left the town, we allowed them to go.

Nouns

994. Review the first and second declensions:

59. **agricola,** *farmer*
60. **amīcitia,** *friendship*
61. **aqua,** *water*
62. **fāma,** *reputation, rumor*
63. **fēmina,** *woman*
64. **fīlia,** *daughter*
65. **fortūna,** *chance, fortune*
66. **fuga,** *flight*
67. **iniūria,** *wrong*
68. **īnsula,** *island*

69. **lingua,** *tongue, language*
70. **lūna,** *moon*
71. **memoria,** *memory*
72. **mēnsa,** *table, dish*
73. **nātūra,** *nature, character*
74. **nauta,** *sailor*
75. **patria,** *one's country*
76. **pecūnia,** *money*
77. **poena,** *penalty, punishment*
78. **poēta,** *poet*
79. **porta,** *gate*
80. **prōvincia,** *province*
81. **puella,** *girl*
82. **pugna,** *fight*
83. **rēgīna,** *queen*
84. **silva,** *forest*
85. **terra,** *earth, land*
86. **via,** *way, road*
87. **victōria,** *victory*
88. **vīta,** *life*
89. **ager,** *field, country*
90. **animus,** *spirit, courage, mind*
91. **annus,** *year*
92. **arma,** *arms, implements*
93. **auxilium,** *aid, assistance*
94. **bellum,** *war*
95. **castra,** *camp*
96. **cōnsilium,** *plan, counsel*
97. **deus,** *god*
98. **dominus,** *master*
99. **equus,** *horse*
100. **factum,** *deed*
101. **fīlius,** *son*
102. **frūmentum,** *grain*
103. **gladius,** *sword*
104. **liber,** *book*
105. **locus,** *place*
106. **magister,** *master, teacher, helmsman*

995. Translate into English:

1. Amīcitia magistrī, fāmā poetārum, ex īnsulīs parvīs, ā fīliīs rēgīnae. 2. Fāma nautārum erat magna; portās novās fēcit; in prōvinciā sunt agricolae. 3. Memoriā patriam tenēmus; memoriā ab amīcīs tenēmur. 4. Per portās apertās, multōs annōs; in agrōs frūmentī; ex castrīs. 5. Cōnsilia bellī, in terram Gallōrum, per portās castrōrum, dē locō altō. 6. Nautae gladiīs pugnant; dominī in agrīs cum servīs nōn labōrant. 7. Filiī magistrī librōs multōs habent; animus fīliae est bonus. 8. Puellae aquā iūvant; agricolae ā puellīs iuvantur. 9. Nautae victōriam nūntiant; victōria ab nautīs nūntiābātur. 10. Dominus equōs dūcēbat; equī ā magistrō ductī sunt. 11. Multōs annōs nautae in bellō erant; ā nostrīs pugnātum est. 12. Cum gladiīs Rōmānis pugnābant; gladiī puerīs nōn dabuntur.

996. Translate into Latin:

1. With the farmer, by means of friendship, because of reputation, of the women. 2. He helps with the water; of my daughter, for the girls, by means of flight, on the island. 3. Our wrongs are great; the moon is bright; the islands are small. 4. The letter is on the table; the girls have money; the queen's daughter is present. 5. He fears punishment; the fight was long; the gates are open; the men of the province are tall. 6. Out

of the provinces, into the forest, away from the road, toward the island. 7. The way to the woods is wide; life is short; this man has announced the victory. 8. Men love life; boys work in the fields; they are coming out of the fields; they do not carry arms. 9. They are of friendly mind; they will bring aid; we shall see the camp; the plan of the war is good. 10. The master has houses; the number of hours is not great; our deeds are seen. 11. The master has sons, daughters, and slaves. 12. The slaves are carrying grain; the boys have books; the number of books is small. 13. The teacher was in this place; we shall see many teachers.

997. Review the second and third declensions:

107. **negōtium,** *business, talk*
108. **numerus,** *number*
109. **oculus,** *eye*
110. **officium,** *duty*
111. **oppidum,** *town*
112. **perīculum,** *trial, danger*
113. **populus,** *people, nation*
114. **praemium,** *reward, pay*
115. **praesidium,** *garrison, protection*
116. **proelium,** *battle*
117. **puer,** *boy*
118. **rēgnum,** *kingdom, royal power*
119. **servus,** *slave*
120. **sīgnum,** *sign, signal, standard*
121. **socius,** *ally*
122. **vesper,** *evening*
123. **vir,** *man*
124. **aestās,** *summer*
125. **altitūdō,** *height*
126. **arbor,** *tree*
127. **auctoritās,** *authority, influence*
128. **caput,** *head*
129. **celeritās,** *swiftness, speed*
130. **cōnsul,** *consul*
131. **corpus,** *body*
132. **dux,** *leader*
133. **flūmen,** *river*
134. **frāter,** *brother*
135. **hiems,** *winter*
136. **homō,** *man, human being*
137. **lātitūdo,** *width*
138. **lēx,** *law*
139. **lībertās,** *freedom*
140. **lūx,** *light*
141. **māgnitūdō,** *greatness, size*
142. **māter,** *mother*
143. **mīles,** *soldier*
144. **multitūdō,** *large number, crowd*
145. **nōmen,** *name*
146. **pater,** *father*
147. **pāx,** *peace*
148. **pēs,** *foot*
149. **prīnceps,** *leading man, chief*
150. **rēx,** *king*
151. **sōl,** *sun*
152. **soror,** *sister*
153. **tempus,** *time*
154. **victor,** *conqueror*
155. **virtūs,** *manliness, bravery*
156. **vōx,** *voice, word*

998. Translate into English:

1. Officium servōrum, oculī populī, propter praemia, in proeliō ante oppidum. 2. Numerus oppidōrum et urbium, aestāte, capita virōrum, sociī populī Rōmānī, in flūmina prōvinciae, omnem hiemem. 3. Frātrum

ducis, ā frātribus rēgis, rēgī hominum, mātribus mīlitum. 4. Multitūdō servōrum, cum patribus puerōrum, rēgnum Galliae. 5. A prīncipibus mīlitum nōmina servōrum, hōc tempore annī. 6. Vōcis hominum. 7. Virtūte sorōris meae, pedēs centum altitūdine, nēgōtium rēgis, auctōritāte amīcōrum. 8. Hominēs lībertātem amant; lībertās ab omnibus hominibus amātur. 9. Eō tempore hīemis flūmen est altum; aestāte flūmina sunt nōn alta. 10. Germānī corpora magnitūdine incrēdibilī habēbant.

999. Translate into Latin:

1. The duty of soldiers, into the towns of the leaders. 2. Out of deep rivers, away from the camp of the soldiers. 3. With a signal, with my father, with great swiftness. 4. On an evening of summer, in many winters, with great danger. 5. By our allies, for the leaders of people, by the son of the chief. 6. On account of the influence of the leaders, out of the great trees, by the mothers of the conquerors. 7. It extends many feet in width; it will be extended a hundred feet by the soldiers. 8. The rewards are for the victors; the royal power is held by my father. 9. The night is without light; he is a man of great bravery; he sent a garrison to the town. 10. Trees love the light of the sun; the light of the sun is loved by men.

Adjectives and Pronouns

1000. Review the forms of first and second declension of adjectives:

157. **aequus,** *level, equal, kindly*
158. **altus,** *high, deep*
159. **amīcus,** *friendly*
160. **amplus,** *large, splendid*
161. **barbarus,** *foreign, rude*
162. **bonus,** *good*
163. **certus,** *sure, certain*
164. **crēber,** *thick, close, frequent*
165. **dēcimus,** *tenth*
166. **ēgregius,** *outstanding, distinguished*
167. **fīnitimus,** *neighboring*
168. **ignōtus,** *unknown*
169. **inimīcus,** *unfriendly*
170. **inīquus,** *uneven, unfair*
171. **integer,** *whole*
172. **lātus,** *wide*
173. **līber,** *free*
174. **longus,** *long*
175. **magnus,** *great*
176. **malus,** *bad*
177. **meus,** *my, mine*
178. **mīser,** *wretched*
179. **multus,** *much* (plur., *many*)
180. **nōnus,** *ninth*
181. **noster,** *our, ours*
182. **nōtus,** *know*
183. **novus,** *new*
184. **octāvus,** *eight*
185. **parvus,** *small*
186. **paucī,** *a few, few*
187. **prīmus,** *first*

188. **pūblicus,** *belonging to the people, public*
189. **quārtus,** *fourth*
190. **quīntus,** *fifth*
191. **reliquus,** *left behind, remaining, rest of*
192. **secundus,** *following, second, favorable*
193. **septimus,** *seventh*
194. **sextus,** *sixth*
195. **tertius,** *third*
196. **timidus,** *fearful, cowardly*
197. **tuus,** *thy, thine, your, yours*
198. **ūnus,** *one*
199. **vērus,** *true*
200. **vester,** *your, yours*
201. **centum,** *hundred*
202. **decem,** *ten*
203. **duo,** *two*
204. **novem,** *nine*
205. **octō,** *eight*
206. **quattuor,** *four*
207. **quīnque,** *five*
208. **septem,** *seven*
209. **sex,** *six*
210. **trēs,** *three*
211. **vīgintī,** *twenty*
212. **is,** *this, that, he*
213. **quī,** *who, which, that*

1001. Translate into English:

1. Animō aequō, in prōvinciā amplā, hominum barbarōrum, nūntiīs crēbrīs. 2. Cum legiōne decimā, ad fīnitimōs, virī ēgregī, mīlitī ignōtō. 3. Inimīcus populō Rōmānō, in fossam lātam, ex flūmine altō. 4. Rēgis, inīquī, cōpiae integrae, ab servīs mīserīs, annō nōnō. 5. Novās legiōnēs habēbat; octāvam vīdimus. 6. Paucī nostrōrum erant in oppidīs līberīs; reliquī in prōvinciā tenēbantur. 7. Hōrā octāvā ex vīcō properāvit; fāmam secundam portāvit. 8. Negōtia pūblica sunt multa; rēx negōtia pūblica cūrat. 9. Hōc in locō annōs quattuor habitāvimus; ibi etiam annōs quīnque habitābimus. 10. Unō hieme ad urbem īvimus; virōs multōs et ēgregiōs ibi vīdimus.

1002. Translate into Latin:

1. Of kindly disposition (mind), in a splendid country, of foreign people, by a splendid leader. 2. Men of rude mind, on a certain street, during the tenth year. 3. Within seven hours, during the seventh hour. 4. Of free men, by wretched slaves, from well known places. 5. With my friends, into a new town, down from high places, into our village. 6. With little boys, by few men, in the fourth hour. 7. By the rest of the soldiers, on account of a favorable report, by a true man. 8. We saw ten soldiers and nine sailors; we were seen by seven men. 9. By means of favorable reports, from unknown places, out of the first town. 10. We saw timid girls; who saw the well known leaders?

Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions

1003. Study the following carefully:

214. **ā (ab)**, *from, away from, by*
215. **ad**, *to, toward, near*
216. **ante**, *before*
217. **cum**, *with*
218. **dē**, *down, from, concerning*
219. **ē (ex)**, *out of*
220. **in**, *in, into*
221. **per**, *through*
222. **post**, *after, behind*
223. **prō**, *in front of, in behalf of*
224. **sine**, *without*
225. **sub**, *under, close to*
226. **trāns**, *across*
227. **anteā**, *before, that, previously*
228. **iam**, *now, already, presently*
229. **nōn**, *not*
230. **nunc**, *now*
231. **posteā**, *after that, afterwards*
232. **tum (tunc)**, *at that time*
233. **ubi**, *where, when*
234. **ac (atque)**, *and also, and*
235. **aut**, *or*
236. **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*
237. **cūr**, *why*
238. **et**, *and*
239. **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*
240. **etiam**, *also, even*
241. **-ne**, interrogative particle
242. **nec (necque)**, *and not, nor, neither*
243. **neque, . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*
244. **quam**, *how, as, than*
245. **quod**, *because*
246. **-que**, *and*
247. **sed**, *but*

1004. Translate into English:

1. Ab oppidō, ad vīcōs, ante portās vīcī, cum frātribus meīs. 2. Ex agrīs amplīs, in agrōs trāns flūmen, dē locīs superiōribus. 3. Per portās āpertās, post mēnsam, prō sorōre tuā, sine negōtiō. 4. Sub mūrīs, trāns viam, ad rēgem, sub lībrum. 5. Anteā in Graeciā habitābāmus; nunc Romae sumus. 6. Iam excessit, neque eum neque frātrem vidēbam. 7. Estne cum patre? Ubi ibi erat? 8. Et mīlitēs et nautās vīdimus; posteā rēgem, sed nōn rēgīnam vīdimus. 9. Quam lātum est flūmen? estne etiam altum? 10. Cūr vēnit? Quod pater cum vocāvit.

1005. Translate into Latin:

1. Where did you live at that time? Across the river. 2. With great care, close to the woods, into the towns. 3. We passed through the camp without danger; afterward we saw foreign men. 4. Behind the town the camp is already pitched. 5. Previously we were neither at Rome nor in the province. 6. He has already come; now we are all present. 7. At that time they were in the fields; why did they not work? 8. Neither the men nor the women heard the soldiers. 9. Both slaves and boys are working; even the girls help. 10. They are either across the river or in the woods.

VOCABULARY FOR SECOND HALF YEAR WITH EXERCISES

Verbs

1006. Review verbs of the first three conjugations:

248. **appropinquō**, *approach*
249. **clāmō**, *shout, cry*
250. **commūnicō**, *share, communicate*
251. **dēmōnstrō**, *point out*
252. (dō — 3rd conjugation compounds)
253. **abdō**, *put away, hide*
254. **circumdō**, *put round, surround*
255. **reddō**, *give back, return*
256. **trādō**, *hand over, entrust, surrender*
257. **dubitō**, *hesitate, doubt*
258. **ēnūntiō**, *disclose, announce*
259. **exīstimō**, *think, believe*
260. **prōnūntiō**, *declare*
261. **putō**, *think*
262. **renūntiō**, *announce, proclaim*
263. **ignōrō**, *not know*
264. **laudō**, *praise*
265. **occultō**, *hide, conceal*
266. **recuperō**, *regain, get back*
267. **tempō**, *try, attempt*
268. **vītō**, *avoid*
269. **vulnerō**, *wound*
270. **audeō**, *dare*
271. **dēbeō**, *owe, ought*
272. **doceō**, *teach, inform*
273. **iubeō**, *order, command*
274. **licet**, *it is permitted*
275. **maneō**, *stay, remain*
276. **permaneō**, *stay through, abide*
277. **noceō**, *harm*
278. **obsideō**, *sit against, besiege*
279. **oportet**, *it behooves, ought*
280. **perterreō**, *frighten thoroughly*
281. **possideō**, *possess, acquire*
282. **prohibeō**, *keep away*
283. **studeō**, *be eager, desire*
284. **antecēdō**, *go before, surpass*
285. **succēdō**, *approach, come next*
286. **claudō**, *close, shut*
287. **coepī**, *have begun*
288. **cognōscō**, *learn* (perfect: *know*)
289. **cōnfīdō**, *trust*
290. **cōnsistō**, *take position, halt, stop*
291. **dēsistō**, *desist, cease*
292. **resistō**, *take a stand, resist*
293. **contendō**, *struggle, hasten*
294. **ostendō**, *hold out, show*
295. **dīcō**, *say, speak*

1007. Translate into English:

1. Appropinquābimus, clāmātis, commūnicābat, dēmōnstrāvimus. 2. Abdidit, clāmābit, circumdat, reddēmus. 3. Reddidērunt, trāditus est, trāditus erō, laudābimus. 4. Dubitābat, ēnūntiāvit, ēnūntiātus erat, putant. 5. Putābunt, exīstimāvit, trādet, ignōrāmus. 6. Occupābimus, recuperāvit, recuperāta sunt, temptāvērunt. 7. Vītat, vulnerātus sum, audēmus, dēbent. 8. Dēbēs temptāre, vītāvit, vulnerābunt. 9. Magister puerōs docuit; ā magistrō puerī doctī sunt. 10. Perīculum

vītāre dēbēmus; victōria ā rēge ēnūntiārī dēbet. 11. Mīlitēs manēre licet; ēōs nōn nocēre iussit. 12. Incolīs nocēbunt; multās hōrās permanēbunt. 13. Urbem obsident; ea nōn trādētur. 14. Hostēs perterritī sunt; oppidum nōn possidēbunt? 15. Legiō decima successit; ea portās claudet. 16. Resistere coepērunt; pugnāre nōn dēsistent. 17. Sē ostendit; sē nōn occultābit. 18. Ex castrīs contendunt fortiter resistent. 19. Dīxit hostēs cōnsistere; numerō magnō hominum cōnfīdunt. 20. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, in Galliam contendit. 21. Resistere dēsistent; oppidum nōn trādent.

1008. Translate into Latin:

1. We were approaching, he shouted, they shared, we shall point out. 2. They will approach, he had shouted, it has been communicated, they were being pointed out. 3. We hide our books; it will be hidden; we shall surround the town; he returned the sword. 4. He will give back the letter; the slaves were handed over; I did not hesitate. 5. We were hesitating; they surrender the town; we shall announce the fact. 6. We think; he declared; we did not believe; they did not know. 7. He concealed the boys; we shall regain liberty; I tried to avoid danger. 8. He was wounded; we ought to teach the girls to praise their mothers. 9. He informed the men concerning the war; he ordered them to set out. 10. It was permitted; we shall remain a month; they abode a year; we shall not harm them. 11. They are besieging the towns; it behooved. 12. It will be permitted; the camp had been avoided; he was acquiring slaves; they were thoroughly frightened. 13. He was eager for the letter; they will close the gates; the gates have been closed; he will approach. 14. We learn much, they trusted; he took a position; they will cease fighting (to fight); we began to resist. 15. They resisted for many hours; he will hasten; they came next; we surpassed. 16. They say; I desisted; they will show; they are struggling. 17. They will take a position; he halted; they began to frighten the enemy. 18. The roads had been closed; they were coming next; he showed himself; he will possess. 19. He kept the horses away; we shall remain in the town. 20. The boys learned; he has ordered them to hurry; the girls had been ordered. 21. We dare not prevent them; they are trying to communicate the message.

1009. Review verbs of the third and fourth conjugations:

296. **exstruō,** *pile up, build*
297. **īnstruō,** *arrange, marshall*
298. **legō,** *pick, choose, read*
299. **dēligō,** *pick out, choose*
300. **pellō,** *strike, beat, drive*
301. **compellō,** *drive together, collect, force*
302. **impellō,** *drive on, urge on*

303. **pōnō,** *put, place*
304. **dēponō,** *put down, put aside*
305. **exponō,** *put forth, set forth*
306. **impōnō,** *put on*
307. **prōpōnō,** *set forth, propose*
308. **premō,** *press*
309. **submittō,** *send under, send to assist, yield*
310. **trahō,** *drag, draw*
311. **capiō,** *take, seize*
312. **accipiō,** *take to, receive, accept*
313. **excipiō,** *take out, succeed to*
314. **incipiō,** *begin*
315. **cupiō,** *desire, wish*
316. **faciō,** *do, make*
317. **cōnficiō,** *accomplish, complete*
318. **dēficiō,** *fail, give out, revolt from*
319. **interficiō,** *kill*
320. **perficiō,** *accomplish*
321. **praeficiō,** *put at the head of*
322. **prōficiō,** *accomplish, gain*
323. **satisfaciō,** *do enough, do one's duty, apologize*
324. **iaciō,** *hurl, throw*
325. **adiciō,** *add to*
326. **coniciō,** *hurl, throw*
327. **obiciō,** *throw against, put in the way*
328. **prōiciō,** *hurl (forward)*
329. **audiō,** *hear*
330. **fīniō,** *limit, bound, end*
331. **mūniō,** *do a task, build, fortify*
332. **sciō,** *know*
333. **sentiō,** *feel, think, judge*
334. **cōnsentiō,** *think together, agree*
335. **veniō,** *come*
336. **circumveniō,** *come around, surrender, cut off*
337. **conveniō,** *come together, assemble*
338. **inveniō,** *come upon, find*
339. **perveniō,** *come through*
340. **dēsum,** *be lacking*
341. **possum,** *be able, can*
342. **praesum,** *be ahead, be in charge of*
343. **supersum,** *be over, remain, survive*

1010. Translate into English:

1. Exstruit, īnstruit, leget, dēligitur. 2. Aciem īnstruit; pontem exstrūxit; lēgātum dēlēgit; librōs legimus. 3. Compellent, compellēbantur, impellitur, impulsus erat. 4. Castra ponēbat; castra posita erant; arma dēposuērunt; iūgum imponēbant. 5. Cōnsilium expōnēbam; impetum exposuit; hostēs pressimus; nostrōs submittent. 6. Carrōs trahēbant; oppida capiēmus; iī acceptī sunt; proelium inceptum est. 7. Negōtium cōnficere cupimus; nāvis facta erat. 8. Nāvē cōnfectā magistrum dēligēmus; magistrō dēlēctō, nāvem ad īnsulam pepulimus. 9. Negōtiō perfectō, domum pervēnimus; locō mūnītō, nostrī amīcī satisfactī erant. 10. Tēla iacēmus; ā mīlitibus tēla iacta sunt. 11. Mīlitēs pīla coniciunt; pīla ā nautīs coniciēbantur. 12. Ad pedēs meōs sē prōiēcit; carrōs obiēcērunt. 13. Rhēnus imperium fīnit; imperium Rhēnō fīniēbātur. 14. Scīmus quid cupiat; cupimus cōnsentīre. 15. Ad flūmen advēnerat; locum invēnimus. 16. In rīpā conveniēbant; cibus nōn dēerit. 17. Cōnsentīre nōn poterant, cōnsilium inveniēmus.

18. Lēgātī oppidīs praeerant; exercituī praefectī sunt. 19. Multī supererant; iī domum pervenient. 20. Nūntium adpropinquāre sentīmus; eum recipiēmus.

1011. Translate into Latin:

1. We shall build a wall; walls have been built by the soldiers. 2. He was drawing up a line of battle; the line of battle had been drawn up by him. 3. We shall choose a suitable place; a suitable place will be picked out. 4. We shall collect the men out of the fields; the men had been collected. 5. He urged the men on; they were driven on by his commands. 6. He proposes a new plan; this plan was proposed by the leaders. 7. We shall not yield; the Gauls are already yielding. 8. He had pressed the attack; the enemy were pressing ours. 9. They drag the towers to the wall; the city will be taken. 10. They put the baggage in carts; the yoke was put on. 11. They received our letters; we shall receive theirs soon. 12. Gaul begins at the Rhine; the battle was begun. 13. The light is failing; we wish to read. 14. We will complete the task; it will be completed soon. 15. He put Labienus in charge of the work; he will be in charge of the troops all winter. 16. They cannot do enough; they are fortifying the camp. 17. The enemy hurled spears against the wall; our men surrounded them. 18. We knew that they would come together; they arrived at the appointed hour. 19. We are able to find out; they could hear; he had not been able to come; you can accomplish the work. 20. They hurl (together); we are hurling; they were being thrown; they had been put in the way. 21. We shall surround the camp; the town will be cut off. 22. They agree; you had not agreed; we shall agree.

Nouns

1012. Review the first three declensions:

344. **cōpia,** *supply, abundance* (plur., *forces*)
345. **hōra,** *hour*
346. **inōpia,** *want, lack*
347. **rīpa,** *bank, shore*
348. **saggitta,** *arrow*
349. **toga,** *toga*
350. **tuba,** *trumpet*
351. **vīlla,** *farm house*
352. **beneficium,** *kind deed, service*
353. **bīduum,** *two days*
354. **campus,** *plain, field*
355. **digitus,** *finger, toe*
356. **imperātum,** *command*
357. **imperium,** *command, power*
358. **maleficium,** *evil deed*
359. **modus,** *measure, manner*
360. **spatium,** *space*
361. **trīduum,** *three days*
362. **aetās,** *time of life*
363. **cīvitās,** *citizenship, community, state*
364. **condiciō,** *agreement, terms, condition*

365. **cōnsuētūdō,** *custom, habit*
366. **cupiditās,** *desire, longing*
367. **difficultās,** *difficulty*
368. **dignitās,** *worth, rank*
369. **facultās,** *power of doing, ability, chance*
370. **genus,** *origin, kind, race*
371. **iūs,** *right, law*
372. **laus,** *praise, glory*
373. **ōrātio,** *speech*
374. **ōrdō,** *order, rank*
375. **potestās,** *power*
376. **ratiō,** *reckoning, plan, reason*
377. **timor,** *fear*
378. **vulnus,** *wound*
379. **iter,** *road, march*

1013. Translate into English:

1. Hōrīs paūcis, inōpiā cibī et aquae, in rīpā flūminis. 2. Sagittārum cōpiā, sagittārum longārum, in vīllam, ex campō. 3. Togam āmīsit; tubā vocābat; cōpiās ēdūxit. 4. Beneficia multa accēpit; bīduum mānsit; imperāta fecit. 5. In campum properāvit; campō circumventō; cum difficultāte ēvāsit. 6. Imperia Caesaris accepta sunt; eōs nūlla maleficia facere iussit. 7. Amīcō modō respondit; dīxit sē trīduum manēre. 8. Aestāte prohibētur; virtūte aetātem superāvit. 9. Cōnsuētūdō cīvitātis erat obsidēs accipere atque condiciōnēs impōnere. 10. Eā condiciōne, cupiditāte potestātis, verī dignitāte magnō in ōrdinēs hostium. 11. Iter faciet; ōrātiōnem habuit; cupiditāte laudis inductus est; vulneribus dēfessus est. 12. Ratiōnem cēpit; timōre pulsus est; genera timōris sunt multa. 13. Facultātēs auxit; iūra sua exsecūtus est. 14. Eā difficultāte trīdium exspectāvit ut ratiōnem novam caperet. 15. Potestātis cupiditāte inductus facultātēs omnēs occupāvit.

1014. Translate into Latin:

1. In an hour, within three hours, because of lack of water, for want of food. 2. With a good supply of arrows, on the banks of the river, by means of a trumpet. 3. Into the farm house, across the plain, in this manner. 4. A finger having been lost, a space having intervened, commands having been given, his age having been learned. 5. He will wait three days; we will do his commands; they will receive terms; the soldiers will march. 6. On these conditions, because of great difficulties, in accordance with the custom of the state, through fear of wounds. 7. He was led on by a desire for power; influenced by desire for praise, he did many kindnesses. 8. A state of great power, men of high rank, service of great difficulty. 9. He was influenced by a desire for rank; he overcame very great difficulties. 10. He greatly increased the powers of the state, and received benefits of many kinds.

1015. Review the third, fourth, and fifth declensions:

380. **cīvis,** *citizen*
381. **dēns,** *tooth*
382. **fīnis,** *end, boundary* (plur., *territory*)
383. **hostis,** *enemy*
384. **mare,** *sea*
385. **mēns,** *mind*
386. **mēnsis,** *month*
387. **mōns,** *mountain*
388. **mors,** *death*
389. **nāvis,** *ship*
390. **nox,** *night*
391. **pars,** *part*
392. **pōns,** *bridge*
393. **urbs,** *city*
394. **vīs,** *violence, force*
395. **adventus,** *approach, arrival*
396. **cornū,** *horn, wing* (*of an army*)
397. **domus,** *home, house*
398. **equitātus,** *body of horsemen, cavalry*
399. **exercitus,** *trained body, army*
400. **exitus,** *outcome, end*
401. **manus,** *hand, band, troop*
402. **passus,** *pace* (*double step*)
403. **senātus,** *body of elders, senate*
404. **aciēs,** *edge, line of battle*
405. **diēs,** *day*
406. **fidēs,** *trust, pledge, reliability*
407. **meridiēs,** *midday, south*
408. **rēs,** *thing*
409. **rēs pūblica,** *commonwealth*
410. **spēs,** *hope*

1016. Translate into English:

1. Cīvium bonōrum, dente malō, in fīnēs maiōrēs, in hostēs. 2. In maria īgnōta, dē montibus altīs, ab morte. 3. Nāvibus factīs, nocte obscūrā, in omnēs partēs, trāns hunc pontem. 4. Urbium pulchrārum, vī, virī vīribus singulāribus, adventū ēius. 5. Domum, domō, domī, domōrum nōstrarum. 6. Mente sānā, ex cornū sinistrō, exercituī nostrō, diēs multōs post. 7. In manū rēgis, mīlia passuum sex, in fidem populī Rōmānī. 8. Equitātū praemissō, manibus apertīs, senātuī populī Rōmānī, aciē īnstrūctā. 9. Diē cōnstitūtā revertērunt. 10. Diēbus paucīs revertent. 11. Ad meridiem exspectābimus. 12. Causā reī pūblicae id faciēmus. 13. Hōc spē dēiectī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 14. Helvetiī vī per prōvinciam īre cōnātī sunt. 15. Adventū Caesaris ēnūntiātō, multī ducēs ad eum sē contulērunt.

1017. Translate into Latin:

1. For well-known citizens, of bad teeth, into our territories, on the high sea. 2. Into the minds of men, within one month, after a few months, down from the nearest mountain. 3. On account of his death, in all directions, on this side, till late at night, late at night. 4. Across that bridge, a bridge having been built, out of this beautiful city. 5. By force, men of great strength, upon the arrival of Caesar, on the left wing. 6. On the two wings of the army, out of the camp of the cavalry, through the exit

of the camp, two thousand paces farther. 7. He drew up a battle line. 8. They moved toward the south. 9. When these things had been done, they abandoned all hope of taking the town. 10. All these things will be of benefit to the republic.

Adjectives and Pronouns

1018. Review the declension of adjectives and pronouns:

411. **cupidus,** *desirous*
412. **dexter,** *right* (of direction)
413. **idōneus,** *suitable*
414. **maritimus,** *of the sea, maritime*
415. **necessārius,** *necessary*
416. **occultus,** *hidden, secret*
417. **perītus,** *experiences, skilled*
418. **propinquus,** *nearby, kinsman*
419. **sinister,** *left* (of direction)
420. **suus,** *his, her, its, their*
421. **vīcīnus,** *neighboring*
422. **ācer,** *sharp, keen, eager*
423. **alacer,** *eager, cheerful*
424. **celer,** *swift*
425. **commūnis,** *common, general*
426. **difficilis,** *difficult*
427. **dīligēns,** *careful*
428. **facilis,** *easy*
429. **fidēlis,** *faithful*
430. **fortis,** *brave*
431. **gravis,** *heavy, serious*
432. **hūmilis,** *low, lowly*
433. **levis,** *light, fickle*
434. **mīlle,** *thousand*
435. **nōbilis,** *well-known*
436. **omnis,** *all, whole* (sing., *every*)
437. **pār,** *equal*
438. **potēns,** *able, powerful*
439. **praesēns,** *present, in person*
440. **prūdēns,** *foreseeing, discreet, wise*
441. **recēns,** *fresh, new*
442. **similis,** *like, resembling*
443. **singulāris,** *one by one, extraordinary*
444. **egō,** *I*
445. **hic,** *this*
446. **īdem,** *the same*
447. **ille,** *that*
448. **ipse,** *self, very*
449. **quis,** *who, any*
450. **suī,** (*of*) *himself, herself, itself, themselves*
451. **tū,** *thou, you*

1019. Translate into English:

1. Hominēs cupidī pācis, vir cupidus potestātis, in locō idōneō castrīs, ad vīllam proximam. 2. Rēs occultae, imperiōrum necessāriōrum, in oppidīs vīcīnīs, ā mīlitibus perītīs. 3. Ex parte sinistrā, in cīvitāte adpropinquā, virō fortī, ā nūntiō celerī. 4. Mīlitum alacrium, bonō commūnī, cum magistrō dīligentī, viā difficillimā. 5. Vir gravis aetāte, cum agricolīs hūmilibus, ob viam difficilem, apud celerēs. 6. In īisdem locīs, ex illō oppidō, ad eundam urbem, hīs rēbus. 7. Ab Gallīs ipsīs, in hōc locō ipsō, propter vulnus recēns, animō levī. 8. Propter adventum hostis dextrum cornū partem noctis in armīs erat. 9. Quō tū et ego nāvem recentem

trahēmus? 10. Apud nōs multae domūs sunt. 11. Mēns ācris et prūdēns virīs levibus dēest. 12. Propinquī tuī tibi similēs sunt. 13. Exercitus fidēlis eō iter mīlle possuum cōnfēcit. 14. Nōbilēs hominēs reī pūblicae praesunt. 15. Spēs vī potentiōrum superest. 16. Vīs parum prōficiet, mēns prūdēns magis. 17. Terra fīnēs marī imposuit. 18. Puer dentem suum excipiēbat. 19. Eōs spēs singulāris cēpit. 20. Dux ibi equitātuī praeficiēbātur.

1020. Translate into Latin:

1. For brave citizens, toward the right side, for men desirous of peace, into hidden matters. 2. To a place suitable for a country house, of necessary orders, by experienced soldiers. 3. In nearby towns, of neighboring tribes, with eager men, for the common safety. 4. By swifter messengers, by an easier way, of lowly birth, of eager troops. 5. Across a bridge near the sea, of fickle mind, days of equal length, for a thousand homes. 6. By the same route, into the same towns, of the same girls, for the same city. 7. On this very bridge, for men of extraordinary character (mind), in all directions. 8. He being present, in the presence of the leaders, by discreet kings, with powerful chiefs. 9. Men like kings, for well-known leaders, in this place, because of these matters. 10. Into those towns, from that river, toward this city, into these cities. 11. I myself will do it; these spears are for the boys themselves. 12. They will betake themselves to the woods; we shall not harm ourselves (what case?).

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

1021. Learn the meanings of the following:

452. **apud,** *near, in the presence of, among*
453. **inter,** *between, among*
454. **ob,** *against, on account of*
455. **propter,** *near, on account of*
456. **aegrē,** *with difficulty*
457. **amplus,** *more*
458. **bene,** *well*
459. **bis,** *twice*
460. **eō,** *thither, to that place*
461. **eōdem,** *to the same place*
462. **facile,** *easily*
463. **hīc** (adv.), *here, at this point*
464. **hūc,** *hither*
465. **iam prīdem,** *long ago*
466. **ubi,** *there*
467. **inde,** *thence*
468. **interim,** *meanwhile*
469. **magis,** *more greatly, more*
470. **magnopere,** *greatly*
471. **nē . . . quidem,** *not even*
472. **parum,** (*too*) *little*
473. **quidem,** *certainly, at least*
474. **quō,** *whither*
475. **satis,** *enough*
476. **vehementer,** *strongly*
477. **unde,** *whence*
478. **verō,** *in truth, but*
479. **autem,** *moreover, but*
480. **enim,** *for, indeed*
481. **nam,** *for*
482. **sī,** *if*

1022. Translate into English:

1. Ob viam difficillimam, mīles fortis dīligēnsque ad urbem aegrē vēnit. 2. Apud celerēs quis nōn alacer est? 3. Ille dux ipse eundem exercitum ex hōc locō pellere magnopere cupit. 4. Nē senātus quidem accipere fidem hostium potest. 5. Interim hostēs facile eōdem pervēnērunt. 6. Inde iam prīdem Mārcus hostium sinistrō cornū sē obiciēbat. 7. Meridiē autem equitātus hūc conveniēbant. 8. Hīc enim montem vīcīnum exercitus occultus circumveniēbant. 9. Scīsne quidem exitum? 10. Perīculum verō satis praesēns est. 11. Nam urbs fīnītur fīnibus maritimīs ac ā cīvibus mūnītur. 12. Omnībus ducibus eō vocātīs, Caesar cōnsilium dēmōnstrāvit.

1023. Translate into Latin:

1. Whence was the weapon hurled? 2. Have you read well that serious book? 3. The nobles often oppress the lowly. 4. Twice he hurled his heavy weapon forward. 5. Will the weapons be hurled together? 6. To begin well is almost to finish. 7. The citizens had twice proposed this matter. 8. The land, moreover, has pushed aside a part of the sea. 9. Will the enemy collect enough cavalry? 10. Whence have you chosen your bands? 11. Whither will you hurl this weapon? 12. Will they read that recent book? 13. If the leader shall have been killed, who will be placed in charge of the right wing? 14. Long ago they came to the same place, whence our fathers migrated (went).

1024. VOCABULARY OF THE THIRD HALF YEAR

Verbs

483. **armō,** *arm, equip*
484. **commemorō,** *mention*
485. **cūrō,** *care for, provide*
486. **dīmicō,** *fight*
487. **explōrō,** *reconnoiter*
488. **expugnō,** *take by storm*
489. **oppugnō,** *attack, assault*
490. **imperō,** *command, impose*
491. **impetrō,** *obtain (a request)*
492. **incitō,** *urge on, arouse*
493. **mandō,** *hand over, commission*
494. **ōrō,** *pray, plead*
495. **postulō,** *demand*
496. **recūsō,** *object, refuse*
497. **rogō,** *ask, ask for*
498. **interrogō,** *ask (a question)*
499. **spērō,** *hope*
500. **supportō,** *carry up*
501. **tardō,** *make slow, check*
502. **adhibeō,** *have on hand, supply*
503. **augeō,** *make grow, increase*
504. **pateō,** *lie open, extend*
505. **persuādeō,** *persuade, convince*
506. **valeō,** *be strong*
507. **accēdō,** *go to, approach, be added*
508. **concēdō,** *go with, withdraw, yield*

509. **colligō**, *gather, collect*
510. **intellegō**, *understand*
511. **cōnsuēscō**, *become accustomed*
512. **cōnsulō**, *plan, consult, deliberate*
513. **currō**, *run*
514. **occurrō**, *run against, meet*
515. **dispergō**, *scatter*
516. **dīvidō**, *separate, divide*
517. **emō**, *buy, take*
518. **incendō**, *set on fire*
519. **occīdō**, *fall, set*
520. **quaerō**, *seek, ask*
521. **conquirō**, *seek together, collect*
522. **solvō**, *untie, release, perform, pay*
523. **tangō**, *touch*
524. **attingō**, *touch upon, attain*
525. **tollō**, *lift, remove*
526. **tribuō**, *assign, grant*
527. **distribuō**, *distribute*
528. **adficiō**, *do to, affect*
529. **cōnspiciō**, *behold*
530. **dēspiciō**, *look down upon, despise*
531. **perspiciō**, *look through, understand*
532. **ēripiō**, *snatch out, free*
533. **fugiō**, *flee*
534. **effugiō**, *escape*
535. **perfugiō**, *flee to, desert*
536. **recipiō**, *take back, receive*
537. **suscipiō**, *take up, undertake*
538. **comperiō**, *find out, ascertain*
539. **reperiō**, *gain back, discover, find*
540. **expediō**, *extricate, free*
541. **arbitror**, *consider, think*
542. **cōnor**, *try, attempt*
543. **cōnspicor**, *behold*
544. **suspicor**, *suspect*
545. **hortor**, *urge, advise*
546. **moror**, *delay, tarry*
547. **commoror**, *remain*
548. **vagor**, *roam*
549. **versor**, *turn about, dwell*
550. **polliceor**, *promise*
551. **tueor**, *gaze at, protect*
552. **vereor**, *fear, respect*
553. **loquor**, *talk*
554. **colloquor**, *talk together, confer*
555. **nāscor**, *be born*
556. **proficīscor**, *set forth, start*
557. **quēror**, *complain*
558. **sequor**, *follow*
559. **cōnsequor**, *follow up, overtake, attain*
560. **īnsequor**, *follow on, pursue*
561. **persequor**, *follow through, pursue*
562. **prōsequor**, *follow on, pursue, escort*
563. **subsequor**, *follow closely*
564. **ūtor**, *use, employ*
565. **adgredior**, *step up, approach, attack*
566. **congredior**, *step together, meet*
567. **prōgredior**, *step forward, proceed*
568. **patior**, *suffer, allow*
569. **orior**, *rise*
adorior, *rise against, attack*
570. **experior**, *try out, test*
571. **potior**, *get power over, gain possession of*

Nouns

572. **causa,** *reason*
573. **familia,** *household*
574. **fossa,** *ditch*
575. **grātia,** *favor, influence, gratitude*
576. **opera,** *work, effort*
577. **sententia,** *feeling, opinion*
578. **summa,** *highest sum, total*
579. **aedificium,** *building*
580. **carrus,** *wagon, cart*
581. **castellum,** *fort, redoubt*
582. **impedīmentum,** *hindrance* (plur., *baggage*)
583. **initium,** *beginning*
584. **īnstitutum,** *custom*
585. **iugum,** *yoke, ridge*
586. **lēgātus,** *envoy, deputy*
587. **līberī,** *(freeborn) children*
588. **nihil,** *nothing*
589. **pāgus,** *district, clan*
590. **subsidium,** *reserve, reënforcement, assistance*
591. **supplicium,** *punishment*
592. **tēlum,** *missile, weapon*
593. **tergum,** *back, rear*
594. **vadum,** *shoal, ford*
595. **vallum,** *rampart*
596. **verbum,** *word*
597. **vīcus,** *village*
598. **vulgus,** *common crowd*
599. **agmen,** *marching column*
600. **calamitās,** *disaster*
601. **centuriō,** *centurion*
602. **clāmor,** *outcry, shout*
603. **gratulātiō,** *congratulation*
604. **honor,** *honor, glory, office*
605. **hūmānitās,** *kindliness, culture*
606. **labor,** *toil*
607. **lēgātiō,** *mission, embassy*
608. **legiō,** *legion*
609. **māiōrēs,** *ancestors*
610. **mōs,** *manner, habit*
611. **mūnitiō,** *fortification*
612. **nātiō,** *race, people*
613. **nēmō,** *nobody*
614. **nōbilitās,** *rank, nobility*
615. **obsēs,** *hostage*
616. **opīniō,** *belief, view*
617. **ops,** *aid, resources*
618. **opus,** *work*
619. **plēbs,** *common people*
620. **quaestor,** *quaestor*
621. **regiō,** *boundary line, district*
622. **salūs,** *health, safety*
623. **suspiciō,** *suspicion*
624. **terror,** *fright, panic*
625. **adulēscēns,** *youth, young man*
626. **caedēs,** *slaughter*
627. **cliēns,** *dependent, retainer, vassal*
628. **cohors,** *cohort, troop*
629. **collis,** *hill*
630. **gēns,** *family, clan, tribe*
631. **aditus,** *approach*
632. **cāsus,** *fall, chance, accident*
633. **commeātus,** *supplies*
634. **cōnspectus,** *view, sight*
635. **cursus,** *running, course*
636. **impetus,** *attack, charge, rush*
637. **magistrātus,** *office, official*
638. **metus,** *fear*
639. **occāsus,** *falling, setting*
640. **portus,** *harbor*
641. **ūsus,** *use, advantage, experience*
642. **planitiēs,** *plain*
643. **rēs frūmentāria,** *grain supply*

Adjectives, Pronouns

644. **aeger,** *sick*
645. **aliēnus,** *belonging to another, strange, unfavorable*
646. **angustus,** *narrow*
647. **apertus,** *open*
648. **cēterī,** *the others, the rest*
649. **commodus,** *suitable, convenient*
650. **dīversus,** *turned away, different*
651. **fīrmus,** *strong*
652. **frūmentārius,** *belonging to grain*
653. **iūstus,** *just, fair*
654. **medius,** *middle*
655. **nocturnus,** *nightly*
656. **perpetuus,** *unbroken, lasting*
657. **posterus,** *next, later*
658. **prīvātus,** *apart, private*
659. **quantus,** *how great, as great*
660. **singulī,** *one at a time*
661. **superus,** *upper*
662. **tantus,** *so great*
663. **tūtus,** *protected, safe*
664. **ūniversus,** *all together*
665. **vetustus,** *old, ancient*
666. **audāx,** *bold, daring*
667. **brevis,** *short, brief*
668. **complūrēs,** *several, very many*
669. **familiāris,** *belonging to the household, intimate*
670. **mīlitāris,** *of a soldier*
671. **necesse,** *necessary*
672. **prior,** *preceding, former*
673. **turpis,** *base, disgraceful*
674. **ūtilis,** *useful*
675. **vetus,** *old, longstanding*
676. **alius,** *another*
677. **alter,** *the other (of two), second*
678. **neuter,** *neither (of two)*
679. **nōnnūllus,** *some*
680. **nūllus,** *none, no*
681. **sōlus,** *alone, only*
682. **tōtus,** *whole*
683. **ūllus,** *any*
684. **uter,** *which of two*
685. **uterque,** *each of two, both*

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

686. **circum,** *around*
687. **extrā,** *outside of, beyond*
688. **īnfrā,** *below*
689. **intrā,** *inside, within*
690. **prope,** *near, nearby*
691. **suprā,** *above, beyond*
692. **ultrā,** *beyond*
693. **aliter,** *otherwise*
694. **audacter,** *boldly*
695. **causā,** *by reason of, for the sake of*
696. **circiter,** *about*
697. **diū,** *a long time*
698. **ita,** *thus, so*
699. **itaque,** *and thus, therefore*
700. **item,** *likewise*
701. **modo,** *only, just now*
702. **noctū,** *at night*
703. **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also*
704. **numquam,** *never*
705. **plērumque,** *for the greater part, generally*
706. **potius,** *rather, preferably*
707. **proptereā,** *on account of this, therefore*

708. **quā,** *by what way, where*
709. **saepe,** *often*
710. **semper,** *always*
711. **sīc,** *thus, so*
712. **sōlum,** *only*
713. **tam,** *thus, so*
714. **cum,** *when, since, although*
715. **cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and, not only . . . but also*
716. **dum,** *while, as long as, provided, until*
717. **etsī,** *and if, although*
718. **ne,** *lest, not that*
719. **nisi,** *if not, unless, except*
720. **quoniam,** *in as much as, since*
721. **tamen,** *however, nevertheless*
722. **ut,** *in order that, so that*

1025. VOCABULARY FOR FOURTH HALF YEAR

Verbs

723. **administrō,** *govern, manage*
724. **collocō,** *place together, establish*
725. **commendō,** *entrust*
726. **dēcertō,** *fight a decisive battle*
727. **dēspērō,** *give up hope*
728. **hiemō,** *spend the winter*
729. **iūrō,** *make oath, swear*
730. **coniūrō,** *conspire, plot*
731. **nūdō,** *make bare, empty*
732. **pācō,** *make peace, subdue*
733. **perturbō,** *throw into confusion*
734. **sīgnificō,** *announce*
735. **sollicitō,** *stir up, tempt*
736. **stō,** *stand*
737. **cōnstō,** *stand with, agree*
738. **īnstō,** *stand on, press on, be at hand*
739. **praestō,** *stand before, excel, guarantee*
740. **sublevō,** *assist*
741. **vāstō,** *lay waste*
742. **compleō,** *fill up*
743. **mereō,** *earn, deserve*
744. **praebeō,** *hold in front, afford, furnish*
745. **adigō,** *drive to, haul, move*
746. **admittō,** *let go, admit*
747. **arcessō,** *summon, invite*
748. **cadō,** *fall*
749. **accidō,** *befall, happen*
750. **incidō,** *befall, happen*
751. **caedō,** *fell, cut, kill*
752. **concīdō,** *kill*
753. **cernō,** *distinguish*
754. **dēcernō,** *decide, decree*
755. **circumsistō,** *hem in, surround*
756. **comprehendō,** *seize, grasp, understand*
757. **cōnflīgō,** *strike together, fight*
758. **cōnsīdō,** *settle, take position*
759. **dēdō,** *give over, devote, surrender*
760. **ēdō,** *put out, put forth*
761. **dēdūcō,** *lead away, launch*
762. **subdūcō,** *lead under, lead up to, draw up, beach*
763. **dēserō,** *give up, abandon*
764. **incolō,** *dwell in*
765. **intercēdō,** *go between, forbid, veto*
766. **prōcēdō,** *go forward, advance*
767. **interclūdō,** *shut off, cut off*

768. iungō, *join*
769. coniungō, *join together, unite*
770. minuō, *lessen*
771. nōscō, *learn, recognize*
772. opprimō, *crush, overwhelm*
773. pendō, *hang, suspend, pay*
774. poscō, *demand, claim*
775. regō, *direct, rule*
776. dērigō, *direct, guide*
777. statuō, *set up, fix, determine*
778. cōnstituō, *put together, establish, decide*
779. īnstituō, *set up, establish, undertake*
780. restituō, *place back, restore*
781. sūmō, *take*
782. cōnsūmō, *use up*
783. tegō, *cover, conceal*
784. vertō, *turn*
785. advertō, *turn to, proceed against*
786. animadvertō, *turn the mind to, observe*
787. convertō, *turn around, change*
788. revertō, *turn back, return*
789. efficiō, *work out, accomplish, bring about*
790. reficiō, *make over, repair*
791. praecipiō, *advise, give directions*
792. aperiō, *open*
793. impediō, *hinder*
794. eō, *go*
795. adeō, *go to, visit*
796. ineō, *go into, undertake*
797. intereō, *perish*
798. periō, *go through, perish*
799. redeō, *go back, return*
800. trānseō, *go across, cross*
801. ferō, *bear, bring, carry*
802. afferō, *bring to*
803. cōnferō, *bring together, collect, transport*
804. dēferō, *carry away, report*
805. differō, *be different, differ, postpone*
806. īnferō, *bring in, bring against*
807. offerō, *bring against, offer*
808. perferō, *bear through, endure, announce*
809. referō, *bring back, report*
810. fīō, *be made, happen, become*
811. malō, *prefer*
812. nōlō, *be unwilling*
813. volō, *be willing, wish*
814. admīror, *wonder*
815. pābulor, *forage*
816. populor, *lay waste, ravage*
817. nancīscor, *obtain*
818. metior, *measure out, distribute*

Nouns

819. ancora, *anchor*
820. angustiae, *narrowness, defile, pass*
821. aquila, *eagle*
822. contrōversia, *dispute, quarrel*
823. contumēlia, *insult*
824. disciplīna, *training, discipline*
825. fidūcia, *confidence*
826. īnsidiae, *ambush, treachery*
827. littera, *letter (of the alphabet)* (plur., *a letter, letters*)
828. māteria, *timber*
829. mora, *delay*
830. perfidia, *treachery*
831. praeda, *prey, booty*
832. vigilia, *night watch, guard*

833. **cibus,** *food*
834. **colloquium,** *conference*
835. **concilium,** *calling together, meeting*
836. **dētrīmentum,** *loss*
837. **hīberna,** *winter quarters*
838. **intervāllum,** *space between walls, interval*
839. **mandātum,** *commission*
840. **mūrus,** (*town*) *wall*
841. **nūntius,** *news, message, messenger*
842. **pābulum,** *fodder*
843. **pīlum,** *spear*
844. **praefectus,** *captain, commander*
845. **respōnsum,** *answer*
846. **sagittārius,** *archer*
847. **saxum,** *rock*
848. **scūtum,** *shield*
849. **stīpendium,** *payment, tax, campaign*
850. **studium,** *eagerness*
851. **tormentum,** *military engine*
852. **tribūnus,** *tribune*
853. **tumulus,** *small hill, mound*
854. **ventus,** *wind*
855. **vinculum,** *bond, fetter*
856. **aes,** *copper, bronze, money*
857. **agger,** *mound, rampart, causeway*
858. **dēditiō,** *surrender*
859. **dēfēnsor,** *defender*
860. **eques,** *horseman, knight* (plur., *cavalry*)
861. **ēruptiō,** *breaking out, sally*
862. **exercitātiō,** *training*
863. **explōrātor,** *scout*
864. **factiō,** *party, faction*
865. **funditor,** *slinger*
866. **iūs iurandum,** *oath*
867. **lapis,** *stone*
868. **latus,** *side*
869. **lītus,** *coast, shore, beach*
870. **mercātor,** *trader*
871. **mulier,** *woman*
872. **mūnus,** *task, duty, service, offering*
873. **obsidiō,** *siege*
874. **occāsiō,** *opportunity*
875. **onus,** *burden*
876. **oppugnātiō,** *assault*
877. **palūs,** *swamp, marsh*
878. **pecus** (**-oris**), *cattle*
879. **pedes,** *foot soldier*
880. **prex,** *prayer*
881. **profectiō,** *departure*
882. **pulvis,** *dust*
883. **servitūs,** *slavery*
884. **sponte suā,** *of one's own will, voluntarily*
885. **statiō,** *outpost, picket*
886. **tempestās,** *period of time, weather, storm*
887. **voluntās,** *willingness, good will*
888. **classis,** *fleet*
889. **fāmēs,** *hunger, starvation*
890. **frōns** (**-tis**) *forehead, front*
891. **īgnis,** *fire*
892. **turris,** *tower*
893. **vallēs,** *valley*
894. **aestus,** *heat, tide*
895. **ēventus,** *outcome, result*
896. **prīncipātus,** *leadership*
897. **rēs mīlitāris,** *warfare*
898. **speciēs,** *appearance*

Adjectives, Pronouns

899. **captīvus,** *captive, prisoner*
900. **cōnfertus,** *crowded together, dense*
901. **continuus,** *unbroken*
902. **cotīdiānus,** *daily*
903. **dēfessus,** *tired out*
904. **exiguus,** *limited, little*
905. **fērus,** *wild, fierce*
906. **invītus,** *against one's will*
907. **onerārius,** *suitable for burden, transport (ship)*
908. **oppidānus,** *of the town, townsman*
909. **opportūnus,** *at the right time, suitable*
910. **plerīque,** *the greater part, majority*
911. **prīstinus,** *former, of old*
912. **quiētus,** *rest, peaceful*
913. **repentīnus,** *sudden*
914. **tardus,** *slow*
915. **vacuus,** *empty*
916. **citerior,** *this side of, hither*
917. **dēclīvis,** *sloping down*
918. **equester,** *of a horseman, equestrian*
919. **incolumis,** *unharmed*
920. **inermis,** *unarmed*
921. **interior,** *inner*
922. **pedester,** *of a footsoldier, on foot*
923. **tot,** *so many*
924. **totidem,** *just as many*
925. **aliquis,** *some, any*
926. **quīcumque,** *whoever*
927. **quīdam,** *a certain one, some one*
928. **quisquam,** *any one at all*
929. **quisque,** *each one*
930. **contrā,** *against, opposite*
931. **praeter,** *along past, beside*
932. **admodum,** *very, very much*
933. **adversus,** (*turned toward*) *facing*
934. **clam,** *secretly*
935. **cōnfestim,** *promptly*
936. **cotīdiē,** *every day, daily*
937. **deinde,** *thereupon, next*
938. **ferē,** *almost, about, generally*
939. **frūstrā,** *in vain*
940. **grātis,** *for nothing*
941. **intereā,** *meanwhile*
942. **nōndum,** *not yet*
943. **omnīnō,** *altogether, at all*
944. **paene,** *almost*
945. **partim,** *partly*
946. **paulātim,** *little by little*
947. **paulisper,** *for a little while*
948. **paulō,** (*by*) *a little*
949. **paulum,** (*for*) *a little*
950. **postrīdiē,** *the day after, next day*
951. **praesertim,** *particularly*
952. **praetereā,** *besides this, moreover*
953. **prīdiē,** *on the day before*
954. **prīmō,** *at first*
955. **prīmum,** *first*
956. **procul,** *afar*
957. **quoque,** *also, too*
958. **repente,** *suddenly*
959. **rūrsus,** (*turned back*) *again*
960. **sicut (sicuti),** *just as*
961. **simul,** *together, at the same time*
962. **statim,** *at once, immediately*
963. **subitō,** *suddenly*
964. **ultrō,** *beyond, unasked, voluntarily*
965. **ūnā,** *together*

966. **undique,** *from (on) all sides*
967. **ūsque,** *up to*
968. **vix,** *barely, scarcely*
969. **an,** *or* (in a question)
970. **at,** *but*
971. **nēve** (**neu**), *and that not*
972. **postquam** (**posteaquam**), (*later than*) *after*
973. **priusquam,** (*sooner than*) *before, until*
974. **quīn,** *indeed,* (*but*) *that* (with negative expressions of doubt)
975. **quod sī,** *but if, and if*
976. **quominus,** (*that less*) *lest*
977. **sī quis,** *if any, whoever*
978. **vel,** *or*

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

A., abbr. for **Aulus.**

a.d., ante diem.

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl. of place, *from, away from, at, on;* of agency with pass., *by;* **ab utrōque latere,** *on both sides;* **ā puerō,** *from boyhood;* **capit initium ā,** *begins at;* **ā tantō spatiō,** *so far away;* **ā sinistrō cornū,** *on the left wing.*

abditus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***abdō***], adj., *remote, concealed.*

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *put away, hide;* **sē abdere** with **in** and acc., *take refuge among.*

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, take away, carry off.*

abeō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itūrus,** *go away, depart, retire.*

abesse, see **absum.**

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw away, cast aside, throw down, lay down* (arms).

abiēs, -ietis, f., *spruce, fir* (tree).

abrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break off, sever.*

abs, see **ab.**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut off, cut away, lop off, tear off, tear away.*

abscīsus, -a, um, p. p. of ***abscīdō.***

abscondō, -condere, -condī, -conditus, tr., *hide away, conceal.*

absēns, -entis, pres. p. of ***absum,*** *absent, away.*

absimilis, -e, adj., *unlike.*

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, *stand away, hold aloof, withdraw.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *abstain, refrain; keep away, hold back.*

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *drag away, draw away.*

abstulī, see **auferō.**

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant, be wanting.*

Absyrtus, -ī, m., brother of Medea.

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *abound in, overflow, be supplied.*

ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *move toward, approach, draw near.*

accidō, -cidere, -cidī [***ad*** + ***cadō***], *happen, befall, occur, fall to the lot of;* **accidit,** *it happened.*

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [***ad*** + ***caedō***], *cut into.*

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take, receive, accept, get; suffer, undergo; hear of.*

acclīvis, -e, *sloping upward, ascending, steep.*

acclīvitās, -ātis, f., *slope, ascent.*

Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones who was executed by Caesar.

accommodātus, -a, -um, adj., *fitted, suited, adapted.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adjust, accommodate, fit.*

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, *recline at table, dine, lie.*

accūrātē, adv., *with accuracy, carefully.*

accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī,** *run to, rush to, ride up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame, accuse, censure.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *keen, sharp, shrill, spirited.*

acerbē, adv., *bitterly, harshly.*

acerbitās, -ātis, f., *severity, bitterness, pain, suffering.*

acerbus, -a, -um, adj., *bitter, sharp, harsh.*

ācerrimē, superl. of **ācriter.**

acervus, -ī, m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *point, sharp edge; battle line, army in battle line.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely, eagerly.*

āctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***agō.***

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *sharpen.*

acūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharp, pointed, sharpened.*

ad, adv., *about.*

ad, prep. with acc., with words implying motion, *to, up to, toward, against;* with words not implying motion, *near, in the vicinity of, among, with, at;* with numerals, *up to, as many as;* with gerund and gerundive, *for, in order that, for the purpose of.*

adāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***adigō.***

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *make equal to, be equal.*

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fall in love with, take a fancy to, covet.*

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *put to, add to, join.*

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, bring to, take to, draw to, tighten; induce, influence.*

adductus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***addūcō,*** *led on, induced.*

adēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***adimō.***

adeō, adv., *to that degree, thus far, so far, even, so much.*

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, visit, attack, accost.*

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, *ride toward.*

adfectus, p. p. of ***adficiō.***

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring to, bring, carry to; announce, report; cause.*

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do* (something) *to, visit with, affect, afflict, treat;* **suppliciō adficere,** *punish;* **beneficiō adfectus,** *treated with kindness;* **magnō dolōre adficī,** *be filled with great discontent, be very dissatisfied.*

adfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *attach, fasten to.*

adfingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictus, *make up in addition, add untruthfully.*

adfīnitās, -ātis, f., *relationship by marriage, alliance.*

adfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *assert, claim.*

adfīxus, p. p. of ***adfīgō.***

adflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wreck, dash against, shatter.*

adflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *strike against, damage, wreck;* **adflictus,** *cast down, damaged, sad.*

adfore, see **adsum.**

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus, *walk toward, approach, attack.*

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *add to the flock, collect, attach, join.*

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī, -haesūrus, *cling to, stick to.*

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, *have at hand, exhibit, show; employ, use; call in, admit.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [***ad*** + ***hortor***], *encourage, exhort, arouse, urge.*

adhūc, adv., *up to this time, hitherto, still.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., a leader of the Sotiates.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw to, hurl; build up, throw up* (**agger**); **adiectā plānitiē,** *a plain adjoining.*

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***adiciō.***

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive to, drive in; move up* (towers); *bring near, force, bind* (by oath).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *take to one's self; remove, take away.*

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, a going to, entrance, access.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *add, join to, attach, unite with.*

adiūtor, -ōris, m., *helper, assistant.*

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *support, help, assist, be of use.*

adlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***adferō.***

adligō, -ligāre, -ligāvī, -ligātus, *tie to, fasten to, bind to.*

administer, -trī, m., *helper, assistant, priest.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *manage, direct, carry out.*

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, *wonder at, be astonished at.*

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *let in, admit, allow, permit, incur.*

admodum, adv., *to a degree, very much, to the limit;* with numerals, *at least, fully, about.*

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, tr., *advise, warn, admonish, remind.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, *grow up, grow to maturity.*

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, *rise against, attack.*

adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pray to, reverence, worship, adore.*

adortus, p. p. of ***adorior.***

adpāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī, -pāritūrus, *become visible, be visible, appear.*

adparō, -āre, -avī, -ātus, *prepare, provide, get ready.*

adpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive to, bring to; bring to land, land.*

adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *seek to get, desire, approach, aim at.*

adplicō, -āre, -āvī (**uī**), **-ātus** (**itus**), *fasten to, lean against.*

adpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place near, set before, serve* (food).

adprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approve, approve of.*

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, *approach, draw near.*

adpulsus, p. p. of ***adpellō.***

adquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, *become quiet, rest, die.*

adripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, *seize, snatch.*

adroganter, adv., *insolently.*

adrogantia, -ae, f., *arrogance, insolence.*

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *join to, attach, receive, admit.*

adsiduus, -a, -um, adj., *continual, constant, perpetual.*

adsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *stand by, be present.*

adspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, appearance.*

adspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look on, look at, behold.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *train, inure, accustom.*

adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, suētus, *become accustomed to; accustom one.*

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present, be near, be at hand, assist, help.*

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe.

adulēscēns, -entis, adj., *young;* as noun, m. and f., *a youth, young man, young woman;* with proper names, *the younger, junior.*

adulēscentia, -ae, f., *youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī, m., *very young man, a mere boy.*

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come toward, draw near, approach, arrive at, advance.*

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*

adversārius, -a, -um, adj., *opposed, hostile;* as noun, **adversārius, -ī,** m., *enemy, rival, opponent.*

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned toward, opposite, opposing, in front of.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against, opposed to.*

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *turn to, turn toward;* **animum advertere,** *direct one's attention to, notice, attend to.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly to, hasten to.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *construct a building, build, erect.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

Aeētēs, -ae (acc. **Aeētēn**), m., king of Colchis.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *ill, sick, feeble, disabled.*

aegerrimē, superl. of **aegrē.**

aegrē, adv., *barely, scarcely, regretfully, with difficulty, sorrowfully, with disappointment;* **rem aegrē ferre,** *dislike, resent, be indignant.*

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius,* a decurion of Gallic cavalry in Caesar's army.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, f., *rivalry, jealousy.*

aēneus, -ā, -um, adj., *of bronze, copper.*

aequāliter, adv., *evenly, uniformly.*

aequē, adv., *equally.*

aequinoctium, -ī, n., *equinox, the time of the equinox.*

aequitās, -ātis, f., *justice, equality, fairness;* **animī aequitās,** *tranquillity of mind.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make level, equalize, put on a level.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, even, fair; just;* **aequō animō,** *calmly, with equanimity;* **aequō Marte,** *on equal terms.*

āēr, āeris (acc. sing. **āera**), m., *air.*

aerāria, -ae, f., *copper mine, mine.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper, money;* **aes aliēnum,** *debt, another's money.*

Aesōn, -onis, m., father of Jason.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., *valuation, value, price.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *estimate, value, judge, consider.*

aestuārium, -ī, n., *estuary, marsh.*

aestus, -ūs, m., *heat, swelling, tide.*

aetās, -ātis, f., *age, period of life, time.*

Africa, -ae, f., *Africa.*

Africus, -a, -um, adj., *of Africa, African;* as noun, **Africus, -ī,** m., *the southwest wind.*

āfuisse, āfutūrus, from **absum.**

Agēdincum, -ī, m., chief town of the Senones, now Sens.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, district;* **ex agrīs,** *from the country.*

agger, -eris, m., *mound of earth, brushwood, and timbers; rampart, wall.*

agilis, -e, adj., *nimble, active, busy.*

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set in motion, vex; propose, discuss.*

agmen, -inis, n., *marching column, army;* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear;* **prīmum agmen,** *the van.*

agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus, *recognize, identify.*

agnus, -ī, m., *lamb.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *set in motion, act, do, conduct, drive, negotiate, argue, discuss, treat, plead;* with **subliciās,** *drive down;* with **vīneās, turrēs,** etc., *set in motion, push up;* with **grātiās,** *render, give;* **quid agitur,** *what is going on?* **bellum agere,** *to wage war.*

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer.*

āla, -ae, f., *wing.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *quick, eager, active, lively, spirited.*

alacritās, -ātis, f., *eagerness, readiness, energy, spirit.*

ālārius, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to wings, stationed on the wings;* as noun, m. plur., *allies, auxiliaries.*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.*

Alesia, -ae, f., a fortified town of the Mandubii, west of Dijon, now Alise St. Reine.

aliās, adv., *at another time;* **aliās . . . aliās,** *now . . . now; at one time . . . at another.*

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *alienate, estrange.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to another, hostile, strange, unfavorable.*

aliō, adv., *elsewhere, in another place.*

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.*

aliquandō, adv., *at length, at some time.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., *considerable, some, somewhat.*

aliquantum, -ī, n., *a good deal, something.*

aliquis (quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pro. or adj., *someone, anyone, anybody; something, anything;* plur., *some, any.*

aliquot, indecl. adj., *a few, some, several.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise;* **aliter ac,** *otherwise than.*

alius, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other;* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another;* **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others;* **alius atque (ac),** *other than.*

Allobrogēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people living in the province, southwest of Lake Geneva.

alō, alere, aluī, altus, *feed, nourish.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur., the *Alps.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj., *one of two, the other of two; another, the second;* **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.*

alternus, -a, -um, adj., *alternate, one after the other.*

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth, thickness* (of timber).

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*

alūta, -ae, f., *leather.*

amābilis, -e, adj., *worthy to be loved, amiable.*

ambactus, -ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling on the Arar (Saône).

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, m., an able leader of the Eburones.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe living west of the Mosa (Meuse).

ambō, -ae, -ō, adj., *both.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -atūrus, intr., *walk.*

āmentia, -ae [*ā* + *mēns*], f., *insanity, madness, frenzy.*

āmentum, -ī, n., *thong, strap.*

amīcē, adv., *in friendly manner.*

amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um [p. p. of *amō*], adj., *friendly.*

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend, ally.*

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go, let slip, let pass, send away, lose.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like.*

amor, -ōris, m., *affection, love;* **Amor,** a name for Cupid, the god of love.

amplē, adv., *fully, richly.*

amplectus, -a, -um, m., *embracing.*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enlarge, increase, extend.*

amplitūdō, -inis, f., *size, extent, greatness.*

amplus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, wide, distinguished, noble;* neuter comp. **amplius** (as a noun), *more, a greater number.*

an, conj., begins the second member of a double question, *or;* **ūtrum (nē) . . . an,** *whether . . . or.*

Ancalitēs, -um, m., a tribe of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, adj., *two-headed, double, uncertain;* **anceps proelium,** *battle on two fronts.*

ancora, -ae, f., *anchor;* **in ancorīs,** *at anchor.*

Andebrogius, -ī, m., a chief of the Remi.

Andēs, -ium, m. plur., a Gallic tribe living north of the Liger (Loire).

Andī, -orum, same as **Andēs.**

angulus, -ī, m., *corner.*

angustē, adv., *narrowly, in narrow quarters.*

angustiae, -ārum, f. plur., *narrowness, defile, pass; difficulty.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, confined, cramped.*

anima, -ae [cf. *animus*], f., *breath, life, soul* (in plur.).

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *attend to, notice;* **animadvertere in,** *to punish.*

animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*

animus, -ī, m., *soul, spirit, feelings, ambition, pride, intellect, mind, resolution, courage.*

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., *of the year before, a year old.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um, adj., *yearly, lasting for a year, annual.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before;* **ante lūcem,** *before dawn;* adv., *before, previously, earlier;* **paulō ante,** *a little before;* **paucīs ante diēbus,** *a few days before.*

anteā, adv., *previously, formerly, before, once.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *go before, precede, advance, move forward; surpass, excel.*

antecellō, -cellere, *excel, surpass.*

antecursor, -ōris, m., *harbinger, courier.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *place ahead, prefer.*

antemna, -ae, f., *sail-yard, spar.*

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *prefer, place before, consider more important.*

antequam, adv., *before;* sometimes separated: **ante . . . quam.**

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *place before, prefer.*

antīquitus, adv., *from olden times, of old, long ago, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, early, very old.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj., *troubled, distressed, anxious.*

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, *open, unclose, uncover, find out.*

apertē, adv., *openly, publicly.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, unprotected, exposed;* **latus apertum,** *the exposed flank* (of an army).

Apollō, -inis, m., the son of Jupiter and Latona; the god of the sun, of poetry, of music, of healing; identified by Caesar with a Gallic god of healing.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *name, accost, address, call, summon.*

appropinquō, see **adpropinquō.**

Apr., abbr. for **Aprīlis.**

Aprīlis, -e, adj., *of April;* as noun, **Aprīlis,** *April.*

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *adapted, suitable.*

apud, prep. with acc., *at, near, with, by; among, in the presence of, at the home of, at the camp of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting water.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle,* the standard of a Roman legion.

Aquilēia, -ae, f., a Gallic city near the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, -erī, m., *a standard bearer.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Aquitania;* as noun, in plur., **Aquītānī,** *Aquitanians.*

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

Arar, -aris, m., *the Arar* (now Saône), flowing into the Rhone.

arbiter, -trī, m., *judge, mediator.*

arbitrium, -ī, n., *will, judgment, opinion.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *decide, think, consider, judge.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus, *call, invite, summon.*

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on fire, be hot, be eager, be excited.*

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *high, steep, difficult.*

Arecomicī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Volcae in the Roman province.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver, silverware.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.*

Argō, Agrūs (acc. **Argō**), f., the *Argo,* Jason's ship.

Argonautae, -ārum, m. plur., sailors of the *Argo, Argonauts.*

Argus, -ī, m., builder of the *Argo.*

āridus, -a, -um, adj., *dry.*

āridum, -ī, n., *dry land.*

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram, a battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., chief of the Germans.

arma, -ōrum (plur. only), n., *arms, equipment;* **armīs iūs exsequī,** *to maintain one's right by force of arms.*

armāmenta, -ōrum, n., *implements, tackle, rigging* (of a ship).

armātūra, -ae, f., *armor, equipment;* **levis armātūrae,** *light-armed.*

armātus, -a, -um, adj., *armed, equipped.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *equip, arm, furnish.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow, till.*

Arpīnēius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name.

ars, artis, f., *skill, art; handicraft, workmanship;* plur., *useful arts, crafts.*

artē, adv., *rightly, closely, securely.*

articulus, -ī, m., *joint.*

artificium, -ī, n., *trade, craft, artifice, skill.*

artus, -a, -um, adj., *close, thick.*

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni;* as noun, m. plur., **Arvernī,** a Gallic tribe.

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, citadel.*

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *mount, climb, ascend;* **nāvem ascendere,** *to board a ship, embark.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, m., *ascent, a going up.*

at, conj., *but, but yet, at least.*

Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens,* capital of Attica, in Greece.

atque (**ac,** not used before a vowel or **h**), conj., *and, and also; as, than;* **simul atque,** *as soon as;* **alius atque,** *other than.*

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatian;* m. plur., **Atrebātēs,** a Belgian tribe.

ātrium, -ī, n., *main hall, atrium.*

Ātrius, -ī, m., *Atrius,* a Roman name.

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *weave on, join by weaving.*

attingō, -tingere, tigī, -tāctus, tr., *touch, border on, reach, stretch to.*

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, allot to.*

attulī, see **adferō.**

auctor, -ōris, m., *advocate, voucher, authority.*

auctōritās, -ātis, f., *authority, power, influence, prestige.*

auctus, -a, -um, *increased;* comp. **auctior,** *greater, richer.*

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, daring.*

audācter, adv., *daringly, boldly.*

audāx, audācis, adj., *daring, bold, fearless.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare, venture, risk.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear, hear of, heed.*

audītiō, -ōnis [*audiō*], f., *hearing, hearsay, report.*

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, *take away, remove.*

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *flee, escape, run away.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, enlarge;* pass., *increase, grow.*

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an Aulercan;* m. plur., **Aulercī,** a Gallic people consisting of several tribes.

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden, gold.*

aurīga, -ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, f., *ear.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Auscī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***audeō.***

aut, conj., *or, either.*

autem, conj., *moreover, furthermore, however, but now, yet.*

auxiliāris, -e, adj., *auxiliary, supporting;* as noun, m. plur., **auxiliārēs,** *auxiliary troops.*

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, *give aid, help.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help, assistance, relief, auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricum, -ī, n., a town of the Bituriges.

avāritia, -ae, f., *avarice, greed.*

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *bear away, carry away.*

āversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned away, in the rear, retreating.*

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *turn away, avert, turn aside.*

avis, -is, f., *bird.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, now the Aisne.

B

Bācēnis, -is, f., the name of a forest in Germany, the western part of what is now called the Thuringian Forest.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion under Caesar.

Baleāris, -e, adj., *Balearic,* pertaining to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranian.

balteus, -ī, m., *belt.*

Balventius, -ī, m., *Balventius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

barba, -ae, f., *beard.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous, uncivilized;* as plur. noun, *savages, barbarians.*

Basilus, -ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* an officer under Caesar.

Batāvī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe living near the mouth of the Rhine.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, fortunate, blessed.*

Belgae, -ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians* or *Belgae.*

Belgicus, -a, -um, adj., *Belgic, Belgian, of the Belgians.*

Belgium, -ī, n., *Belgium,* the country of the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike, war-loving.*

bellicus, -a, -um, adj., *of war, relating to war.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wage war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. plur., a very powerful tribe of the Belgae.

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

bene, adv., *well.*

beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness, favor, service, benefit.*

benevolentia, -ae, f., *good will, kindness, friendliness.*

benignē, adv., *kindly, in a kindly manner.*

Bibracte, -is, n., the chief town of the Haedui.

Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi.

bīduum, -ī, n., *two days.*

biennium, -ī, n., *two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

bīnī, -ae, -a [*bis*], distrib. adj., *two by two, two at a time.*

bipartītō, adv., *in two divisions.*

bipedālis, -e, adj., *two-foot; two feet* (wide, long, thick).

bis, num. adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of central Gaul.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Nervii.

Bōiī, Bōiōrum, m. plur., a Celtic tribe.

bonitās, -ātis, f., *goodness, fertility* (of land), *richness.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good, useful, excellent, well-disposed.*

bonum, -ī, n., *profit, advantage, good;* plur., **bona, -ōrum,** *property, goods.*

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *bull, ox, cow;* plur., *cattle.*

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm.*

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci.

brevis, -e, adj., *short* (of space or time).

brevitās, -ātis, f., *shortness, brevity, short stature.*

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *British, of Britain.*

brūma, -ae, f., *shortest day, winter solstice.*

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus,* an able legate under Caesar.

C

C, *one hundred.*

C., abbr., **Gāius,** *Gaius, Caius.*

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus,* a Gaul of Roman citizenship.

cadāver, -eris, n., *dead body, corpse, body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall, be slain, be killed.*

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

Cadūrcus, -ī, m., *a Cadurcan.*

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*

caedēs, -is, f., *a cutting down, slaughter, murder.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, cut down, kill, slay.*

caelestis, -e, adj., *heavenly;* **caelestēs, -ium,** m. plur., *gods.*

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens, heaven.*

Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a Germanic tribe in Belgic Gaul.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *sacred rite.*

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., *dark blue, blue.*

Caesar, -aris, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar,* a great Roman general and author of the Gallic War; *Lucius Julius Caesar,* kinsman and lieutenant under Caesar.

caespes, -itis, m., *turf that has been cut, sod.*

caesus, p. p. of **caedō.**

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat, misfortune, loss.*

calceus, -ī, m., *sandal, shoe.*

Caletī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe, living on the Sequana River.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., *cunning, shrewd, experienced, skilful.*

cālō, -ōnis, m., *servant, camp follower.*

campester, -tris, -tre, adj., *plain, level, flat.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level place, open field.*

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus, *sing.*

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, adj., *relating to the Cantabrians.*

Cantabrī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Northern Spain.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Kent,* a district in southeastern Britain.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *chant, sing.*

cantus, -ūs, m., *song.*

capillus, -ī, m., *hair of the head, hair.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, tr., *take, catch, seize, capture, get, receive; take possession of, occupy; deceive;* **fugam capere,** *to take (to) flight, to flee;* **initium capere,** *to begin;* **locum capere,** *to select a place;* **portum capere,** *to make port.*

capra, -ae [*caper*], f., *she-goat, goat.*

captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *captured;* as noun, **captīvus, -ī,** m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, -ūs, m., *capacity, standard, nature, idea.*

caput, -itis, n., *head, person, life, mouth* (of a river); **capitis poena,** *death penalty, capital punishment;* **capitis perīculō,** *at the risk of life;* **capite dēmissō,** *with bowed head.*

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lack, be without, be deprived of.*

carīna, -ae, f., *keel, bottom* (of a boat).

carmen, -inis, n., *song, chant.*

Carnutēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people to the north of the Liger (Loire).

carō, carnis, f., *meat, flesh.*

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, gather; find fault with, censure.*

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon, cart.*

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious, beloved, valuable.*

Carvilius, -ī, m., a British chieftain and king.

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cottage;* plur., *huts, barracks.*

cāseus, -ī, *m., cheese.*

Cassī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Britain.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Cassius;* **bellum** (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, f., *helmet* (metal).

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., a British chief.

castellum, -ī, n., *fortress, fort, redoubt.*

Casticus, -ī, m., a leader of the Sequani.

Castor, -ōris, m., *Castor,* twin brother of Pollux, became one of the stars in the constellation.

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *happening, event, accident, fall, trouble, chance, fortune;* **cāsū,** *by chance.*

Catamantāloedēs, -is, m., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain, fetter;* **in catēnās conicere,** *to throw into prison.*

Caturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Roman Gaul.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, excuse, ground, motive, purpose;* **satis causae,** *sufficient (of) reason;* in abl., following a gen., *for the sake of liberty;* **quam ob causam,** *for what (which, this) reason.*

cautē, adv., *cautiously.*

cautēs, -is, f., *reef, sharp rock.*

cautus, p. p. of ***caveō.***

Cavarillus, -ī, m., a leader of the Haedui.

caveō, cavēre, cavī, cautus, *beware, be on one's guard, give security;* **obsidibus inter sē cavēre,** *to give security to one another by exchanging hostages.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, intr., *retire, move, retreat, give way, go, yield.*

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *throng, crowd; honor, celebrate.*

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, fast, quick, sudden.*

celeritās, -ātis, f., *speed, swiftness, rapidity, quickness.*

celeriter, adv., *swiftly, quickly, speedily;* superl., **celerrimē; quam celerrimē,** *as quickly as possible.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal, hide, cover.*

Celtae, -ārum, m. plur., *the Celts,* a race dwelling in Gaul and Britain.

Celtillus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner.*

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, m. plur., people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -ī, n., a city on the Liger (Loire), the modern Orléans.

cēnāculum, -ī, n., *dining room.*

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m., a British tribe.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *estimate, think, be of the opinion, determine, decide, decree, vote.*

cēnsus, -ūs, m., *census, count.*

centaurus, -ī, m., *centaur* (fabled creature, half man and half horse).

centum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion, captain,* an officer in command of a **centuria,** in Caesar's army, about sixty men.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *separate; distinguish, see, perceive.*

certāmen, -inis, n., *contest, struggle, rivalry, strife.*

certē, adv., *surely, certainly, at least.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain, sure, definite, decided; reliable, trustworthy; undoubted;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed;* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform.*

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *the rest, all the rest.*

Ceutronēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in the Alps.

Cevenna, -ae, f., *the Cevennes,* a mountain range in southern Gaul.

Chēruscī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

cibārius, -a, -um, adj., *relating to food;* as noun, n. plur., **cibāria,** *food, provisions;* with **molita,** *meal, ground corn.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* a legate under Caesar in Gaul, brother of the orator.

Cimberius, -ī, m., a leader of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German people who invaded Gaul in the second century B.C.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, m., a leader of the British troops in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, enclose, invest.*

cinis, cineris, m., *ashes.*

circinus, -ī, m., *a pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv., *nearly, about;* prep. with acc., *around, about.*

circuitus, -ūs, m., *circuit, detour.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut, cut around, cut out.*

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *enclose, surround, encircle.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *put around, surround.*

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead around, draw around.*

circumeō, -īre, -īvī (**-iī**), **-itus,** *go around; make the round, visit.*

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour around;* pass., *surround, rush around.*

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw around, place around.*

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send around.*

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify, protect, enclose.*

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, *stand around, rally around, beset, hem in.*

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look around for, look around at, examine.*

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *surround with a wall, blockade.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround, beset; cheat, impose upon.*

cis, prep. with acc., *this side, on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, adj., *on this* (the Roman) *side of the Alps, Cisalpine;* **Gallia Cisalpīna,** now northern Italy.

Cita, -ae, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight.

cītātus, -a, -um, adj., *swift, rapid;* **citātus fertur,** *flows swiftly.*

citerior, -ius, adj., *on this* (the Roman) *side, nearer;* **Gallia citerior,** *Cisalpine Gaul.*

citharoedus, -ī, m., *harpist, bard, minstrel.*

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put in quick motion, urge on, hurry.*

citō, adv., *quickly;* superl., **citissimē,** *very quickly.*

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, adv., *to this side, hither;* **ultrō citrōque,** *back and forth.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen, fellow citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f., *state, city, citizenship.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep shouting.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *loud cry, shout, uproar.*

clandestīnus, -a, -um, adj., *secret, hidden.*

clārē, adv., *clearly, brightly, distinctly.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *clear, bright; loud, famous.*

classis, -is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, -ī, m., *Appius Claudius Pulcher,* consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *close, shut, confine, enclose;* with **agmen,** *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī, m., *nail, spike.*

clēmentia, -ae, f., *mildness, indulgence, kindness, mercy.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *vassal, retainer, dependent.*

clientēla, -ae, f., *clientship, vassalage.*

Clōdius, -ī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher,* a tribune, slain by Milo,

Cn., abbr. for **Gnaeus**, a Roman praenomen.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pile up, heap together.*

coāctus, p. p. of ***cōgō.***

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *press together.*

Cocosātēs, -um, m., a tribe of Aquitania.

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy up, purchase.*

coëō, -īre, -iī, irr., intr., *unite, come together, meet.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began, undertook.*

coerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, *restrain, hold in check.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think over, consider; intend.*

cognātiō, -ōnis, f., *kinship, connection by birth, family, clan.*

cognitus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***cognōscō.***

cognōmen, -inis, n., *cognomen,* family name.

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *learn, become acquainted with, notice, find out, recognize, investigate;* in perf. tense, *know.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *bring together, collect; force, compel.*

cohors, -hortis, f., *cohort, company, tenth part of a legion.*

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., *encouragement, exhortation.*

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, *cheer, encourage, arouse, incite.*

Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur., the inhabitants of Colchis.

Colchis, -idis (acc. **Colchida**), f., a country in Asia, east of the Black Sea.

collis, -is, m., *hill.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, till, inhabit; cherish, worship.*

color, -ōris, m., *hue, color.*

columba, -ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *burn up.*

comes, -itis, m. and f., *companion.*

comitia, -ōrum, n., *place of assembly* (in the Forum), *assembly, election;* **proximīs comitiīs,** *at the last election.*

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, *accompany, attend, escort.*

commeātus, -ūs, m., *trip, supplies, provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *remember, recall, call to mind, mention, state.*

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *commend, intrust, commit, surrender.*

commeō, āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go back and forth, resort.*

commīlitō, -ōnis, m., *fellow soldier, comrade.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus, *thoroughly mix together.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *bring together, join, begin* (**proelium**); *intrust, trust, commit, admit.*

Commius, -ī, m., a chief of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., *conveniently, comfortably, readily;* **nōn satis commodē,** *not very comfortably.*

commodum, -ī, n., *convenience, advantage, profit.*

commodus, -a, -um, adj., *fitting, agreeable, convenient, suitable, favorable.*

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *remind.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, stay, linger.*

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move, affect, influence, arouse, alarm, excite.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *communicate, impart, acquaint, consult.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify on all sides; make secure.*

commūnis, -e, adj., *in common, general, common;* **rēs commūnis,** *the common interest.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change, exchange.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, exchange, alter;* **studium bellī agricultūrā commūtāre,** *to exchange the pursuit of war for agriculture.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready, prepare, procure, gain, arrange.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *compare, match.*

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *collect, drive together, drive, compel.*

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, *ascertain, learn, find out.*

compertus, -a, -um, adj., *established, certain.*

complector, -plectī, -plexus, *embrace, enclose, include.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill, fill up; cover, man* (walls).

complūrēs, -plura, adj., plur., *a good many, many, several.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring together, gather, collect, bring in.*

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *capture, seize, lay hold of, arrest; catch* (with **īgnem**).

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sanction, approve.*

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***compellō.***

cōnātum, -ī, n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt, undertaking.*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *permit, allow; yield, grant.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidī [***com*** + ***cadō***], intr., *fall, fall down, fall in a heap; perish.*

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [***com*** + ***caedō***], tr., *cut to pieces, cut down, kill; intersect.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring together, win over, gain.*

concilium, -ī, n., *meeting, assembly, council, conference.*

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***concīdō.***

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rouse, excite, stir up, cause.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shout, cry out, call.*

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *enclose, shut up.*

conclūsus, -a, -um, adj., *shut in, enclosed, confined.*

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

concurrō, -currere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursūrus,** *run together, dash together; rally, run to the rescue; unite.*

concursus, -ūs, m., *running together, conflict, encounter, onset, attack.*

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn, convict, declare guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms, proposal; situation.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *forgive, pardon, remit out of regard for.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe of German origin.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead together, assemble, hire.*

cōnferciō, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertus, *crowd together, press together.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together, collect, convey; compare;* **culpam cōnferre,** *ascribe the blame;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake one's self, retreat.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., *compact, crowded, huddled together.*

cōnfestim, adv., *in haste, at once, instantly.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do thoroughly, accomplish, perform; finish; exhaust;* of time, pass., *spend;* of troops, *muster, bring together, furnish, dress.*

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus, *trust, rely on, have confidence in.*

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *fasten together, fasten.*

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assertion, confirmation, assurance.*

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make strong, strengthen; confirm, establish; assure, console, encourage; fix.*

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, adj., *trusting in, relying on.*

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, *confess, admit.*

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***cōnfīgō.***

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be in flames, burn.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *strike together, dash together, fight, contend.*

cōnfluēns, -entis, m., *flowing together* (of rivers), *confluence.*

congredior, -gredī, -gressus, *come together, meet, unite with; engage, fight with.*

congressus, -ūs, m., *encounter, meeting.*

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw together, hurl, cast; rout, put;* **in fugam conicere,** *put to flight;* **in vincula conicere,** *put in irons.*

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***coniciō.***

coniūnctim, adv., *jointly, in common.*

coniūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *connected, allied, united.*

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, connect, fasten.*

coniūnx, -iugis, f., *wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, confederacy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take oath together, plot, conspire.*

conlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***cōnferō.***

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise highly, commend, laud.*

conlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***conligō.***

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [***com*** + ***ligō,*** *tie*], *bind together, tie together, fasten together.*

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [***com*** + ***legō,*** *gather*], *gather together, collect, get together; acquire, infer, conclude;* **sē conligere,** *collect one's self.*

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *station, place, put, arrange; give* (in marriage).

conloquium, -ī, n., *interview, conference, parley.*

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, *talk together, converse, confer.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *attempt, endeavor, try.*

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *seek for, search for, gather, hunt up.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj., *related by blood, kindred;* as noun in plur., *kinsmen.*

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *climb, mount, go on board* (a ship), *embark.*

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *decree, decide;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** *to decree death to one's self, commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, adj., *aware;* **sibi cōnscius,** *conscious.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *enlist, enroll, levy; compose* (**epistulam**).

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, adj., *sacred, consecrated.*

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus, *go in pursuit of, follow after.*

cōnsecūtus, p. p. of ***cōnsequor.***

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement, consent.*

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *agree with, conspire, combine; sympathize.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow closely, follow, pursue; overtake, reach; attain, succeed in.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *preserve, save fully, spare; keep, observe.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., *Publius Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *halt, take a position, encamp, settle, sit down.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *deliberation, plan, purpose, design, advice;* **commūne cōnsilium,** *concerted plan of action;* **cōnsilium capere,** *to form a plan.*

cōnsimilis, -e, adj., *very similar, very like.*

cōnsisto, -sistere, -stitī, *stop, halt, take a stand, hold a position, stay, settle;* with **in,** *consist of, depend upon.*

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *comfort, console, cheer.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *view, get sight of, behold, observe, see.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *catch sight of, behold.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *conspire, combine, plot.*

cōnstanter, adv., *gallantly, uniformly, consistently.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, *spread out, strew over, cover.*

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pack together, crowd, huddle.*

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *put together, station, arrange, set up; draw up, place, determine, decide upon, appoint, fix, agree upon.*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *stand still, be established; depend upon, cost;* impersonally, **cōnstat,** *it is evident; it is agreed.*

cōnstrātus, p. p. of ***cōnsternō.***

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, *become accustomed;* perf., *be wont, be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *custom, habit, manner, usage, practice.*

cōnsuētus, -a, -um, adj., *accustomed, trained.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul;* the two chief magistrates of Rome.

cōnsulāris, -e, *consular.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m., *consulship, office of consul.*

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus, *consult, deliberate;* intr., with dat., *take thought for, look out for.*

cōnsultō, adv., *purposely, deliberately.*

cōnsultum, -ī, n., *decision, order, decree.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *exhaust, waste, destroy, use up, spend.*

cōnsūmptus, p. p. of ***cōnsūmō.***

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus, *arise, rise, stand up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *erect story by story, build of planks, plank up* (a floor).

contāgiō, -ōnis, f., *contact, association.*

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover, conceal.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, -ūs, m., *contempt, scorn.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, *strive, exert one's self, struggle, vie, contend; hurry; join battle, fight, dispute.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *effort, rivalry, struggle, contest, fight.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *content, satisfied.*

contentus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***contendō***], *stretched, strained, tense.*

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *interweave, join together, construct.*

continēns, -entis, adj., *holding together, unbroken, continuous;* as a noun, m., *mainland, continent.*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold together, confine, surround, restrain, hem in.*

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, *touch, reach, border on; happen, fall to the lot of.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, f., *continuance, duration.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj., *uninterrupted, continuous.*

contiō, -ōnis, f., *meeting, assembly, speech.*

contrā, adv., *on the other hand, on the contrary, differently;* **contrā atque,** *otherwise than, contrary to what;* prep. with acc., *against, opposite, facing; in reply to.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *bring together, draw in, make smaller.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj., *contrary, facing; opposite, opposing;* **ex contrāriō,** *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, -ae, f., *dispute, disagreement, quarrel, strife, controversy;* **rē in contrōversiam dēductā,** *as the argument had resulted in a disagreement.*

contulī, see **cōnferō.**

contumēlia, -ae, f., *affront, disgrace, insult; violence.*

convallis, -is, f., *ravine, valley* (enclosed on all sides).

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, assemble, agree;* impers., **convenit,** *it is fitting, it is agreed;* with acc., *meet, visit.*

conventus, -ūs, m., *a coming together, assembly, meeting.*

conversus, p. p. of ***convertō.***

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *turn, turn about, change, alter;* **conversa signa īnferre,** *to face about and charge.*

Convictolitāvis, -is, m., a young Haeduan noble.

convictus, p. p. of ***convincō.***

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *prove, show clearly.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, assemble, call, summon.*

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, *arise, appear, break forth, break out.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply; amount, power, wealth;* plur., **cōpiae,** *troops, forces; wealth.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *rich, well-supplied.*

cōpula, -ae, f., *grappling hook.*

coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus, *cook,*

cor, cordis, n., *heart;* **cordī esse,** *to be pleasing, to be dear.*

cōram, adv. or prep., with abl., *face to face, before one's eyes, in person.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth,* a city in Greece.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a tribe in western Gaul.

corium, -ī, n., *skin, hide.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).

corōna, -ae, f. *crown, garland, wreath, chaplet;* **sub corōnā vēndere,** *to sell at auction.*

corpus, -oris, n., *body, person, corpse.*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *destroy, ruin, damage.*

cortex, -icis, m., *bark* (of a tree).

Cōrus, -ī, m., *northwest wind.*

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily, usual.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cotuātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, m., an Haeduan noble.

crassitūdō, -inis, f., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* one of the Triumvirate; *Publius Licinius Crassus,* younger son, and *Marcus Publius Crassus,* elder son of the triumvir, officers under Caesar.

crātēs, -is, f., *fagot, fascine;* plur., *wickerwork.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, thick, numerous, close.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe, trust, suppose.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn, consume;* with **ignī,** *burn to death.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *produce, choose, elect.*

Creōn, -ontis, m., a king of Corinth.

Crēs, Crētis, m., *a Cretan;* the Cretans were noted for archery.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, *increase, grow, become powerful, grow influential.*

cruciātus, -ūs, m., *torture, torment, agony, suffering.*

crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel, severe, unmerciful.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis, f., *severity, cruelty, harshness.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly, harshly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

cubiculum, -ī, n., *chamber, bedroom.*

cubīle, -is, n., *bed, couch, resting place.*

culmen, -inis, n., *peak, summit, top.*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame.*

culter, -trī, m., *knife.*

cultūra, -ae, f., *cultivation, culture.*

cultus, -ūs, m., *civilization, culture, cultivation, worship.*

cum (an enclitic with the pers. and reflex. pronouns and usually with the rel. and interrog.), prep. with abl., *with, together with, at the same time with.*

cum, conj., *when, whenever; as, since; although, while, whereas;* **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also, both . . . and;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.*

cumulus, -ī, m., *heap, pile.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, *hesitate, delay.*

cunctus, -a, -um, adj., *entire, all together, all.*

cuneātim, adv., *in a wedge shape.*

cunīculus, -ī, m., *burrow, underground passage, mine* (military).

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., *desire, eagerness, greed.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous, eager, fond* (*of*), *yearning* (*for*), *ambitious* (*for*).

cupiō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *desire, wish, long for;* with dat., *favor, wish well to.*

cūr, adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, forethought, anxiety.*

cūriōsē, adv., *inquisitively.*

cūriōsitās, -ātis, f., *desire for knowledge, inquisitiveness, curiosity.*

cūriōsus, -a, -um, adj., *careful, diligent, curious.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *care for, provide for, attend to, refresh; have* (*done*).

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursūrus, *run.*

currus, -ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs, m., *running, a run, speed, course;* **cursum adaequāre,** *keep up with;* **cursū incītātō,** *at full speed.*

custōdia, -ae, f., *guard, custody;* plur., *keepers, guards.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *guard, keep watch.*

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper, attendant, spy.*

Cyzicus, -ī, f., *Cyzicus,* a former city in Asia Minor.

D

D, *five hundred.*

D., abbr. of **Decimus.**

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn, declare guilty.*

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***dō.***

dē, prep. with abl., denoting separation, *from;* of place and motion, *away from, out of;* of source, *of, from, out of, sprung from;* of the whole, partitively, *of, from among;* of material, *made of, from;* of cause, *on account of, for, through, by;* of relation, *concerning, about;* of time, *after, during, in the course of, in;* **dē tertiā vigiliā,** *about the third watch;* **quā dē causā,** *for which reason;* **dē imprōvisō,** *unexpectedly.*

dea, -ae [dat. and abl. plur. **deābus**], f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *be in debt, owe; ought, must.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *move away, withdraw, depart; die.*

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, determine, decree; contend, fight.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *decide the contest, fight.*

dēcessus, -ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal, ebb, fall* (of the tide).

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, *fall from, fall off.*

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*

Decimus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *deceive, trick.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *declare, make plain, explain.*

dēclīvis, -e, adj., *inclining* or *sloping down, inclined, sloping;* as noun in neuter plur., **dēclīvia,** *steep slopes.*

dēcrētum, -ī, n., *decision, decree.*

dēcrētus, p. p. of ***dēcernō.***

decumānus, -a, -um, adj., *relating to the tenth;* **porta decumāna,** *rear gate of the camp,* where the tenth cohort of a legion was placed.

decuriō, -ōnis, m., *decurion, commander of ten, sergeant.*

dēcurrō, -currere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursūrus,** *run down, run away, hurry away.*

dēdecus, -oris, n., *disgrace, dishonor.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um, adj., *surrendered;* as noun in plur., *prisoners, captives, subjects.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dēditus, adj., *given up to, devoted.*

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *surrender, give up, devote.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down, lead away; bring, lead, convey, conduct, remove, influence;* of **nāvem,** *launch; lead home as a bride.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fatigue, exhaust, tire out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *rebellion, defection, revolt.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel, defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defense, protection.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender, protector;* plur., *garrison, defenses.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry down* or *away, convey, drive* (a ship), *force, bring; confer, offer; report, propose;* pass., *be driven.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *exhausted, tired, wearied.*

dēfetīscor, -fetīscī, -fessus, *become weary, become exhausted.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *fail, be wanting, revolt, leave, abandon, desert;* **animō dēficere,** *lose heart, lose courage.*

dēfigō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *set, fix, drive down, fasten.*

dēfīxus, p. p. of ***dēfīgō.***

dēfleō, -flēre, -flēvī, -flētus, *bewail, lament; weep bitterly, cry one's eyes out.*

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *flow apart, branch off, separate.*

dēfōrmis, -e, adj., *ill-formed, misshapen, ugly.*

dēfōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mar, spoil, disfigure, despoil.*

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *run away, flee away, shun, avoid.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw down, cast down; dislodge; drive* (a ship) *off her course; slay, kill;* **eā spē dēiectī,** *disappointed in this hope.*

dēiectus, -ūs, m., *slope, descent, declivity.*

deinceps, adv., *in turn, in succession.*

deinde, adv., *thereupon, then, next.*

dēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus, *fall down, slip, descend.*

dēlātus, p. p. of ***dēferō.***

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight, charm, please;* pass. (with abl.), *be pleased with, take pleasure in.*

dēlēctus, -a, -um, adj., *picked, chosen, choice.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy, obliterate, annihilate.*

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***dēleō.***

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consult, deliberate, consider, weigh.*

dēlictum, -ī, n., *offense, fault, crime.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tie down, fasten, moor, tie.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *select, choose.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, *hide away, hide.*

Delphī, -ōrum, m., *Delphi,* a city in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo.

dēmentia, -ae, f., *madness, folly.*

dēmessus, p. p. of ***dēmetō.***

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, *harvest, reap, cut down.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *move away, emigrate, depart.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus, *take away, diminish, reduce, lessen.*

dēmissus, -a, -um, adj., *lowered; bowed, disheartened.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send down, let down, lower, sink;* **sē dēmittere,** *to descend;* **animōs dēmittere,** *to lose courage.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, *take down, take off.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show, explain, make known.*

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, *hinder, delay.*

dēmptus, p. p. of ***dēmō.***

dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, refuse.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *by tens, ten each.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, after all, finally.*

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick, crowded.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *declare, order, announce, give warning.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive away, drive off.*

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditus, *lose.*

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -peritūrus, *perish, be lost.*

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bewail, lament.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put aside, lay down, deposit; abandon, give up.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, ravage, plunder.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry away, carry off.*

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, *demand, ask for.*

dēprecātor, -ōris, m., *mediator, intercessor.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, *beg off, pray for pardon, implore.*
dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *seize, catch, detect.*
dēprehēnsus, p. p. of ***dēprehendō.***
dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight to a finish, fight it out.*
dēpulsus, p. p. of ***dēpellō.***
dērēctē, adv., *straight, directly.*
dērēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight, upright; horizontal.*
dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, *draw up, arrange.*
dēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, *snatch away, tear away, pull down.*
dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take away, withdraw, lessen.*
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *come down, descend; resort to, proceed to.*
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, *cut off, cut away.*
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *leave, forsake, abandon.*
dēsertor, -ōris, m., *deserter.*
dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., *abandoned, deserted, lonely.*
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *long for, wish for, desire.*
dēsidia, -ae, f., *idleness, indolence.*
dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark out, designate; aim at.*
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultūrus, *leap down, dismount, jump overboard.*
dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, *cease, desist.*
dēsisto, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *stop, cease.*
dēspectus, p. p. of ***dēspiciō.***
dēspectus, -ūs, m., *view down, view from, outlook.*
dēspērātus, -a, -um, adj., *abandoned, desperate.*
dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lose hope, despair, despair of.*
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look down on, despise.*
dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, deprive, despoil.*
dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fasten, bind; appoint.*
dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *abandon, desert, forsake.*
dēstrictus, p. p. of ***dēstringō.***
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *draw, unsheathe.*
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be wanting, be lacking, fail.*
dēsuper, adv., *down from above, from above.*
dēterior, -ius, adj., *lower, inferior.*
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, *frighten off, hinder, prevent.*
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold back, detain, delay, stop.*
dētractus, p. p. of ***dētrahō.***
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw out, draw off, remove, withdraw.*
dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun, decline.*
dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *injury, defeat, loss, disaster.*
dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *drive off, drive in disorder.*
deus, -ī [no voc.; nom. plur., **dīī, dī**; gen., **deōrum** or **deum**; dat. and abl., **dīs**], m., *god.*
dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry away, transport, convey.*
dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come, get to.*
dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *overcome completely, subdue.*
dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *devour.*

dēvōtus, -a, -um, adj., *devoted, sworn follower.*

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *consecrate, devote, vow.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right* (in contrast with left); **dextra, -ae,** f., *the right hand;* **ā dextrō cornū,** *on the right wing.*

Diablintēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe.

Diāna, -ae, f., goddess of the moon and of the chase, sister of Apollo.

diciō, -ōnis (nom. sing. and entire plur. lacking), f., *power, sway, rule.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *assign, adjudge, surrender.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell, speak, name; set, fix, appoint;* **causam dīcere,** *to plead;* with **iūs,** *administer;* with **sententiam,** *give.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f., *speaking, pleading.*

dictum, -ī, n., *command, statement.*

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *draw apart, separate, distribute.*

diēs, -ēī, m. (f. sometimes in sing.), *day;* **in diēs,** *day after day;* **diem ex diē dūcere,** *to put off day after day;* **multō diē,** *late in the day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, *spread out, scatter, spread; put off, delay; differ.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard;* superl., **difficillimus.**

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty, perplexity, trouble, greatest effort.*

difficulter, adv., *with difficulty.*

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus, *distrust, lack confidence in.*

diffīsus, p. p. of ***diffīdō.***

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *spread out, extend.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger, finger's breadth.*

dignitās, -ātis, f., *honor, dignity, rank, worth, reputation.*

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *deserving, worthy.*

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *decide.*

dīlēctus, p. p. of ***dīligō.***

dīlēctus, -ūs, m., *selection, levy* (of soldiers).

dīligēns, -entis, adj., *industrious, diligent, careful.*

dīligenter, adv., *industriously, carefully, punctually.*

dīligentia, -ae, f., *carefulness, industry, diligence, punctuality.*

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *select, choose; love, cherish, esteem.*

dīlūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, *begin to grow light, dawn.*

dīmēnsus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***dīmētior***], adj., *measured off.*

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus, *measure out, lay out.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend, struggle.*

dīmidius, -a, -um, adj., *half;* as noun, **dīmidium, -ī,** n., *a half.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in different directions, send away, dismiss, disband, adjourn; release, let pass, let fall; abandon, give up, lose.*

dīreptus, p. p. of ***dīripiō.***

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *interrupt, break up.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, *plunder, pillage, ravage.*

dis- or **dī-,** insep. prefix; *apart, away, asunder, between, among;* often with negative force.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto,* god of the realm of the dead.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go in different directions, scatter; separate, withdraw; go away, desert, retire, leave.*

discessus, -ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal; desertion.*

disciplīna, -ae, f., *a course of instruction, training, discipline, doctrine.*

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *separate, hold apart, divide.*

discō, discere, didicī, *learn.*

discrīmen, -inis, n., *crisis, climax; peril, risk, predicament.*

discurrō, -currere, -currī or **-cucurrī,** *run in different directions.*

discus, -ī, m., *quoit, discus.*

discussus, p. p. of ***discutiō.***

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, *clear away, remove.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *scatter, disperse, rout; tear away.*

disiectus, -a, -um, adj., *scattered, dispersed; torn away.*

dispār, -paris, adj., *unequal, unlike, uneven.*

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus, *scatter, disperse.*

dispersus, p. p. of ***dispergō.***

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place apart, separate, arrange, distribute, station.*

dispositus, p. p. of ***dispōnō.***

disputātiō, -ōnis, f., *argument, discussion, dispute, debate.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *treat, discuss, argue.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension.*

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sensūrus, *disagree, differ in opinion, dissent.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disguise, dissemble, conceal, pretend.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *scatter, disperse, put to flight.*

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *oppose, advise against.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *keep apart, hold apart, prevent, detain.*

distō, -stāre, *stand apart, be distant, be apart.*

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw apart, tear apart, separate.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtus, *distribute, assign, divide.*

dītissimus, -a, -um [superl. of ***dīves***], adj., *very rich, wealthiest.*

diū, adv., *for a long time, for some time;* **tam diū,** *for so long a time;* **quam diū,** *as long as;* **diūtius,** *for a longer time, too long, longer, any longer;* **diūtissimē,** *for a very long time.*

diurnus, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to the day, daily.*

diūtinus, -a, -um, adj., *lasting, long, of long duration.*

diūtissimē, superl. of **diū.**

diūtius, comp. of **diū.**

diūturnitās, -ātis, f., *duration, length of time.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj., *long continued, lasting, enduring, long.*

dīversus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***dīvertō***], adj., *separated, different, diverse, opposite.*

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *turn in different directions, separate.*

dīves, -itis, adj., *rich.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., a leader of the Haedui, brother of Dumnorix,

and friendly to the Romans; also **Dīviciācus,** in Book II, a leader of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., a leader of the Helvetii.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj., *divine, religious.*

dīvīsus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***dīvidō***], adj., *divided.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, f., *riches, wealth.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, offer, assign, allow, grant; bestow; afford;* **hostes in fugam dare,** *to put the enemy to flight;* **verba dare,** *to deceive;* **inter sē dare,** *to exchange.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach, instruct, inform, explain, tell.*

documentum, -ī, n., *proof, warning, example.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *suffer, grieve, lament.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, disappointment; grief;* **magnō dolōre ferre,** *to be very resentful,*

dolus, -ī, m., *deceit, tricks, stratagem.*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., *native, domestic, at home; private, personal.*

domicilium, -ī, n., *dwelling, abode, home.*

domina, -ae, f., *mistress, lady.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus, *be master, rule, be the head.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master, head of a household, lord, owner.*

domus, -ūs, f., *home, house, family;* **domī,** *at home;* **domum,** (*to*) *home.*

Donnōtaurus, -i, m., see **Valerius.**

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give, present, bestow;* **cīvitāte aliquem dōnāre,** *to present one with citizenship.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, bribe.*

dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī (-iī), dormītūrus, *sleep.*

dōs, dōtis, f., *dowry, marriage gift.*

dracō, -ōnis, m., *serpent, dragon.*

druidēs, -um, m. plur., *the Druids,* priests of ancient Gaul and Britain.

Dubis, -is, m., *the Doubs,* river of Gaul, flowing into the Arar (Saône).

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f., *hesitation, uncertainty, doubt.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, be in doubt, hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain;* as noun, **dubium, -ī,** n., *doubt.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, guide, draw, conduct; construct, prolong; dig* (**fossam**); *put off; consider, think;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as, till, until.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., an ambitious and unscrupulous chief of the Haedui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, *two.*

duodecim, indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, adj., *twelfth.*

duodēvīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -plicis, *double, twofold.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *double.*

dūritia, -ae, f., *hardness, hardship.*

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *difficult, hard, severe.*

Dūrus, -ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune in Caesar's army.

dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander, guide.*

E

ē, see **ex.**

eā, adv., *that way, in that direction.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgian tribe of Germanic origin.

Eburovīcēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe.

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *speak out, proclaim, announce, set.*

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, *commit to memory, learn thoroughly.*

ēditus, -a, -um, adj., *raised, elevated, high.*

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *give forth, poor out, utter.*

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus, *instruct, explain, inform.*

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw* (a sword).

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weaken, enervate, enfeeble.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *carry out, bear out, carry away; report, make known, spread abroad; puff up, elate.*

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī, *begin to boil (over), boil up; rage.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, do, cause, produce, bring about; construct, produce.*

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *tear out, dig out.*

effosus, p. p. of ***effodiō.***

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *flee from, escape.*

egēns, -entis, adj., *needy, in want.*

egeō, egēre, eguī, *be in want of, need, lack.*

egestās, -ātis, f., *poverty, want.*

ego, meī, pers. pro., *I, of me;* plur., **nōs,** *we.*

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, *step out, go out, march out;* **ē nāve ēgredī,** *disembark;* with **in terram,** *go ashore.*

ēgregiē, adv., *exceptionally, excellently, remarkably.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *extraordinary, unusual, excellent, distinguished, eminent, outstanding.*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *cast out, expel, drive out;* **sē ēicere,** *to rush out.*

ēlatus, p. p. of ***efferō.***

ēlēctus, -ā, -um, adj., *selected, picked, chosen.*

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *pick out, choose, select.*

Elusātēs, -ium, m., a tribe in Aquitania.

ēmergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus, *arise, emerge; raise up.*

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *emigrate, go forth.*

ēminus, adv., *from afar, at a distance.*

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out, let go; hurl, discharge;* **sē ēmittere,** *dash out.*

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy, purchase.*

ēnārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell in detail.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, *sprout, grow out, grow forth.*

ēnātus, p. p. of ***ēnāscor.***

enim (never first word in clause), conj., *for, in fact, to be sure, but;* **neque . . . enim,** *for that matter . . . even not.*

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, disclose, report.*

eō adv., *to that place, there.*

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus, *go, proceed, advance, pass.*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place; to the same thing.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., *saddled.*

ephippium, -ī, n., *saddle, saddle cloth.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter, epistle.*

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., name of two Haeduan leaders.

eques, -itis, m., *horseman, rider, knight;* plur., *cavalry.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of cavalry, cavalry, equestrian.*

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ērēctus, -a, -um, adj., *raised up, built high; elevated.*

ēreptus, p. p. of ***ēripiō***

ergā, prep. with acc., *toward.*

Ēridanus, -ī, m., a river in northern Italy (the Po).

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, *lift, raise up; arouse.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, *snatch out of, snatch; rescue; snatch away, seize;* **sē ēripere,** *free one's self, escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *stray, wander; be mistaken, err.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break out, burst out, cause to break out, rush out.*

essedārius, -ī, m., *chariot fighter.*

essedum, -ī, n., *war chariot,* used by the Britons.

Esuviī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

et, conj., *and, also;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam, conj., *also, further, even now, yet;* **quīn etiam,** *nay more;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, *go (come) out, get away, escape, slip away.*

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, *pull out.*

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come to pass, turn out, happen.*

ēventus, -ūs, m., *outcome, result, occurrence, chance.*

ēvocātus, -a, -um, adj., *called out;* as noun, *reënlisted veteran.*

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, call away, summon, invite.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly out, rush out.*

ex (ē), (**ē** is not used before vowels or **h,** but **ex** is used before both vowels and consonants), prep. with abl., *out of, from, in consequence of;* **ex itinere,** *on the march;* **ex omnī parte,** *on every side;* **diem ex diē,** *from day to day;* **magnā ex parte,** *in great measure;* **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side;* **ex vinculīs,** *in chains.*

exāctus, p. p. of ***exigō.***

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harass, drive out, persecute.*

exanimātus, -a, -um, adj., *exhausted, breathless, lifeless.*

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make breathless, kill.*

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsūrus, *blaze out, rage, be incensed.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear clearly.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go out, withdraw, retire, depart.*

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsus, *excel, surpass.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj., *high, lofty, elevated.*

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut out, cut down, hew down.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take up; receive, welcome, catch; meet, come after, succeed; hear.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *stir, arouse, train; raise* (towers); *kindle* (a fire).

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, shout, exclaim.*

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *shut out, cut off.*

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think out, contrive, consider.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *torture, afflict.*

excubitor, -ōris, m., *sentinel.*

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, *lie outside, stand guard.*

excursiō, -ōnis, f., *sortie, sally.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *excuse;* **sē excūsāre,** *to apologize.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, warning;* **omnia exempla cruciātūsque,** *all kinds of torture.*

exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), **-itūrus,** *go out, withdraw, depart.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, *drill, train, practice, exercise.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *practice, exercise.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj., *trained, experienced.*

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *practice, train.*

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus, *drain off, carry away* (earth); *wear out, exhaust.*

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, *pass, spend* (of time), *finish;* **aestās exācta erat,** *summer had passed.*

exiguē, adv., *barely, scarcely, merely, scantily.*

exiguitās, -ātis, f., *scantiness, meagerness.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, meager, narrow.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj., *excellent, remarkable, extraordinary.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f., *estimate, opinion, judgment.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consider, estimate, think, believe, judge, esteem.*

exitium, -ī, n., *exit; destruction, ruin, death.*

expectō, see **exspectō.**

exitus, p. p. of ***exeō.***

exitus, -ūs, m., *exit, departure, end, outcome, result.*

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *extricate, set free, arrange, station.*

expedītiō, -ōnis, f., *raid, expedition.*

expedītus, -a, -um, adj., *easy, convenient, quick;* (of troops), *unencumbered, light-armed.*

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, banish, expel.*

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, *test, try out.*

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make good, atone for.*

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *complete, fill out, fill up.*

explicō, -plicārē, -plicāvī (-plicuī), **-plicātus** (-plicitus), *set forth, describe, state, explain.*

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout, spy.*

explōrātus, -a, -um, adj., *assured, certain, known.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *examine, investigate, explore, discover.*

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put out, set forth, explain, describe, draw up, array.*

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry out, carry away, remove.*

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, *demand.*

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, *squeeze out, extract, raise up.*

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *capture, take by storm, take by assault.*

expulsus, p. p. of ***expellō.***

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *inquire, search out, ask for, investigate.*

exquīsītus, p. p. of ***exquīrō.***

exsequiae, -ārum, f. plur., *funeral rites, funeral.*

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow up, pursue, carry out;* **iūs suum exsequī,** *to enforce its right.*

exsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, *leap out, jump out.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *stand out, arise, ensue.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wait for, wait to see, await, expect; delay.*

exspoliō, -āre, *spoil, plunder.*

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, *extinguish, put out, destroy.*

exstrūctus, p. p. of ***exstruō.***

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *pile up, build up, construct, erect.*

exsul, -ulis, m., *exile.*

exter, -era, -erum, adj., *outside, outer; foreign.*

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, *fear very much, dread.*

extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *outside, beyond, outside of.*

extrāctus, p. p. of ***extrahō.***

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw out, pull out; rescue, prolong.*

extrēmus, -a, -um [superl. of ***exter***], adj., *outermost, remotest, last, at the end of;* **ad extrēmum,** *at last, finally;* **ad extrēmās fossās,** *at the ends of the trenches.*

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, *thrust out, shut out.*

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *strip off, deprive of.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *burn, burn up.*

F

faba, -ae, f., *bean.*

faber, -bri, m., *artisan, mechanic, smith, workman.*

Fabius, -ī, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus,* who conquered the Allobroges and the Arverni in 121 B.C., and *Gaius Fabius,* a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable, tale.*

facile, adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, -e, adj., *easy, convenient.*

facinus, -oris, n., *deed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, act; form, fashion, construct; accomplish, perform, commit, appoint, establish;* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform;* for pass., see **fiō.**

factiō, -ōnis, f., *faction, party.*

factum, -ī, n., *deed, act, achievement.*

facultās, -ātis, f., *ease, facility, opportunity, chance, wealth, resources, supply.*

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, trick; fail;* with **spēs** as subj., *disappoint.*

falsus, -a, -um, adj., *false, unfounded, groundless.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, scythe, wall hook,* used for demolishing walls.

fāma, -ae, f., *speech, rumor, reputation, story.*

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, starvation;* **famem tolerāre,** *to appease hunger.*

familia, -ae, f., *household, kin; attendants.*

familiāris, -e, adj., *of the household, intimate;* with **rēs,** *estate, property;* as noun, *close friend.*

fās, n., indecl., *right;* with **esse,** *to be lawful, to be allowed.*

fastīgātē, adv., *sloping.*

fastīgiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring to a point.*

fastīgium, -ī, n., *elevation, slope, descent.*

fātum, -ī, *the spoken word, fate, decree, destiny.*

faucēs, -ium, f., *throat, jaws, maw.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favor, be well disposed to.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand, fire.*

fefellīsse, see **fallō.**

fēlīcitās, -ātis, f., *happiness, felicity, good fortune.*

fēlīciter, adv., *successfully, happily, luckily.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*

femur, -inis or **-oris,** n., *thigh.*

fera, -ae, f., *wild animal.*

ferāx, -ācis, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, for the most part, usually.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, irreg., *bear, carry, bring, endure, tolerate, assert, say;* **signa ferre,** *to march forward;* **aegrē (molestē) ferre,** *to be indignant at; resent;* **magnō dolōre ferre,** *to be deeply hurt, angered.*

ferrāmentum, -ī, n., *iron tool, implement.*

ferrāria, -ae, f., *iron mine.*

ferreus, -a, -um, adj., *of iron, made of iron.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword, weapon.*

fertilis, -e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

fertilitās, -ātis, f., *fertility.*

ferus, -ā, -um, adj., *wild, ferocious;* as noun, **fera, -ae,** f., *wild beast, animal.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *make hot, set burning, make red hot, glow.*

fervēns, -entis, adj., *hot, red hot.*

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, *be hot, burn, glow.*

fībula, -ae, f., *fastening, bolt, clasp, buckle.*

fictilis, -e, adj., *earthen, made of clay.*

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***fingō,*** *fictitious.*

fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful.*

fidēs, -eī [***fīdō,*** *trust*], f., *promise, pledge; confidence; devotion, loyalty, protection;* **in fidem venīre,** *to come under the protection.*

fīdūcia, -ae, f., *confidence, reliance.*

figūra, -ae, f., *form, shape.*

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, *mold, contrive, invent, feign;* as noun, **ficta, -ōrum,** n. plur., *fictions.*

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *limit, measure, end, determine, put bounds to.*

fīnis, -is, m., *end, limit, border;* plur., *frontiers, boundaries, country.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, near by;* as a noun, **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** m. plur., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, irr., *be made, arise, be accomplished, become; happen, come about.*
fīrmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*
fīrmitūdō, -inis, f., *firmness, strength, solidity.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful, firm, steady.*
fistūca, -ae, f., *beetle, pile driver.*
Flaccus, -ī, m., a family name.
flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *importune, demand earnestly.*
flamma, -ae, f., *flame, fire.*
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep, weep for, lament.*
flētus, -ūs, m., *weeping, lamenting.*
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, *blow.*
flōrēns, -entis, adj., *blooming, prosperous, influential.*
fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave.*
flūmen, -inis, n., *river, stream.*
fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow.*
foederātus, -a, -um, adj., *allied, federated.*
foedus, -eris, n., *treaty, alliance, compact.*
fōns, fontis, m., *spring, fountain.*
fore, for **futūrum esse, futūram esse,** etc.; see **sum.**
forem, for **essem**; see **sum.**
foris, -is, f., *door.*
fōrma, -ae, f., *shape, appearance, beauty, form.*
fors, fortis, f., *chance;* as adv., **forte,** *by chance.*
fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, sturdy.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely, sturdily, undauntedly.*
fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery, courage, prowess.*
fortuītō, adv., *by chance.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *chance, fortune, luck, fate.*
forum, -ī, n., *forum, market place.*
fossa, -ae, f., *trench, ditch.*
fovea, -ae, f., *pitfall, small pit.*
frāctus, p. p. of ***frangō.***
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, crush, break down, wreck.*
frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*
frāternus, -a, -um, *of a brother, fraternal.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, fraud.*
fremitus, -ūs, m., *roar, growl, uproar.*
frequēns, gen. **frequentis,** adj., *repeated, frequent, numerous.*
frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on.*
frīgidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold.*
frīgus, -oris, n., *cold, cold weather;* plur., *cold seasons.*
frōns, frontis, f., *front, forehead;* **ā fronte,** *in (at the) front.*
frūctuōsus, -a, -um, adj., *fruitful, fertile.*
frūctus, -ūs, m., *crops, income, profit, returns.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., *of grain.*
frūmentātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting grain, foraging.*
frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, *gather grain, forage.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain;* plur., *crops.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus, used with abl., *enjoy.*
frūstrā, adv., *without effect, in vain, to no purpose.*
frūstror, -ārī, -ātus, *disappoint, deceive.*
frūx, frūgis, f., *fruit;* plur., *crops.*
Fūfius, -ī, m., a Roman name.
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, run away; avoid, shun;* as noun, **fugientēs, -ium,** *the runaways, the deserters.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um, adj., *fleeing;* as noun, *a runaway (slave).*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rout, put to flight.*

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *smoke.*

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, -ae, f., *sling.*

fundāmentum, -i, n., *foundation.*

funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, scatter, rout.*

fūnereus, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to a funeral, funereal.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, used with abl., *perform, discharge.*

fūnis, -is, m., *rope, cable.*

fūnus, -ēris, n., *funeral;* in plur., *funeral rites.*

furor, -ōris, m., *frenzy, madness, fury.*

fūrtum, -ī, n., *theft.*

fūsilis, -e, *liquid, molten, soft.*

fūsus, p. p. of ***fundō.***

futūrus, see **sum.**

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, m., a people of Gaul, dependents of the Arverni.

Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius,* a Roman consul in 58 B.C.

gaesum, -ī, n., *a long, heavy Gallic javelin.*

Gāius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, -ae, m., *Servius Sulpicius Galba,* a legate under Caesar.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet,* generally of leather, sometimes reinforced with metal.

Gallia, -ae, f., a country that included modern Belgium, France, Holland, and Switzerland.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, pertaining to the Gauls* or *to Gaul.*

gallīna, -ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul,* inhabitant of Gaul; plur., *the Gauls;* also a Roman cognomen; *Marcus Trebius Gallus,* an officer in Caesar's army.

Gallus, -a, -um, *Gallic, relating to Gaul.*

Garumna, -ae, m., a river in southwestern Gaul, the Garonne.

Garumnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe of the Pyrenees, on the upper Garonne.

Gatēs, -ium, m., a Gallic tribe of Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *rejoice, be delighted.*

gaudium, -ī, n., *joy, gladness.*

gāvīsus, -a, -um, adj., p. p. of ***gaudeō.***

Genāva, -ae, f., the modern *Geneva,* a city of the Allobroges.

generātim, adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *clan, tribe, race, nation.*

genus, -eris, n., *descent, race; class, kind, sort, character.*

Gergovia, -ae, f., a city of the Arverni, in Gaul.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

Germānicus, -a, -um, adj., *German, of the Germans.*

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German;* as noun, **Germānus, -ī,** m., *a German.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, manage, conduct, attend to, do; wage, perform, accomplish; wear* (**calceus**); **rēs gestae,** *achievements, exploits;* **gesta,** n. plur., *happenings, events;* **occāsiō reī bene gerendae,** *opportunity to succeed.*

gestus, p. p. of ***gerō.***

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus, *bring forth, produce;* pass., *be born, spring up, arise.*

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn, missile, ball.*

Glaucē, -ēs, f., *Glauce,* a daughter of Creon, king of Corinth.

glēba, -ae, f., *lump, clod* (of earth).

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, *boast, glory in.*

Gnaeus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., an Arvernian, uncle to Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city of the Boii, in the territory of the Haedui.

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, rank.*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to Greeks, Grecian, Greek.*

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the Alps.

grandis, -e, adj., *full-grown, large, huge.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, esteem, gratitude, good will, friendship; influence, kindness, courtesy, service, obligation;* in plur., *thanks;* **grātiās agere,** *to give thanks;* **grātiās habēre,** *to be grateful;* **grātiās** (**grātiam**) **referre,** *to pay off an obligation, to give thanks;* **grātiā** (with gen.), *for the sake of;* **suī pūrgandī grātiā,** *for the sake of clearing himself.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., *congratulation, rejoicing.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, welcome, agreeable.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, weighty, important, serious, severe;* **graviōris aetātis,** *of more advanced* (*mature*) *age;* **sī quid gravius acciderit,** *if anything unusually serious should occur;* **nē quid gravius statueret,** *that he should not pass any very severe judgment.*

gravitās, -ātis, f., *weight, importance, power.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, with weight;* **graviter ferre,** *to take to heart.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make heavy;* as dep., **gravor, -ārī, -ātus,** *hesitate, be unwilling, object.*

gubernātor, -ōris, m., *helmsman, pilot.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste, eat.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold, possess, keep; regard, consider;* **compertum habēre** = **comperisse,** *to have discovered;* **in animō habēre,** *to intend;* **sē habēre,** *to consider one's self, to be;* **grātiam habēre,** *to be grateful;* **rationēm habēre,** *to have regard for.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *live, dwell, reside.*

hāc, adv., *by this way, here.*

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Haedui, Haeduan;* **Haeduī, -ōrum,** m., *the Haedui,* a noted and powerful tribe of Gaul.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -atūrus, *stick fast, get caught, struggle.*

Harpȳiae, -ārum (the *spoilers*), f., *Harpies,* mythical creatures half bird, half women.

Harūdēs, -um, m., a German tribe originally from Jutland.

haud, adv., *not, not at all, by no means.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.*

Helviī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in the Roman province.

herba, -ae, f., *plant, herb.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules,* god of strength, a son of Jupiter.

hērēditās, -ātis, f., *inheritance.*

hībernus, -a, -um, adj., *of winter;* as noun, **hīberna, -ōrum,** neut. plur., *winter quarters.*

hic, haec, hoc, demons. adj. and pro. of the first person, *this, this one* (near to, belonging to, of especial interest to, the speaker), *the latter* (in contrast with **ille,** the *former*); **hōc,** neut. abl., *in this respect, on this account.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place, there* (referring to a place just mentioned).

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *spend the winter, winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *from here, hence.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish.*

hodiē, adv., *today.*

homō, -inis, m. and f., *a human being, man* (including woman).

honestus, -a, -um, adj., *honorable, respected.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, respect, office;* **honōris causā,** *as a mark of honor.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, adj., *honorable.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour;* **Hōrae, -ārum,** *the Hours,* goddesses that had charge of the seasons of the year.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, *bristle; dread, shudder at.*

horribilis, -e, adj., *dreadful, terrible.*

horridus, -a, -um, adj., *dreadful, frightful, horrible.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *urge, exhort, incite, encourage.*

hospes, -itis, m., *guest, host, stranger, friend.*

hospitium, -ī, n., *guest-friendship, hospitality, cordiality.*

hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy* (of the state), *foe.*

hūc, adv., *hither, to this place, here;* **hūc accēdēbant,** *to these there were added.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *culture, civilization, refinement.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *civilized, refined, cultivated, kind.*

humilis, -e, adj., *low, humble, weak.*

humilitās, -ātis, f., *lowness, insignificance, shallowness.*

Hylās, -ae, m., *Hylas,* one of the Argonauts.

I

I, the Roman numeral for **ūnus,** *one.*

iacentēs, -ium, m. plur., *the slain.*

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lie, lie dead.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, cast, hurl;* **ancorās iacere,** *to drop anchor;* **aggerem iacere,** *throw up an* **agger.**

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *toss violently; discuss.*

iactūra, -ae, f., *loss, sacrifice.*

iactus, p. p. of ***iaciō.***

iaculum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

iam, adv., *already, now, at once; at length; indeed.*

Iāsōn, -onis, m., *Jason,* leader of the Argonauts.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

Iccius, -ī, m., a chief of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs, m., *blow, stroke.*

Īd., abbr. for **Īdūs.**

īdem, eadem, idem, demons. pro. and adj., *the same;* **eadem atque,** *the same as;* **īdem . . . et (atque),** *the same as.*

identidem, adv., *again and again, repeatedly.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, fit, appropriate.*

Īdūs, -uum, f. plur., *the Ides,* the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth of the other months.

igitur, adv., *accordingly, therefore, then.*

īgnis, -is, m., *fire;* plur., *camp fires, beacons.*

ignōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *not to know, be ignorant of.*

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus, *overlook, forgive, pardon.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown;* as noun, m., *stranger.*

ille, illa, illud, demons. adj. and pro., *that, the former,* in contrast with **hic** (*the latter*); *he, she, it.*

illīc, adv., *there, in that place.*

illō, adv., *thither, there.*

Īllyricum, -ī, n., *Illyria,* a province of Rome on the northern coast of the Adriatic.

imber, imbris, m., *rainstorm, rain, shower.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus, *imitate, copy.*

immānis, -e, *monstrous, huge, enormous.*

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send into, send forward, send against, hurl; let loose, let down into.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sacrifice.*

immortālis, -e, adj., *immortal.*

immūnitās, -ātis, f., *freedom from burdens, exemption.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* plur., *baggage;* **esse impedīmentō,** *to hinder.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *obstruct, entangle, hinder, embarrass; engage, occupy.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive against, urge on, incite, impel.*

impendeō, -pendēre, *overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *excessive, expensive, very high.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *general, commander-in-chief, leader.*

imperātum, -ī, n., *order, command.*

imperītus, -a, -um, adj., *inexperienced, unskilled.*

imperium, -ī, n., *command, supremacy, control, supreme power, rule.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give order, order, command, demand, exercise power, hold, command.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get, obtain, accomplish.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, assault; rush, fury.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *impious, undutiful.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beseech, beg, implore.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place upon, impose, levy on, assign, put on board* (ship), *place on* (a horse).

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *import.*

impositus, p. p. of ***impōnō.***

improbus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, unprincipled, bad.*

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, adj., *unexpected, unforeseen;* **dē imprōvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, -entis, adj., *unaware, off guard, not expecting.*

imprūdentia, -ae, f., *indiscretion, ignorance, want of foresight.*

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attack, charge, invade.*

impulsus, p. p. of ***impellō.***

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

impūnitās, -ātis, f., *freedom from punishment.*

īmus, -a, -um [superl. of ***īnferus***], adj., *lowest* (*part*), *bottom of.*

in-, prefix, *not, in-.*

in, prep. (1) with acc., *into, to, among, against, toward, into the midst of, till;* **in annōs singulōs,** *year after year;* **in diēs,** *from day to day;* **in noctem,** *till night;* **in perpetuum,** *forever;* **in tertium annum,** *for the third year;* **in servīlem modum,** *in the manner slaves* (are treated); (2) with abl., *in, on, within, in the case of, in respect to, in regard to, in the country of;* **in ancorīs,** *at anchor;* **in prīmīs,** *among the first, especially.*

inānis, -e, adj., *vain, empty, idle.*

incautē, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*

incendium, -ī, n., fire.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire; inflame, rouse.*

incēnsus, p. p. of ***incendō.***

inceptus, p. p. of ***incipiō.***

incertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain, indefinite; untrustworthy.*

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *fall into, fall upon, fall in with, meet; happen, occur.*

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut into, notch.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *begin, undertake.*

incīsus, p. p. of ***incīdō.***

incitātus, -a, -um, adj., *spurred on;* **incitātō equō,** *at full gallop;* **incitātō cursū,** *at double quick;* **sē incitāre,** *to rush upon.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, incite, set in motion, urge, impel.*

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *shut in, imprison.*

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, *dwell, inhabit, live.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed.*

incommodē, adv., *inconveniently, unfortunately.*

incommodum, -ī, n., *disadvantage, disaster, defeat, loss.*

incommodus, -a, -um, adj., *inconvenient, unfortunate.*

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible, extraordinary, marvelous.*

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *chide, criticize, taunt, rebuke, revile.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, raid, invasion.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *censure, upbraid, chide, rebuke.*

inde, adv., *from there, thence, then.*

indicium, -ī, n., *information, evidence;* **per indicium,** *by informers (information).*

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *declare, proclaim, appoint.*

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, *need, be dependent on.*

indignitās, -ātis, f., *disgrace, unworthiness, outrage.*

indignor, -ārī, -ātus, *be angry, be indignant.*

indignus, -a, -um, adj., *unworthy.*

indīligēns, -entis, adj., *negligent, careless.*

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly, negligently.*

indīligentia, -ae, f., *negligence, carelessness, neglect.*

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead on; induce, impel;* **scūta pellibus indūcere,** *to cover the shields with hides.*

indulgentia, -ae, f., *favor, indulgence, clemency.*

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, *indulge, favor.*

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, *to put on, don.*

indūtiae, -ārum, f. plur., *truce, armistice.*

Indūtiomārus, -ī, m., a leader of the Treveri.

ineō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *go in, go into, enter, enter upon, begin, adopt, undertake, win;* **ratiōnem inīre,** *to make an inventory;* **initā aestāte,** *at the beginning of summer;* **cōnsilium inīre,** *to adopt a plan.*

inermis, -ē, adj., *unarmed.*

iners, -ertis, adj., *lazy, cowardly, unmanly.*

īnfāmia, -ae, f., *disgrace, shame.*

īnfandus, -a, -um, adj., *unspeakable, unnatural, shocking.*

īnfāns, -antis, m. and f., *child, infant.*

īnfectus, -a, -um, adj., *unaccomplished, not done.*

īnfēlīx, -īcis, adj., *unhappy, unfortunate, unlucky.*

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *import, bring in, inflict, cause, make; allege;* **bellum īnferre,** *to make war on;* **signa īnferre,** *to advance.*

īnferus, -a, -m, adj., *below* (pos. not in Caesar); compar., **īnferior, īnferius,** *lower;* **ab īnferiōre parte,** *on the lower* (downstream) *side;* superl., **īnfirmus (īmus), -a, -um,** *lowest;* **īnfimus collis,** *the foot of the hill.*

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *stain, dye, infect.*

īnfimus, see **īnferus.**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, adj., *endless, vast, boundless, countless.*

īnfīrmitās, -ātis, f., *feebleness, fickleness, inconstancy.*

infīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *feeble, weak, insignificant* (of ships), *unseaworthy.*

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, *bend down, bend.*

īnflexus, p. p. of ***inflectō.***

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *flow into, empty into.*

īnfrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *below, less than; underneath.*

īnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour in, pour.*

ingēns, -entis, adj., *huge, vast, monstrous, mighty, enormous.*

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, *enter, advance, march into.*

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw into, throw on, put on, place on, embark; inspire.*

iniectus, p. p. of ***iniciō.***

inimīcitia, -ae, f., *hostility, feud.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly; hostile;* as noun, **inimīcus, -ī,** m., *personal enemy.*

inīquitās, -ātis, f., *inequality, disadvantage, unfairness.*

inīquus, -a, -um, adj., *uneven, unfair, unjust, unfavorable.*

initium, -ī, n., *beginning, start, origin.*

initus, p. p. of ***ineō.***

iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, injury, outrage.*

iniussū, adv., *without orders.*

inlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***īnferō.***

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tie to, fasten to, attach, bind on.*

inlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus, *make sport of, deceive.*

inlūstris, -e, adj., *distinguished;* (ex) **locō inlūstrī nātus,** *born in high station, of noble ancestry.*

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, *be born in, spring up in; be produced.*

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus or **-nīsus,** *rest on, lean on.*

innīxus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***innītor***], adj., *leaning on, supporting* (one's self).

innocēns, -entis, adj., *blameless, guiltless, innocent.*

innocentia, -ae, f., *integrity, blamelessness.*

inopia, -ae, f., *need, scarcity, privation.*

inopīnāns, -antis, adj., *unaware, not expecting, unsuspecting.*

inquam, inquis, inquit, defec., inserted parenthetically in direct quotations: *say;* **inquit,** *said* (*says*) *he,* **inquiunt,** *say they.*

inrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

inrīdiculē, adv., *without humor.*

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *burst into, break in, storm, charge upon.*

inruptiō, -ōnis, f., *incursion, attack, assault.*

īnsciēns, -entis, adj., *not knowing, unaware, ignorant.*

inscientia, -ae, f., *ignorance, inexperience.*

īnscius, -a, -um, adj., *ignorant, unaware.*

īnsecūtus, p. p. of ***īnsequor.***

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow up, pursue.*

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *insert, put into.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, f. plur., *plot, deception, tricks; ambush, treachery.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus, *lie in wait, plot against.*

īnsignis, -e, adj., *memorable, remarkable, conspicuous.*

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus, *leap.*

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accuse, charge, blame.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *push in, slip in;* **sē īnsinuāre,** *to work one's way into.*

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *stand upon, adopt, follow.*

īnsolenter, adv., *haughtily, insolently.*

īnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look on, watch.*

īnstabilis, -e, adj., *unsteady.*

īnstar, indecl. n., *likeness, resemblance.*

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *set in position, draw up; procure, furnish, prepare; undertake; begin, train, teach.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *practice, custom, habit.*

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *press on, be near; threaten, menace.*

īnstrūctus, p. p. of ***īnstruō.***

īnstrūmentum, -ī, n., *implement, tools, equipment, stock, furniture.*

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build, draw up, arrange; equip.*

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., *trained, accustomed.*

īnsuētus, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*

īnsuper, adv., *on the top, above, from above.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *untouched, unimpaired, fresh, whole.*

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover over, cover.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, tr., *understand, perceive, know, discover.*

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, *strain, stretch; be intent on.*

inter, prep. with acc., *among, between, during, with, within;* **inter sē,** *with one another;* **cohortātī inter sē,** *encouraging one another;* **obsidēs inter sē dare,** *to exchange hostages.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come between, be between, go between;* of time (pass.), *elapse.*

interceptus, p. p. of ***intercipiō.***

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *cut off, intercept.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *cut off, hinder, shut off, block.*

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *forbid, prohibit, exclude.*

interdiū, adv., *in the day time.*

interdum, adv., *sometimes, at times, for a time.*

intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus, *die, perish, be killed.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *put to death, slay, kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *put among, throw between, intersperse;* in pass., *intervene, lie between.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, -ius, adj., *inner, interior, inland;* **interiōrēs, -um,** m. and f. plur., *those living in the interior of the country, inlanders.*

interitus, -ūs, m., *destruction, death.*

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *place between, interrupt, discontinue; leave off, halt, cease, intervene;* **iter neque diem necque noctem intermittere,** *to cease marching neither day nor night;* **nocte intermissā,** *a night intervening.*

interneciō, -ōnis, f., *destruction, annihilation.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *interrupt* (by talking), *disturb, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *interpose, put between, cause, allege.*

interpres, -pretis, m. and f., *interpreter, mediator.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, *explain, interpret.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question.*

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break down, destroy.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *tear down, destroy.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be between, be in, participate in;* **non longius (spatium) intererat quam,** *the distance between was not more than.*

intervāllum, -ī, n., *distance apart, interval.*

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come between, arrive.*

interventus, -ūs, m., *intervention, help.*

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *weave into, weave together.*

intrā, prep. with acc., *within, inside; into.*

intrītus, -a, -um, adj., *not worn, unwearied.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter, go in.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead in, bring in.*

introeō, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -itus, *enter, go in.*

introitus, -ūs, m., *entrance, approach.*

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in, admit.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within, inside.*

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus, *gaze at, look at.*

intulī, see **īnferō.**

inūsitātus, -ā, -um, adj., *unusual, uncommon.*

inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless, of no use.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *find out, discover, learn.*

inventor, -ōris, m., *discoverer, inventor, author.*

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, *to become established, become fixed.*

invictus, -a, -um, adj., *invincible, unconquerable.*

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *envy.*

invidia, -ae, f., *jealousy, envy, hatred.*

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj., *sacred, inviolate.*

invīsus, -a, -um, adj., *unseen.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *invite, summon, induce.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant;* **sē invītō,** *against his will, without his permission.*

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pro., *himself, herself, itself, the very* (emphatic); distinguish from reflex. **suī.**

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath, rage.*

īrācundus, -a, -um, adj., *quick-tempered, easily-angered.*

is, ea, id, demons. pro., *this, this one; that, that one; he, she, it;* often used as an antecedent of a relative. As an adj., *this, that,* less definite than **hic** or **ille**; n. abl. as adv., **eō,** *to such a degree, to such an extent, to the purpose;* **eō īmpōnere,** *to place thereon;* **eō quod,** *on that account, because.*

iste, ista, istud, demons. pro., *that* (of yours), *that* (near you), *that* (just mentioned to you), *that.*

ita, adv., *so, as follows, thus; to such an extent, so; in such a way, accordingly; as;* **nōn ita,** *not so very;* **ita . . . ut,** *as . . . so, thus . . . so.*

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *and so, accordingly; therefore, consequently.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same manner, also, too.*

iter, itineris, n., *journey, march, expedition, course, route, road;* **magnum iter,** *forced march;* **maximum iter,** *at full* (or *top*) *speed.*

iterum, adv., *a second time, again;* **iterum atque iterum,** *again and again.*

iuba, -ae, f., *mane* (of a horse).

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *command, order, bid.*

iūdicium, -ī, n., *trial, judgment.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider, think, proclaim.*

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge* (of a hill).

iūmentum, -ī, n., *yoke animal, mule, pack horse.*

iūnctūra, -ae, f., *joint, joining, connection.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *yoke together, join, unite, attach.*

iūnior, -ius, *younger;* as noun, *a younger man.*

Iūnius, -ī, m., *Junius,* a Roman name.

Iūnō, Iūnōnis, f., *Juno,* queen of the gods, and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter,* father of the Roman gods.

Iūra, -ae, m., mountain range between the Helvetii and the Sequani.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take oath, swear, affirm.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right, law, justice, authority.*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., *oath.*

iussū, m., used only in abl. sing., *by command, by order.*

iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice, fair dealing.*

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., *just, rightful, lawful.*

iuvencus, -ī, m., young bull.

iuvenis, -e, adj., *young;* as noun, **iuvenis, -is,** m., *a young man.*

iuventūs, -ūtis, f., *the youth, the young men.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *assist, help, aid.*

iūxtā, adv., *close by, near.*

K

Kal., abbr. for **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, -ārum, f. plur., *the Calends,* first day of the month.

L

L, Roman numeral for *fifty.*

L., abbr. for **Lūcius.**

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Atius Labienus,* an able lieutenant under Caesar in the Gallic War.

labor, -ōris, m., *task, toil; exertion, hardship, trouble.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *toil, labor, suffer; be hard pressed.*

labrum, -ī, n., *lip, brim, edge.*

lac, lactis, n., *milk.*

lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus, *harass, provoke, attack, challenge, skirmish.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, *injure, wound, break* (faith).

laetitia, -ae, f., *gladness, joy.*
laetus, -a, -um, adj., *glad, joyful.*
languidē, adv., *feebly.*
languidus, -a, -um, adj., *listless, faint, weak.*
languor, -ōris, m., *fatigue, weakness.*
lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
laqueus, -ī, m., *noose, snare.*
largior, -īrī, -ītus, *give generously, bestow freely, bribe.*
largiter, adv., *abundantly, lavishly;* **largiter posse,** *to be very powerful.*
largītiō, -ōnis, f., *lavish giving, generosity, bribery.*
lassitūdō, -inis, f., *weariness, exhaustion.*
lātē, adv., *widely, extensively;* **latius,** *too far.*
lateō, latēre, latuī, *escape notice, be concealed, lurk.*
lātitūdō, -inis, f., *width, breadth.*
Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German people, neighbors of the Helvetii.
latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber, bandit.*
latrōcinium, -ī, n., *robbery, brigandage, plundering.*
lātus, p. p. of *ferō.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad, extensive.*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise, commend.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, credit.*
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus or **lōtus,** *bathe, wash;* pass., *bathe one's self.*
laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *extend, loosen, open out.*
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *legation, embassy.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador; legate, lieutenant commander.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., *legionary, pertaining to a legion, of a legion.*
Lemannus, -ī, m., with **lacus,** the modern Lake Geneva.
Lemovīcēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe dwelling northwest of the Arverni.
lēnis, -e, adj., *smooth, gentle, soft.*
lēnitās, -ātis, f., *smoothness, slowness, gentleness.*
lēniter, adv., *gently, smoothly, softly.*
Lepontiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps.
Leucī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
levis, -e, adj., *light; trifling, fickle, unimportant.*
levitās, -ātis, f., *lightness, inconstancy.*
levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *relieve, lighten, free.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law, statute.*
Lexoviī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly, readily.*
liber, librī, m., *book.*
līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free, independent, unrestricted.*
līberālitās, -ātis, f., *liberality, generosity.*
līberāliter, f., *liberally, generously, freely, kindly.*
līberē, adv., *freely, readily.*
līberī, -ōrum, m., *children* (of free parents).
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *free, set free, relieve;* **liberāre sē,** *secure one's freedom.*
lībertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom, independence.*

liceor, licērī, licitus, *bid* (at an auction).

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *be allowed;* **id sibi,** etc. (*that they be allowed*); **per tē licet,** *you allow, you do not hinder;* **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.*

Liger, -eris, m., a river of western Gaul, now the Loire.

Ligurēs, -um, m., *Ligurians,* a tribe of northwestern Italy.

līnea, -ae, f., *line.*

Lingonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*

lingula, -ae, f., *tongue of land.*

linter, -tris, f., *skiff, boat.*

līnum, -ī, n., *flax.*

Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate of the Haedui in the year 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -ī, m., a leader of the Haedui.

littera, -ae, f., *letter* (of alphabet); plur., *letters; epistle, writing, records.*

lītus, -oris, n., *beach, shore, coast.*

locus, -ī, m., *place, region, locality, spot; space, extent; rank, situation, opportunity;* **obsidum locō,** *as hostages.*

locūtus, p. p. of ***loquor.***

longē, adv., *far, afar, at a distance;* compar., **longius,** *farther, too far.*

longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *distant, remote; long-continued.*

longitūdō, -inis, f., *length.*

longurius, -ī, m., *long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, distant, remote; tedious;* **in longiōrem diem,** *to a later day.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, *talk, converse, say.*

lōrīca, -ae, f., *coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.*

Lūcius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lucterius, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Cadurci.

lūmen, -inis, n., *light, flame.*

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon;* also *Luna,* the moon goddess Diana.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight;* **prīmā lūce,** *at dawn;* **ortā lūce,** *at dawn, at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, f., *luxury, high living, excess.*

M

M, Roman numeral for *thousand.*

M., abbr. for **Mārcus.**

māceria, -ae, f., *wall, wall of clay.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., *engine, derrick, mechanical device.*

Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town near which Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.

magicus, -a, -um, adj., *magic.*

magis [*magnus*], comp. adv., *more, rather;* **eō magis,** *the more on this account, all the more;* for superl. see **maximē.**

magister, -trī, m., *master, director.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy, office; magistrate.*

magnificus, -a, -um, adj., *grand, splendid, magnificent.*

magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size, extent; force;* with **supplicī,** *severity.*

magnopere, adv., *greatly, strongly, especially;* comp., **magis,** superl., **maximē.**

magnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, important, extensive, abundant;* comp., **maior,** superl., **maximus; magnī habēre,** *to consider of great importance;* **magnī interest,** *it is of great importance;* **magnā vōce,** *with a loud voice;* **magnus aestus,** *a high tide.*

maiestās, -ātis, f., *majesty, dignity.*

maior, -ius, comp. of **magnus; maior** (*nātū*), *older;* **maiōrēs, -um,** m. plur., *forefathers, elders, ancestors.*

malacia, -ae, f., *a calm.*

male, adv., *badly, unsuccessfully, ill;* comp., **peius,** superl., **pessimē.**

maleficium, -ī, n., *mischief, harm.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, *wish more, prefer.*

malum, -ī, n., *evil, wrong, misfortune.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad;* comp., **peior,** superl., **pessimus.**

mālus, -ī, m., *mast, upright beam.*

mandātum, -ī, n., *instructions, command, message.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *instruct, commit, entrust;* with **sē fugae,** *take to.*

Mandubracius, -ī, m., a Briton.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe north of the Haedui.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain, stay, stay at home.*

manipulus, -ī, m., *handful* (of straw); *one of the three divisions of a cohort, maniple* (whose standard was a small bundle of straw).

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Lucius Manlius,* Roman leader, defeated by the Aquitani in 78 B.C.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *tame;* pass., **mānsuēfīō,** *be tamed.*

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *kindness, gentleness, mercifulness.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; troop, band, company;* **in manibus,** *close at hand;* **manum cōnserere,** *fight at close quarters.*

Mārcellus, -ī, *M. Claudius Marcellus,* (1) a famous Roman general; (2) a consul in 183 B.C.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe, united with Ariovistus.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

mare, -is, n., *sea;* **mare nostrum,** *the Mediterranean;* **mare Ōceanum,** *the ocean.*

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to the sea, naval, maritime;* **ōra maritima,** *seacoast.*

Marius, -ī, m., *Gaius Marius,* a famous Roman general who conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.).

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars,* Roman god of war.

mās, māris, adj., *male;* as noun, *a male.*

matara, -ae, f., *javelin, used by the Gauls.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother, matron;* **māter familiās** (old gen. of **familia**), *matron.*

māteria, -ae, f., *timber, wood.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage, matrimony;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to marry.*

Matrona, -ae, m., river in northern Gaul, the modern Marne.

mātūrē, adv., *early, betimes;* superl., **mātūrrimē.**

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early, mature.*

maximē, adv., superl., *most, very exceedingly, chiefly, especially;* **quam maximē,** *as much as possible;* pos., **magnopere,** comp., **magis.**

maximus, -a, -um, superl. of **magnus,** *very great, very large, greatest, largest;* **maximus nātū,** *oldest;* **maximīs itineribus,** *by forced marches.*

Medēa, -ae, f., *Medea,* daughter of Æetes, king of Colchis.

medicīna, -ae, f., *art of healing, medicine.*

mediocris, -cre, adj., *middling, moderate;* with **spatium,** *a little, no great;* **nōn mediocris,** *no little, no small degree of.*

mediocriter, adv., *moderately;* **nōn mediocriter,** *in no small degree.*

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj., *inland, between lands.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, the middle of, midst of;* **locus medius utriusque,** *halfway between;* **dē mediā nocte,** *about midnight;* **in colle mediō,** *halfway up the hill.*

Meldī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe between the Seine and the Marne.

melior, comp. of **bonus.**

membrum, -ī, n., *limb, part of the body.*

meminī, meminisse, *remember.*

memor, -oris, adj., *mindful.*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory, recollection;* **memoriā tenēre,** *remember;* **nostrā memoriā,** *within our memory, in our own time.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, state of mind, feeling, intellect;* **mentēs animōsque,** *minds and hearts.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, f., *measure, extent.*

mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention.*

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader.*

mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade, traffic.*

mercēs, -ēdis, f., *wage, pay, hire.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury,* the god of trade, of eloquence, also the messenger of the gods.

mereor, -ērī, -itus, *deserve, merit, earn, gain.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of noon, of midday.*

merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon; south.*

meritum, -ī, n., *merit, service; kindness.*

meritus, -a, -um, adj., *deserved, fit, proper.*

Messāla, -ae, m., a Roman family name.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, *measure, distribute, deal out.*

Mētius, -ī, m., *Marcus Metius,* envoy sent by Caesar to Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *cut, reap, gather.*

metus -ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, -a, -um, adj., *my, mine.*

mihi, see **ego.**

mīles, -itis [cf. ***mīlle***], m., *soldier, legionary soldier* (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service).

mīlitāris, -e, adj., *of the soldiers, military;* **rēs mīlitāris,** *warfare.*

mīlitia, -ae, f., *military service.*

mīlle, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand;* plur. as noun, **mīlia, mīlium,** n., *thousands;* **mīlia passuum,** *thousands of paces, miles.*

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva,* goddess of wisdom and of the arts.

minimē, adv., *least, very little, not at all.*

minimus, -a, -um [superl. of ***parvus***], adj., *smallest, least;* **quam minimum spatī,** *the shortest possible time;* **minimum posse,** *to have very little influence.*

minor, -us [comp. of ***parvus***], adj., *smaller, less;* **quō minus,** *that . . . not;* **minus valēre,** *to have less power;* as neuter noun, *less,* ***not much, not so.***

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *lessen, diminish, weaken; with* **aestus,** *ebb.*

mīrāculum, -ī, n., *wonder, miracle.*

mīrātus, -a, -um, adj., *surprised, wondering at.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., *wonder at, marvel at; wonder, admire.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, marvelous, surprising.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, poor, pitiable, miserable.*

miserē, adv., *wretchedly, sadly, unhappily.*

misereor, miserērī, miseritus, dep., takes gen., *feel pity for, have compassion for, pity.*

misericordia, -ae, f., *mercy, pity, clemency.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, *bewail, lament.*

missus, -ūs, m., *a sending;* **missū Caesaris,** *under Caesar's orders.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch; let go, discharge; throw, hurl, shoot;* **sub iugum mittere,** *to send under the yoke.*

mōbilis, -e, adj., *easily moved, movable, hasty, fickle.*

mōbilitās, -ātis, f., *mobility, fickleness, inconsistency.*

mōbiliter, adv., *easily, readily.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, *control, restrain, regulate.*

modo, adv., *merely, only, just, even; lately, just now;* **nōn modo,** *not only.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, quantity; fashion, manner, style, method;* **quem ad modum,** *just as, as, how.*

moenia, -ium, n. plur., *walls of a city, fortifications.*

mōlēs, -is, f., *mass, dam, dike.*

molestē, adv., *with trouble, with difficulty;* **molestē ferre,** *to be vexed, annoyed.*

molestia, -ae, f., *vexation, annoyance, trouble.*

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, vexatious, grievous.*

mōlīmentum, -ī, n., *trouble, exertion, difficulty.*

molitus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***molō***], adj., *ground;* **molita cibāria,** *meal.*

mollis, -e, adj., *soft, feeble, weak;* **barba mollis,** *downy beard.*

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *grind.*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, tr., *advise, counsel, warn, remind.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, height, hill.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show, point out, make known.*

mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster, wonder.*

mora, -ae, f., *delay, hindrance.*

morātus, p. p. of ***moror.***

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*

Morinī, -ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

morior, morī or **morīrī, mortuus, moritūrus,** *die.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, check, hinder.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortuus, -a, -um, [p. p. of ***morior***], adj., *dead;* as noun, **mortuī, -ōrum,** *the dead.*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, usage;* plur., *customs, habits, character.*

Mosa, -ae, m., *Mosa,* now the river Meuse.

mōtus, p. p. of ***moveō.***

mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement; uprising, disturbance.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, set in motion;* with **castra,** *break camp.*

mox, adv., *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., *throng, great number, multitude, crowd, the common people.*

multō, adv., *much, by much.*

multum, adv., *much, greatly, especially.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much;* plur., *many;* **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **multum,** as noun, *much.*

mundus, -ī, m., *the universe, the world.*

mūnīmentum, -ī, n., *fortification, defense.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify, protect; guard, strengthen.*

mūnītīo, -ōnis, f., *fortification, works, defenses.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *service, duty; present, gift;* **mūnus mīlitiae,** *military service.*

mūrālis, -e [***mūrus***], adj., *of a wall;* **mūrālis falx,** *wall-hook.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall, rampart.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *alter, change.*

Mȳsia, -ae, f., *Mysia,* a country of Asia Minor.

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***nancīscor.***

nam, conj., *for, because.*

Nammēius, -ī, m., an ambassador to Caesar.

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe near the Loire.

namque, conj., *for truly, for indeed.*

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus, *find* (by chance), *get, obtain.*

Nantuātēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva.

Narbō, -ōnis, m., chief city of the Roman province, now Narbonne.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell, relate, report, narrate.*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, *be born, arise, spring up.*

Nasua, -ae, m., a chief of the Suebi.

nātālis, -e, adj., *of birth;* **diēs nātālis,** *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, tribe, nation.*

nātīvus, -a, -um, adj., *native, natural.*

nātō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intr., *swim, float.*

nātūra, -ae, f., *kind, nature, character.*

nātus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***nāscor***], adj., *sprung, born.*

nātus, -ūs, m., *birth;* **maiōrēs natū,** *elders.*

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um, adj., *nautical, naval.*

nāvālis, -e, adj., *of ships, naval.*

nāvicula, -ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *voyage, navigation.*

nāvigium, -ī, n., *boat, vessel.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail, set sail.*

nāvis, -is, f., *ship, vessel, boat;* **nāvis longa,** *warship, battleship;* **nāvis onerāria,** *freight ship, transport.*

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *act with zeal;* **operam nāvāre,** *to do one's best.*

nē, conj., *that not, in order that not;* with words of fearing, *that, lest;* **nē quis,** *that no one, lest anyone;* adv., *not;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not . . . even.*

-ne, enclitic, adv., in direct questions indicates a question and is not translated ; conj., in indirect questions, *whether.*

nec, see **neque.**

necessāriō, adv., *unavoidably, necessarily.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent;* as noun, m., *kinsman, close friend.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, unavoidable.*

necessitās, -ātis, f., *necessity, compulsion.*

necessitūdō, -inis, f., *intimacy, friendship.*

necne [***nec*** + ***ne***], conj., *or not* (in double questions).

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *slay, kill.*

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *disregard, overlook, neglect.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say no, refuse, deny.*

negotior, -ārī, -ātus, *carry on business, trade.*

negōtium, -ī, n., *task, business, enterprise, trouble, difficulty;* **sī quid negōtī,** *if any trouble;* **alicui negōtium dare,** *to give a job to someone, employ.*

Nemetēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, c., *no one, nobody;* **nōn nēmō,** *somebody.*

nepos, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

neque (nec), conj., *and not, and yet . . . not, nor;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor;* **neque enim,** *for not.*

nēquīquam, adv., *in vain, uselessly.*

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., *relating to the Nervii, Nervian.*

Nervius, -ī, m., *a Nervian;* plur., *the Nervii,* a powerful Belgian tribe.

nervus, -ī, m., *muscle, sinew;* plur., *resources, power, strength.*

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī (-sciī), *not know, be ignorant of.*

neu, see **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. and pro., *neither of two, neither;* plur. *neither side, neither party.*

nēve or **neu,** conj., *and not, or not, nor, and that . . . not.*

nex, necis, f., *murder, killing, violent death, execution.*

nihil, n., indecl., *nothing;* as adv., *not at all, not.*

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing;* **nihilō minus,** *none the less.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobrogēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

nītor, nīti, nīxus or **nīsus,** *strive, struggle, rely on.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nōbilis, -e, *noble, well-known, famous;* as noun, m. plur., *nobles, nobility.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, f., *rank, nobility.*

nocēns, -entis, adj., *guilty.*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *harm, injure.*

noctū, adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *nightly; at night, nocturnal.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling;* **nōlī, nōlīte,** with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, -inis, n., *name; reputation, fame;* **suō nōmine,** *on his (their) own account;* **nōmine obsidum,** *as hostages.*

nōminātim, adv., *by name.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *name, call, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not;* **nōn nihil,** *in some measure, somewhat;* **nōn nūllus,** *some;* **nōn numquam,** *sometimes.*

nōnāgintā, num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, *not yet.*

nōnne, interrog. adv., implying an affirmative answer.

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, f., a city of the Norici.

Noricus, -a, -um, adj., relating to the Norici, *Noric, Norican.*

nōs, see **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn, get acquainted with;* perf., *know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, adj., *our, ours.*

nōtitia, -ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with.*

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *known, well known, renowned.*

novem, num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., name of a town of the Bituriges, and also of the Suessiones.

novitās, -ātis, f., *newness, strangeness, novelty.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange, fresh;* superl., **novissimus,** *latest, last;* **novissmum agmen,** *rear of marching army, rear;* **novissimī, -ōrum,** *the men* (soldiers) *at the rear.*

nox, noctis, f., *night;* **prīmā nocte,** *early in the night;* **multā nocte,** *late at night;* **ad multam noctem,** *until late at night, far into the night.*

noxia, -ae, f., *guilt, crime, offense.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, *veil, marry* (of a woman).

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strip, make bare, expose.*

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, exposed, stripped, destitute of, unprotected.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *no, none;* as noun (especially in dat.), *no one;* **nōn nūllī,** *some.*

num, interrog. adv., used in questions to which a negative answer is anticipated.

nūmen, -inis, n., *divine will, power, divinity.*

numerus, -ī, m., *number.*

Numida, -ae, m., *a Numidian,* native of Numidia, a country in the north of Africa.

numquam, adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now, at the present time.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *bring tidings, announce, report.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message, report, news.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūptiae, -ārum, f., *marriage rites, nuptials.*

nūptiālis, -e, adj., *wedding, marriage, nuptial.*

nūptum, see ***nūbō.***

nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod, signal; command, bidding.*

nympha, -ae, f., *nymph.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for;* **quam ob rem,** *for this reason, on this account;* when **quam** is interrog., *why, wherefore;* in composition, *against, toward, to, over.*

obaerātus, -a, -um, adj., *in debt;* as noun, *a debtor.*

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead against, lead towards;* with **fossam,** *prolong, extend.*

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw before, put in the way, set up, expose.*

obiectus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***obiciō***], adj., *placed opposite, opposite.*

obitus, -ūs, m., *death, destruction.*

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***offerō.***

oblinō, -linere, -lēvī, -litus, *smear over, smear, cover over.*

oblīquē, adv., *slanting, obliquely.*

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus, *forget, be forgetful.*

obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cover, darken, hide.*

obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., *dark, shadowy.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beseech* (in the name of things held sacred), *implore, entreat.*

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *observe, watch; heed, pay attention to.*

obses, -idis, m. or f., *hostage.*

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***obsideō.***

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *blockade, siege.*

obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seal, witness, attest.*

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***obstringō.***

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *bind, put under obligation.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *obey, submit to, comply with.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, *entreat, implore.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold against* (*someone*); *obtain, hold, possess, maintain; gain, acquire, occupy.*

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, f., *detraction, disparagement.*

obtulī, see **offerō.**

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *meet, come upon, come against.*

obviam, adv., *in the way of, toward, to meet.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, chance.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, going down;* **occāsus sōlis,** *sunset, west.*

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut down, kill, slay;* **occīsī, -ōrum,** m., *the slain.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hide, conceal, secrete.*

occultus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden, concealed;* **in occultō,** *in secret, hidden.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *business, occupation, employment;* with **reī pūblicae,** *affairs of state.*

occupō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take possession of;* with **rēgna,** *usurp.*

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, *run upon, encounter, meet, find.*

Ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean.*

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town of the Graioceli, in Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth.*

octingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*

Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri.

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate, detest.*

odium, -ī [*ōdī*], n., *hatred, enmity.*

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *strike against, hurt; offend;* **animum offendere,** *to hurt the feelings.*

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *offense, affront.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, *bring before, present, offer, put in one's way;* **sē offerre,** *to expose oneself, to present oneself.*

officium, -ī, n., *duty, obligation, service; official duty, allegiance.*

ōlim, adv., *once, once on a time.*

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go, let go by, disregard, let slip.*

omnīnō, adv., *entirely, altogether, only; at all.*

omnis, -e, *all, the whole of, every.*

onerārius, -a, -um, adj., *for freight;* **onerāria nāvis,** *transport.*

onus, -eris, n., *load, weight, cargo, burden.*

opera, -ae, f., *effort, work, pains, care;* **operam dare,** *to take pains;* **operam novāre,** *to do one's best.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *impression, expectation; notion, belief, reputation, opinion.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it is necessary, it is needful, it is the law, it is best.*

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., *of a town;* as noun, m. plur., **oppidānī, -ōrum,** *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *walled town, stronghold.*

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill completely.*

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place opposite, oppose.*

opportūnē, adv., *at the right time, opportunely.*

opportūnitās, -ātis, f., *fitness, advantage, favorable opportunity, good luck.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, timely, favorable, advantageous.*

oppositus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***oppōnō***], adj., *opposed, set against.*

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***opprimō.***

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, *overwhelm, overpower, crush; surprise.*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, assault, siege.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight against, attack, storm, besiege.*

(ops), opis (nom. and dat. sing. lacking; plur. complete; gen. plur., **opum**), f., *help, assistance, aid;* plur., *resources, wealth, influence, means.*

optātus, -a, -um, adj., *wished-for, desired.*

optimē, superl. of **bene.**

optimus, -a, -um, superl. of **bonus.**

opus [***ops***], indecl., n., *need, necessity;* **opus est,** *it is necessary, there is need;* **sī quid opus factō erit,** *if there shall be any need of action.*

opus, operis, n., *a work, structure, fortification, labor;* either separately or combined as a single word with **quantus; quantopere,** adv., *how greatly.*

ōra, -ae, f., *coast, shore.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *a prophetic announcement, prophecy; oracle.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration, address, argument, plea.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *envoy, representative; speaker.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle;* **orbis terrārum,** *the circle of the earth, the whole world.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *rank, grade, series; order;* **per ōrdinem,** *according to rank.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., a prince of the Helvetii.

orior, orīrī, ortus, *rise, spring up, arise, spring from, begin, be descended from;* **sōl oriēns,** *rising sun, east;* **oriente sōle,** *at sunrise.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *adornment, honor.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deck, adorn, equip, furnish.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *speak, beg, ask, entreat.*

Orpheus, -ī, m., a Thracian bard whose lyre could charm beasts and move rocks and trees.

ortus, -ā, -um, p. p. of ***orior.***

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, *point out, show, present; explain, declare, make known.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *exhibit, display.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *quiet, repose, ease.*

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*

P

P., abbr. for **Pūblius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., *foraging, collecting fodder.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *cattle food, fodder.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conquer, subdue, pacify.*

pācātus, -ā, -um [p. p. of ***pācō***], adj., *quiet, peaceful.*

Padus, -ī, m., the river *Po* in northern Italy.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, *it repents, one regrets.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, -ae, f., *palm* (of the hand), *hand, palm* (tree).

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, *stretch out, spread out;* **passīs manibus,** *with outstretched hands.*

pār, paris, adj., *like, similar, equal, same.*

parātus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***parō***], adj., *ready, prepared.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly, frugally.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare, use sparingly; use with care.*

parēns, -entis, m. or f., *parent.*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, *appear; obey* (with dat.), *submit to, comply.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, produce; gain.*

Parisiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people living on the Sequana (Seine), where Paris now is.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare, provide; procure, arrange.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share, instance; border, district, region, division;* **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side;* **ex utrāque parte,** *on each side;* **quā ex parte,** *for this reason.*

partim, adv., *partly, in part;* **partim . . . partim,** *partly . . . partly; some . . . others.*

partior, -īrī, -ītus, *divide, share.*

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***pariō.***

parum, adv., *little, not much, too little;* **parum dīligenter,** *too carelessly.*

parvulus, -a, -um, adj., *tiny, very small, trifling.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, slight, little.*

passim, adv., *here and there, all about.*

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***pandō*** and ***patior.***

passus, -ūs, m., *stride, pace, five Roman feet;* **mīlle passūs** or **mīlle passuum,** *a thousand paces* (Roman mile).

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *open, lay open.*

patefīō, -fierī, -factus (pass. of ***patefaciō***).

pateō, -ēre, -uī, *be exposed, extend, stretch out, lie open; be revealed, be obvious.*

pater, -tris, m., *father;* plur., *fathers, ancestors.*

paternus, -a, -um, *paternal.*

patior, patī, passus, *allow, endure, suffer, permit.*

patria, -ae, f., *native land, country.*

patrius, -a, -um, adj., *of one's fathers, ancestral.*

patruus, -ī, m., *uncle* (*paternal*).

paucitās, -ātis, f., *small number.*

paucus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** superl. **-issimus,** adj., *little;* plur., *few.* As noun, **paucī, -ōrum,** m. plur., *few, only a few;* n. plur., **pauca, -ōrum,** *a few words.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, gradually, by degrees.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time,* a *little while.*

paulō [abl. of ***paulus,*** *little*], adv., *by a little, a little, slightly, somewhat.*

paululum, adv., *a very little.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

Paulus, -ī, m., see **Aemilius.**

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *do wrong, transgress.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *property, money, wealth.*

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle, flesh of cattle;* plur., *flocks, herds, cattle;* **pecore vīvere,** *to live on* (*to eat*) *meat.*

pedālis, -e, adj., *a foot thick.*

pedes, -itis [***pēs***], m., *foot soldier;* plur., *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., *on foot, of infantry;* **pedestrēs cōpiae,** *infantry forces.*

peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry, foot* (soldiery).

Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius,* serving under Caesar, his uncle, as **lēgātūs.**

peior, see **malus.**

peius, see **male.**

Peliās, -ae, m., brother of Aeson and uncle of Jason.

pellis, -is, f., *hide, skin, leather;* **sub pellibus,** *in tents.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, rout, defeat, repulse, expel.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay, pay out, weigh out;* **poenās pendere,** *to pay the penalty, suffer punishment.*

penitus, adv., *far within, deeply, deep, even to.*

per, prep. with acc., *through, across, along; over, among; by means of;* **per sē,** *of his (their) own accord;* in compounds, *through and through, thoroughly, very.*

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take completely, get, obtain; feel, experience, learn.*

percontātiō, -ōnis, f., *questioning, inquiry.*

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **currī, -cursus,** *run through, run the length of* (anything).

percussus, p. p. of ***percutiō.***

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, *pierce, strike through, transfix, hit.*

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, *memorize, learn thoroughly.*

perditus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***perdō***], adj., *desperate, lost, abandoned, ruined.*

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *ruin, destroy.*

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, bring through, conduct, convey, guide;* with **fossam,** etc., *prolong, extend, bring over, win over.*

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *pass away, die, perish.*

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ride through, drive about.*

perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., *very small.*

perfacilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry through, deliver, endure, endure to the end.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, finish, execute, perfect.*

perfidia, -ae, f., *faithlessness, treachery, perfidy.*

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, *break through.*

perfuga, -ae, m., *deserter, fugitive.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *flee for refuge, run away, escape, desert.*

perfugium, -ī, n., *refuge, place of refuge, place of safety.*

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus, *go on, advance, proceed.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus, *make a trial, try, test; run risk, be in danger.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *test, trial, danger, peril, risk.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilful, experienced.*

perlātus, from ***perferō.***

perlēctus, p. p. of ***perlegō.***

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *read through, read, peruse.*

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *continue, stay, remain, persist, hold out.*

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *allow, permit, give up, grant, surrender, intrust.*

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move deeply, arouse, affect, alarm; influence.*

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsus, *soothe, pacify, appease.*

permulsus, p. p. of ***permulceō.***

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *ruin, destruction.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī, n., *plumb line;* **ad perpendiculum,** *perpendicularly.*

perpetior, -petī, -pessus, *bear steadfastly, suffer, endure.*

perpetuō, adv., *constantly, continually.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *continuous, unbroken;* **in perpetuum**, *forever.*

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *thoroughly investigate, inquire about.*

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through, force one's way, penetrate.*

perruptus, p. p. of ***perrumpō.***

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write in full, describe in writing, report, recount.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow up, pursue closely, attack.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *persevere, persist.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, *pay, pay in full, suffer.*

perspectus, p. p. of ***perspiciō.***

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *see through, perceive; learn, inspect, observe, discover.*

persuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, induce, convince;* impers. in pass. with dat. of person: **sibi persuāsum habēre**, *to be convinced, be persuaded.*

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, *thoroughly frighten, alarm, terrify.*

pertināciа, -ae, f., *stubbornness, obstinacy*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, *tend, reach, extend.*

pertulī, see **perferō.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *disturbance, confusion, panic, alarm.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb, alarm, throw into confusion.*

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, *rove, roam about.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through, arrive at, reach, fall to.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot; a foot*, as a measure of distance; **pedem referre**, *to withdraw, retreat.*

petō, petere, petīvī (-iī), petītus, *aim at, seek, attack; ask, ask for, request, try to get.*

Petrosidius, -ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a Roman standard bearer.

phalanx, -angis, f., *phalanx.*

Phāsis, -idis (acc. **Phāsim**), m., a river in Colchis flowing into the Black Sea.

Phīneus, -ī, m., a blind Thracian king.

Phrixus, -ī, m., who was borne to Colchis by a ram with a golden fleece.

Pictonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe south of the Liger (Loire).

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

pīlus, -ī, m., *a maniple of the triarii;* **prīmus pīlus**, *first* (ranking) *maniple of a legion;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō**, *the chief centurion of a legion.*

pinna, -ae, f., *parapet, battlement.*

piscis, -is, m., *fish.*

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., a Roman family name; *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, consul 58 B.C., a father-in-law of Caesar; also *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandfather of the above, defeated by the Tigurini in 107 B.C.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *please;* used impersonally: **placet**, *it pleases, one likes.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *appease, pacify.*

plānē, adv., *clearly, plainly; entirely.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *plain, level ground.*

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *level, even, flat.*

plausus, -ūs, m., *applause, approval.*

plēbēs, -eī, f., same as **plēbs.**

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, populace.*

plēnē, adv., *fully, entirely, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full, complete.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, usually, for the most part.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., mostly in plur., *the majority, most.*

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of **multus**, *most;* plur., *very many, the greatest number; most;* **quam plūrimī**, *as many as possible;* **plūrimum posse**, *to be very influential, to be most powerful;* **plurimum valēre**, *to have most power, to have very great influence.*

plūs, plūris, comp. of **multum**; in sing., as a n. noun, *the greater part;* as an adv., *more, much, very.*

poena, -ae, f., *penalty, punishment.*

pollex, -icis, m., *thumb.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, f., *pledge, promise.*

pollicitus, p. p. of ***polliceor.***

Polyphēmus, -ī, a one-eyed Cyclops, also an Argonaut.

Pompēius, -ī, m., *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey,* Caesar's father-in-law and rival, born 106 B.C.; conquered by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus in 49 B.C.

pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, lay down, set, pitch* (camp); in pass., *be placed, be situated, depend on.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, -ōnis, f., *plundering, raid, laying waste.*

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation* (as a whole).

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, *hold out, stretch out;* **porrēctus, -a, -um**, *stretched out, level;* **porrēcta loca pertinent**, *the level ground* (*places*) *extend.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring,*

portōrium, -ī, n., *toll, tariff, duty.*

portus, -ūs, m., *port, harbor.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, *demand, claim, need, require.*

positus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***pōnō***], adj., *placed, be situated.*

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation.*

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *possess, occupy, seize, hold.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can; be powerful, have influence;* **plūrimum posse**, *to be most* (*very*) *powerful;* **equitātū nihil posse**, *to have no strength in cavalry;* **quam maximum potest**, *the greatest possible.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind;* adv., *afterwards.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards, after.*

posteāquam, conj., *after.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., *the following, next;* as noun, **posterī, -ōrum,** m. plur., *descendants, posterity;* comp., **posterior,** *later;* superl., **postrēmus, -a, -um,** *last;* **postrēmō,** abl., as adv., *finally, at last.*

postquam, conj., *after, when.*

postrēmō, see **posterus.**

postrēmus, see **posterus.**

postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day, on the following day;* with following gen., **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** *on the day after.*

postulātum, -ī, n., *demand, claim, request.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, demand, request, claim.*

potēns, -entis, adj., *powerful, mighty.*

potentātus, -ūs, m., *power, supremacy.*

potentia, -ae, f., *power, influence, authority.*

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, civil authority.*

potior, potīrī, potītus, *get possession of, be master of, get, acquire.*

potītus, p. p. of ***potior.***

potius, comp. adv., *rather, sooner.*

prae, prep. with abl., *before, on account of, in comparison with, because of.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus, *furnish, offer; occasion; display, exhibit, show.*

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, *take precaution, be on guard; prevent.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *excel, surpass, go ahead of, precede.*

praeceps, -cipitis, adj., *precipitous, headlong.*

praeceptum, -ī, n., *command, injunction, instruction.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take beforehand, anticipate; give instructions; order, direct.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cast headlong, hurl down.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially, chiefly.*

praeclārus, -a, -um, adj., *splendid, distinguished, brilliant.*

Praecōnīnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (**-currī**), **-cursūrus,** *run ahead, anticipate, precede.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoils, plunder, prey.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *proclaim, report, describe, boast.*

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *foretell, prophesy, predict.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, *obtain booty, rob, plunder, spoil.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *construct before, construct, extend.*

praefectus, -ī, m., *prefect, commander, captain, leader.*

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *place before, put before; esteem above, prefer to;* **alicui sē praeferre,** *to surpass anyone.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *put in command of, set over.*

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead, send forward.*

praemium, -ī, *prize, reward, distinction, bribe.*

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prefer, choose, choose rather.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare beforehand.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put in command of, place in charge of, set over.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break off, tear off.*

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *direct, order, prescribe.*

praescrīptum, -ī, n., *dictation, order, command.*

praesēns, -entis [pres. p. of ***praesum***], adj., *present, at hand, immediate.*

praesentia, -ae [***praesēns***], f., *the present time, presence;* **in praesentiā,** *at the moment, for the moment.*

praesertim, adv., *particularly, especially.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *defense, guard, garrison, fortification.*

praestāns, -stantis, adj., *preëminent, remarkable, extraordinary.*

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus, *stand before, surpass;* **praestat** (impers.), *it is better.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be over, be in charge of, be in command of.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *by, past, beyond; besides, except; contrary to.*

praetereā, adv., *besides, furthermore, in addition.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itus,** *go by, pass by, pass over.*

praeterita, -ōrum, n. plur., *bygones, the past.*

praeteritus, p. p. of ***praetereō.***

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *overlook, omit, lose.*

praetor, -ōris, m., *judge; commander, leader.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to a general, praetorian;* with **cohors,** *bodyguard.*

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *burn at the tip.*

praeūstus, p. p. of ***praeūrō.***

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *press upon, hard press, oppress, harass;* pass., *be hard pressed.*

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, *seize, grasp, take.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price, value.*

prex, precis (only plur. forms in common use; nom. and gen. sing. lacking), f., *prayer, entreaty.*

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before, the previous day.*

prīmipīlus, m., *the chief centurion, the first centurion* (of a legion), *colonel.*

prīmō, adv., *at first, in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *first* (in a series), *at first, in the first place;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.*

prīmus, -a, -um, superl. of ***prior,*** adj., *first, foremost; beginning, front.*

prīnceps, -ipis, adj., *first, foremost, chief;* as noun, *leader, chieftain, noble.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership, first place, supremacy.*

prior, prius, comp. adj., *former, first;* plur. as noun, **priōrēs, -um,** *those in front;* superl., **prīmus.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj., *old time, former, previous;* **prīstinus diēs,** *the day before.*

prius, adv., *before, sooner.*

priusquam, conj., *before, sooner, than;* often separated: **prius . . . quam.**

prīvātim, adv., *in private, privately.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, individual, personal.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr., *rob, deprive of.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; in behalf of, for, for the sake of; in return for, in comparison with;* **prō-, prōd-, por-,** in certain compounds.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prove, test, show, be satisfied with.*

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *move forward, go forward, advance.*

Procillus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.

prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., *ex-consul, proconsul* (when assigned as governor of a province).

procul, adv., *far off, at a distance, from afar.*

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, *fall down, lie down, incline, lean forward, slope.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attend to, care for, administer.*

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursūrus,** *run forward, charge, sweep forward.*

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *advance, go forth.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treason, treachery.*

prōditor, -ōris, m., *traitor.*

proditus, p. p. of ***prōdō.***

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *transmit, hand over; betray.*

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, lead forward, produce, protract, prolong.*

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, *fight in battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat, fight.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure, setting out.*

profectus, p. p. of ***proficīscor.***

prōfectus, p. p. of ***prōficiō.***

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry forward, bring out, produce.*

professus, p. p. of ***profiteor.***

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *effect, accomplish.*

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus, *start, proceed, depart, set out.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, *admit, acknowledge, state, volunteer.*

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rout, strike down, overthrow, put to rout, overcome.*

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, *flow forth, rise.*

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj., *sprung, descended.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus, *step forward, advance, march forward, proceed.*

prōgressus, p. p. of ***prōgredior.***

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, *restrain, hinder, keep off, shut off, debar, prohibit.*

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl forward, throw down* (**arma**); *reject, abandon;* with **ex nāvī,** *leap.*

proinde, adv., *therefore, hence, accordingly.*

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send forward, promise.*

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move forward, push ahead, advance.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., *ready, prompt, quick.*

prōmunturium, -ī, n., *promontory, headland.*

prōnē, adv., *inclined, leaning forward.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, declare, proclaim, give orders, pronounce.*

prope, as adv., *almost, nearly;* as prep. with acc., *near, nearby.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive away, rout, repel, repulse.*

properē, adv., *quickly.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten, make haste, hurry.*

propinquitās, -ātis, f., *nearness; relationship* (by blood), *kinship.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, near;* as noun, m., *relative, kinsman.*

propior, -ius [*prope*], adj., *nearer.*

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, set before, propose, make known, explain.*

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *particular, one's own, characteristic.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of;* adv., *near, close by.*

propterea, adv., *on this account, for this reason;* **propterea quod,** *because.*

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight on the defensive, come forth to fight.*

prōpulso, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ward off, repel, drive off.*

prōra, -ae, f., *bow, prow* (of a ship).

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *demolish, tear down, overthrow.*

prōrutus, p. p. of ***proruō.***

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow, escort, pursue; address.*

prōspectus, -ūs, m., *view, outlook.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look forward, look out, watch; provide for.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *be an advantage, benefit, help, avail.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover, protect.*

prōtinus, adv., *immediately, at once, straightway.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *repel, drive away, repulse.*

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***prōvehō.***

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry forward;* pass., *set sail, put forth* (to sea), *advance.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *foresee, provide, prepare.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *office, official duty* (of a Roman magistrate); *province,* especially the province of Gaul, **prōvincia ulterior.**

prōvinciālis, -e, adj., *provincial.*

prōvīsus, p. p. of ***prōvideō.***

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly forward, hurry out, rush forth.*

proximē, superl. of **prope,** adv., *lately, very recently.*

proximus, -a, -um, superl. of **propior,** adj., *nearest, neighboring; latest, last.*

prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, prudence, discretion.*

Ptiāniī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

pūblicē, adv., *officially, publicly.*

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make public property of, confiscate.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *of the people, of the state, public, official.*

Pūblius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, sense of shame, sense of honor.*

puer, -ī, m., *boy, lad;* **ā puerīs,** *from childhood.*

puerīlis, -e, adj., *of a child, youthful.*

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle, fighting.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, give battle;* impers. in pass., **pugnātum est,** *the battle was fought.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pullo,* a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, p. p. of ***pellō.***

pulsus, -ūs, m., *beat, stroke.*

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust.*

puppis, -is, f., *stern* (of a ship)

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cleanse, purge, justify, excuse.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, suppose.*

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., with **montēs,** *the Pyrenees mountains,* between Spain and France.

Q

Q., abbr. for **Quīntus.**

quā, adv., *where, by which.*

quācumque, adv., *by whatever way, wherever.*

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., *forty each, forty.*

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek, search for;* **eadem quaerere,** *to make the same inquiries.*

quaestiō, -ōnis, f., *investigation.*

quaestor, -ōris, m., *quartermaster, treasurer, quaestor,* Roman official having charge of finances.

quaestus, -ūs, m., *gain, profit.*

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *of what sort? of what nature?*

quam, adv. and conj., *how; than, as;* with a superl., *as possible:* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

quamquam, conj., *although.*

quamvīs, adv., *however much, as you will.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, whenever.*

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great? how much?* **quantus . . . tantus,** *how much . . . so much, as (so) much . . . as;* **quantum bonī,** *how much good.*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth.*

quasi, conj., *as if, just as.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que (enclitic), conj., *and.*

queror, querī, questus, *complain, complain of, lament, bewail.*

questus, p. p. of ***queror.***

quī, quae, quod, rel. pro., *who, which, that.*

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *which? what? of what sort?*

quī, quae (**qua**), **quod,** indef. adj., used after **sī, nē, ubi,** etc., *any, some.*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pro. and adj., *whoever, whichever, whatever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pro.; **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** adj., *certain* (known), *a certain one, a kind of.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least, certainly;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not . . . even.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*

quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus, *keep still, rest, repose.*

quiētus, -a, -um, adj., *quiet, peaceful, at rest.*

quīn, conj., used with words of doubting, refusing, hindering, preventing when modified by a negative, *that not, but that, that, from* (doing something), *to do* (something) *without;* **quīn etiam,** *in fact, moreover.*

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, interrog. adj., *which, pray? what, pray?*

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., *by fives, five each.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, ordinal num. adj., *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

quis, quid, interrog. pro., *who? what?* adj., **quī** (**quis**), **quae, quod,** *who? which? what?* as an indef. pro. and adj. after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** etc., *anyone, anything; any.*

quisnam, quidnam, interrog. pro., *who, pray? what, pray?* etc.

quispiam, quidpiam, indef. pro.; **quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** adj., *anyone, anything; any.*

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pro., *anyone at all, anything, anyone, any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque, indef. pro. and adj., *each one, every one, each, every.*

quisquis, quidquid (**quicquid**), nom. and acc.; **quōquō,** abl. (only forms in common use), indef. rel. pro., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (adj., **quodvīs**), indef. adj. and pro., *any you please, any whatever.*

quō, adv., (1) interrog., *whither? to what end?* rel., *into which place, whither, to which, to whom;* indef., after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** *to any place, in any direction;* (2) conj., with a comp. to express purpose, *in order that, that;* **quō minus,** *that not, so that, not.*

quoad, conj., *as long as, as far as, until.*

quod (neut. acc. sing. of **quī**), conj., *because, since, inasmuch as;* **quod sī,** *but if.*

quōniam, conj., *since, as, inasmuch as.*

quoque, adv., placed directly after the word it emphasizes, *also, too.*

quōqueversus, adv., *in every direction, everywhere.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many? as many.*

quotannīs, adv., *yearly, annually.*

quotiēns, adv., *how often? how many times? as often as.*

quotiēnscumque, adv., *whenever, however often.*

quotiēs, same as ***quotiēns.***

R

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root, base;* plur., *foot of a mountain.*

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon.*

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.*

rapiditās, -ātis, f., *velocity, rush, swiftness.*

rapīna, -ae, f., *pillaging, plundering.*

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus, *seize, snatch, seize and carry off.*

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *scattered, few, straggling.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *calculation, reckoning, account; method, manner, plan; reason;* **ratiōnem habēre,** *to take an account.*

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

ratus, p. p. of ***reor.***

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe of the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, prefix, *again, back, away.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *revolt, uprising, renewal of hostilities.*

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *withdraw, go back, retire.*

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh, late, new.*

receptus, -ūs, m., *retreat, refuge, way of retreat.*

recessus, -ūs, m., *retreat, opportunity of retreat.*

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *fall back, fall upon, recoil.*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take back, recover, admit;* **sē recipere,** *withdraw, retreat, retire.*

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *read aloud.*

rēctē, adv., *correctly, properly, rightly.*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight;* **recta via,** *in a straight course.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *recover, regain, get back.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reject, refuse, decline.*

red-, see **re-.**

redāctus, p. p. of ***redigō.***

redditus, p. p. of ***reddō.***

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, return, restore; render, pay.*

redēmptus, p. p. of ***redimō.***

redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus, *go back, come back, return; be reduced.*

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, *bring down, reduce, render.*

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy back, redeem, purchase.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew, restore, revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, f., *a returning.*

reditus, -ūs, m., *a return.*

Redonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back, bring back, withdraw, draw back, extend back.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *carry back, bring, bring back;* **pedem referre,** *to retreat;* **grātiam referre,** *to show gratitude.*

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *make over, renew, repair, refresh.*

refrāctus, p. p. of ***refringō.***

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, *break down, burst open.*

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *run away, escape, avoid.*

refulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, *gleam, flash, shine.*

rēgia, -ae, f., *palace, royal palace.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *boundary, district, region, section.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reign, rule, govern.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power, sway; kingdom, rule.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *direct, govern, control.*

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw back, hurl back, drive back, reject.*

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, *become weak, be weakened.*

relātus, p. p. of ***referō.***

relictus, p. p. of ***relinquō.***

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious obligation, religious scruple, religious observance; superstition.*

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, *leave behind, leave; abandon, forsake.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, the rest of.*

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *stay behind, stay.*

remedium, -ī, n., *remedy, cure.*

rēmex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe living near the present site of Rheims.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go back, return.*

reminīscor, -minīscī, *recall to mind, remember* (with the gen.).

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back, hurl back; relax, remit, give up.*

remollēscō, -mollēscere, *become soft, lose strength, become feeble.*

remōtus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***removeō***], adj., *remote, distant.*

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back, move away, remove, take away, put out of the way.*

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, *reward, repay, recompense.*

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar;* **rēmīs contendere,** *to ply the oars.*

Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the Remi.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew, revive.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back word, report.*

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse, repel.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden, hasty, unlooked for;* **repentīnō,** abl. used as adv., *suddenly.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find out, discover, learn.*

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *seek again, ask back, demand again, claim, exact.*

rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptūrus, *creep.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry back.*

repperī, see **reperiō.**

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *do at once.*

reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *hold back, censure, blame.*

repressus, p. p. of ***reprimō.***

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, *check, drive back, prevent.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reject, repudiate, spurn, disdain.*

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight back, defend, oppose, resist.*

repulsus, p. p. of ***repellō.***

requirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quīsītus, *demand, seek, require, ask for, need, miss.*

rēs, reī, f., *affair, business, property;* **rēs familiāris,** *private property;* **rēs pūblica,** *public interest, state, republic;* **rēs mīlitāris,** *warfare;* **rēs secundae,** *favorable circumstances, prosperity;* **rem gerere,** *to administer a thing, perform a task, fight;* **quā rē,** *wherefore;* **quam ob rem,** *for what reason? why? for this reason.*

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down, destroy.*
rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *find out, learn, discover.*
rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write again, transfer* (in writing), *enroll.*
reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep back, reserve, keep in reserve, keep.*
resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, *settle down, become quiet, subside.*
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, *stay back, stay behind, remain, halt; resist.*
respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look back, regard; consider, contemplate.*
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply.*
respōnsum, -ī, n., *answer, reply, response.*
respuō, -spuere, -spuī, *spit out, reject, spurn.*
restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *restore, renew, replace; give back, return, rebuild.*
retentus, p. p. of ***retineō.***
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold back, retain, restrain; maintain;* **memoriam retinēre,** *to remember.*
retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *bring back, drag back.*
revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, *pull away, tear out.*
revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus, *bind back, make fast, fasten.*
revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *recall, call back, withdraw.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m., the river *Rhone.*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a stream).
rīsus, -ūs, m., *laugh, laughter.*
rīvus, -ī, m., *stream, brook.*
rōbur, -oris, n., *oak, strength, firmness.*
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request, implore.*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman;* as noun, **Rōmānus, -ī,** m., *a Roman.*
rōstrum, -ī, m., *beak; ram.*
rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*
rubus, -ī, m., *bramble.*
Rūfus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.
rūmor, -ōris, m., *report, rumor.*
rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff, rock.*
rūrsus, adv., *again, anew, in turn.*
Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe near the Province.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name or cognomen; see **Titūrius.**
Sabis, -is (acc. **-im**), m., a river in Gaul, now the *Sambre.*
sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice, offering.*
saepe, adv., *often, many times;* **saepius,** *more often, too often.*
saepenumerō, adv., *many times, frequently.*
saepes, -is, f., *hedge.*
saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus, *rage, be fierce.*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*
sagittārius, -ī, m., *bowman, archer.*
sagulum, -ī, n., *military cloak.*
Salymdēssus, -ī, m., a city in Thrace.
saltus, -ūs, m., *glen, glade, thicket.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *health, safety, well-being.*
sancīo, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus, *make sacred, establish.*

sanguis, -inis (sing. only), m., *blood.*
sānitās, -ātis, f., *sanity, good sense.*
sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *heal, cure, remedy.*
Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī, -ōrum,** m. plur., a tribe in western Gaul.
sarcina, -ae, f., *pack;* plur., *soldier's baggage, packs.*
sarmenta, -ōrum, n. plur., *twigs, fagots, brushwood.*
satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently, fully;* indecl. adj., *enough, sufficient;* indecl. noun, often with a gen. of the whole, *quite enough, sufficient.*
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize.*
satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, reparation, amends.*
satus, p. p. of ***serō.***
saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded;* as noun, *a wounded man.*
saxum, -ī, n., *rock.*
scālae, -ārum, f. plur., *ladder, scaling ladder.*
scapha, -ae, f., *skiff, light boat.*
scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, criminal, vicious, accursed.*
scelus, -eris, n., *crime, wickedness.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill.*
scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, *tear, tear down, tear into pieces, cut.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, understand.*
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
sē, see **suī.**
sē- (**sed-**), prefix, *apart.*
sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go away from, withdraw, depart.*
sēcrētō, adv., *apart, in private.*
sēcrētus, -a, -um, *secret, inner, personal.*
sectiō, -ōnis, f., *booty.*
sectūra, -ae, f., *quarry, shaft, mine.*
sēcum, instead of **cum sē.**
secundum, prep. with acc., *according to, following, besides.*
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, second; successful, favorable;* comp., **secundior, -ius; secundiōrēs rēs,** *more favorable conditions, greater prosperity.*
secūtus, p. p. of ***sequor.***
sed, conj., *but, yet.*
sēdecim [***sex*** + ***decem***], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen.*
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit, be seated.*
sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, home, abode, dwelling.*
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *seditious, factious.*
Sedūnī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe of the Alps.
Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.
sēiungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *separate, disjoin.*
semel, adv., *once;* **ut semel,** *when once, as soon as;* **semel atque iterum,** *again and again.*
sēmentis, -is, f., *seeding, sowing, planting.*
sēmita, -ae, f., *by-way, path.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
Semprōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* an officer under Caesar.
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*

senex, senis, adj., *old;* as noun, m., *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *six each, six.*

Senonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Sequana (Seine).

sententia, -ae, f., *feeling; opinion, purpose, verdict.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize, perceive; think, judge; learn, know.*

sentis, -is, m., *brier.*

sēparātim, adv., *apart, asunder, separately.*

sēparātus, -a, -um, adj., *separate.*

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *divide, separate.*

septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

septentriōnēs, -um, m. plur., *the seven plough oxen, the seven stars of the constellation Great Bear; north.*

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh.*

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae, f., *burial.*

Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine river.*

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sequani;* as noun, m., *a Sequanian;* plur., *the Sequani.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus, *follow, accompany.*

Ser., abbr. for **Servius.**

sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, conversation.*

sērō, adv., *late, too late.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *sow.*

serta, -ōrum, n. plur., *wreaths of flowers, garlands.*

Sertōrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius,* a Roman general.

servīlis, -e, adj., *servile, pertaining to a slave.*

serviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus, *serve, be a slave to;* **rūmōribus servīre,** *to pay heed to rumors, be slaves of rumor.*

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *bondage, slavery, servitude.*

Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep, preserve.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave.*

sescentī, see **sexcentī.**

sēsē, see **suī.**

sēsquipedālis, -e, adj., *a foot and a half in measure* (thick, etc.).

sētius, comp. adv., *less;* **nihilō sētius,** *none the less, nevertheless.*

seu, see **sive.**

sevēritās, -ātis, f., *strictness, severity, harshness.*

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call aside, lure away.*

sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

sexcentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *six hundred.*

Sextius, -ī, m., *Titus Sextius,* a Roman lieutenant.

sī, conj., *if, whether;* **quod sī,** *but if;* **sī quis,** *if anyone;* **sī quid,** *if anything.*

sibi, dat. of **suī.**

Sibusātēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

sīc, adv., *thus, in this way, in this manner, so;* **sīc . . . ut,** *so . . . that* **ut . . . sīc,** *as . . . so.*

siccitās, -ātis, f., *drought, dryness.*

sīcut or **sīcutī,** adv., *just as, as if.*

sīdus, -eris, n., *star.*

sīgnifer, -erī, m., *standard bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis [*significō*], f., *signal, warning.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *indicate, make signs, show, signify.*

sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, emblem, standard;* **sīgna inferre,** *to advance;* **sīgna conversa īnferre,** *to face about and advance to the attack.*

silentium, -ī, n., *silence;* abl., **silentiō,** *in silence, silently.*

Sīlius, -ī, m., *Titus Silius,* lieutenant under Caesar.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*

silvestris, -e, adj., *covered with trees, wooded.*

similis, -e, adj., *similar, resembling;* superl., **simillimus.**

simul, adv., *at once, at the same time;* **simul atque (ac),** *as soon as.*

simulācrum, -ī, n., *image, likeness, effigy.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, f., *pretense, semblance, deceit.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pretend.*

simultās, -ātis, f., *rivalry.*

sīn, conj., *but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *one by one, singly.*

singulāris, -e, adj., *single; unique, extraordinary.*

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., *one each, one at a time.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left; awkward, unlucky;* **ā sinistrā,** *on the left;* as a noun, **sinistra, -ae,** f., *left hand.*

situs, -ūs, m., *site, position, situation.*

sīve [*seu*], conj., *or if, or;* **sīve . . . sīve,** *either . . . or, whether . . . or, if . . . or.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, -ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

socius, -ī, m., *partner, comrade, ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*

soldurius, -ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

soleō, solēre, solitus, semi-dep., intr., *be accustomed, be wont.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, f., *loneliness, solitude; lonely place, wilderness.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *instigate, stir up, agitate, incite, bribe.*

sollicitūdō, -inis, f., *anxiety, apprehension, uneasiness.*

solum, -ī, n., *soil, ground, earth, bottom, foundation.*

sōlus, -a, -um, irr. adj., *alone, solitary, lonely;* **sōlum,** adv., *only, alone.*

solūtus, p. p. of ***solvō.***

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, release;* with (or without) **nāvem,** *cast off, set sail.*

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister, step-sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot, fate, fortune, chance.*

Sōtiātēs, -ium, m., a tribe of Aquitania.

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter, sprinkle.*

spatium, -ī, n., *extent* (of time or space), *distance, time, space; period;* **quantum fuit diēī spatium,** *as long as daylight lasted.*

speciēs, -ēī, f., *appearance, sight; show, pretense, display;* **ad speciem,** *for show.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, gaze upon; face.*

speculātor, -ōris, m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj., *spying, scouting.*

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, *spy, watch, scout.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope, look for, expect.*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīritus, -ūs, m., *breath, spirit;* plur., *arrogance, pride.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strip, deprive, rob.*

sponte, abl. (and **spontis,** gen., only forms in use), f., *of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own initiative.*

stabilitās, -ātis, f., *firmness, stability.*

stabulum, -ī, n., *stable, stall.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once, instantly.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *outpost, station; sentry, picket;* **in statiōne,** *on guard.*

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *set up, erect; decide, decree, determine, establish.*

statūra, -ae, f., *stature.*

status, -ūs, m., *standing, position, condition.*

stetī, see **stō.**

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, adj., *paying tribute, tributary.*

stīpendium, -ī, n., *tribute, tax, pay.*

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, intr., *stand, abide by.*

strāmentum, -ī, n., *straw, thatch.*

strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, rattle, din.*

stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw, unsheathe* (a sword).

studeō, studēre, studuī, *be eager for, desire, give attention to.*

studium, -ī, n., *zeal, eagerness, devotion, good will; pursuit.*

stultē, adv., *foolish.*

sub, prep. (1) with acc., in expressions implying motion, *under, beneath, near to, up to;* of time, *near;* **sub vesperum,** *toward evening;* (2) with abl., when motion toward is not implied, *under, beneath, below, at the base of.*

subāctus, p. p. of ***subigō.***

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *draw up, lead up, beach, moor.*

subeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go under, approach, go up to, come up; undergo.*

subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *dig under, stab* (beneath).

subfossus, p. p. of ***subfodiō.***

subiciō, -icere, -iecī, -iectus, *throw from below, throw under, expose; subject.*

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive under; subdue.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly, immediately, unexpectedly.*

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***subeō***], adj., *sudden, unexpected, quick.*

sublātus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***tollō***], adj., *elated, exultant.*

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *raise from below, raise, support, sustain; relieve, assist.*

sublica, -ae, f., *stake, pile.*

subluō, -luere, -lūtus, *flow along the base of, wash.*

subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, provide, supply.*

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *reinforce.*

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *drive back, drive off, dislodge.*

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *dig under, undermine.*

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *follow closely, follow up; succeed to.*

subsidium, -ī, n., *support, aid, assistance, reinforcement.*

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *halt, make a stand.*

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be near, close by, be at hand.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *take away, carry away.*

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., *conveying, carrying, transportation.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *bring up.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come to the aid of, assist, rescue.*

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come up, approach; succeed, relieve; prosper, be successful.*

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire.*

successus, -ūs, m., *approach, advance.*

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut down, fell.*

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, *run to help, run to support, succor.*

sūcus, -ī, m., *juice.*

sudis, -is, f., *stake.*

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe, *Swabians.*

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., *Swabian.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., a Belgian tribe.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *appoint; be sufficient.*

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *ballot, vote.*

Sugambrī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

suī, sibi, sē, reflex. pro., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them;* **inter sē,** *with each other, with one another.*

Sulla, -ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla,* a Roman general and dictator.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* a lieutenant under Caesar.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist;* **mihi est in animō,** *I intend.*

summa, -ae, f., *sum, total, main part; management, leadership;* **summa imperī,** *supreme command.*

summus, -a, -um (superl. of ***superus,*** *above;* comp., ***superior***), adj., *highest, top of;* as noun, **summum, -ī,** n., *top of, summit.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, get, assume;* **supplicium sūmere,** *to exact (inflict) a penalty.*

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj., *costly, expensive.*

sūmptus, -ūs, m., *cost, expense.*

superbē, adv., *haughtily, insolently, proudly.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *haughty, insolent, proud.*

superior, -ius [comp. of ***superus***], adj., *higher, better, superior.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *overcome, conquer, defeat; surpass, excel; survive, prevail.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *sit above, be above, refrain from, decline.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be over, survive, be left, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., *above, on high;* comp., **superior,** *superior;* superl., **suprēmus,** also **summus.**

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *be supplied, hold out, be at hand.*

supplēmentum, -ī, n., *reinforcement, supply.*

supplex, -icis, m. and f., *suppliant, petitioner.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *supplication, thanksgiving* (for victory).

suppliciter, adv., *as suppliant.*
supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment, death penalty.*
suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put under, substitute, forge.*
supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, convey, furnish, supply.*
suprā, adv., *above;* prep. with acc., *above, before, beyond.*
suprēmus, -a, -um (superl. of **superus**), adj., *highest, latest.*
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *undertake, assume; undergo;* **sibi suscipere,** *to take upon one's self.*
suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsus, *hang, hang up, suspend.*
suspicātus, p. p. of ***suspicor.***
suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion, distrust.*
suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *suspect, conjecture.*
sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sustain, endure, hold out.*
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold up under, bear, endure; withstand, check, stop;* **sē sustinēre,** *to support one's self, stand.*
sustulī, see **tollō.**
suus, -a, -um, reflex. adj., *his (her, its, their) own;* **sua, -ōrum,** n. plur. *his (her, its, their) possessions.*
Symplēgadēs, -um, f. plur., *Symplegades,* mythical rocks in the Black Sea.

T

T., abbr. for **Titus.**
tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent.*
tabula, -ae, f., *board covered with wax, record, list.*
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, *be silent, keep silent, keep secret.*
tacitus, -a, -um [p. p. of ***taceō***], adj., *silent.*
tālis, -e, adj., *such.*
tam, adv., *so, so much, so very;* **tam . . . quam,** *as (so) . . . as.*
tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless, however, still.*
Tamesis, -is, m., *the Thames river,* in Britain.
tametsī, conj., *though, although.*
tandem, adv., *at last, finally;* in questions, *pray, tell me.*
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch, border on, reach.*
tantopere, adv., *so greatly, so much.*
tantulus, -a, -um, adj., *so small, so trifling, so little, so unimportant.*
tantum, adv., *so much, merely, only, so far.*
tantum modo, adv., *only.*
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *of such great size, so great;* **tantī est,** *it is of so great weight, of so great value.*
Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Aquitania.
tardē, adv., *tardily, slowly.*
tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hinder, delay, retard, check.*
tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, tardy; sluggish.*
Tarusātēs, -ium, m., a tribe of Aquitania.
Tasgetius, -ī, m., a prince of the Carnutes.
taurus, -ī, m., *bull, ox.*
tēctum, -ī, n., *roof, house, covering, shelter.*
tēctus, p. p. of ***tegō.***
tegimentum, -ī, n., *covering, cover.*
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover, conceal, hide; thatch.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon, javelin, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., *rash, reckless, hasty.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, blindly, recklessly.*

temeritās, -ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion, recklessness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole, tongue* (of a wagon).

temperantia, -ae, f., *moderation, self-control, prudence.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refrain, restrain; control one's self;* with **quīn** and subjunctive, *refrain from; abstain from.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *weather, storm, tempest.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attempt, try.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season, period of time; opportunity, occasion; crisis.*

Tencterī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe living near the Rhine.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, *stretch out, stretch, pitch* (a tent).

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold, restrain, keep, occupy, possess;* **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember;* **sē tenēre,** *to remain.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, meager; feeble, delicate, poor.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly, weakly.*

ter, num. adv., *three times, thrice.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back, rear;* **tergum vertere,** *to flee;* **ā tergō,** *in the rear.*

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *three each, three at a time.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, ground, land.*

Terrasidius, -ī, m., *Titus Terrasidius,* a tribune under Caesar.

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj., *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, terrify, alarm.*

terribilis, -ē, adj., *terrible, dreadful.*

territō, -āre, terrify, frighten.

terror, -ōris, m., *fright, alarm, fear, panic.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, n., *will.*

testimōnium, -ī, n., *evidence, testimony, proof.*

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness.*

testūdō, -inis, f., *tortoise; column of soldiers protected by their shields' overlapping on the top and sides; a wooden shed* (for advancing against a wall).

Teutonēs, -um, or **Teutonī, -ōrum,** m., *the Teutons,* a German tribe.

Thēseus, -ī, m., fabled king of Athens.

Thessalia, -ae, f., *Thessaly,* a country of northern Greece.

Thrācia, -ae, f., *Thrace,* a country north of Greece.

Ti., abbr. for **Tiberius.**

tignum, -ī, n., *log, timber, a pile.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tigurini;* **Tigurīnī,** m., a Helvetian tribe.

timeō, timēre, timuī, *fear, be afraid; be anxious for* (with dat.); pres part., **timentēs, -ium,** m. and f. plur., as noun, *the timid, the fearful.*

timidē, adv., *timidly, fearfully.*

timidus, -a, -um, adj., *afraid, timid, cowardly.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread, alarm.*

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus, *wet, moisten, dye.*

Titūrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

toga, -ae, f., *toga*, a Roman outer garment.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hold out, endure; support, bear.*

tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, *raise, lift up, take away, destroy, weigh* (**ancoram**); *break off* (**conloquium**).

Tolōsa, -ae, f., a city of the Province, now Toulouse.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., the people of Tolosa.

tormentum, -ī, n., *engine for hurling missiles; rack, torture.*

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, *burn, scorch.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem, indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, -a, -um, irr. adj., gen. **tōtīus;** dat. **tōtī**; *the whole of, all, entire;* often has force of an adv., *entirely.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

trāctus, p. p. of ***trahō.***

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, surrender; intrust; pass on, hand down.*

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across, lead over, bring across, transfer, win over, transport.*

trāgula, -ae, f., *javelin, dart, spear.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag along, draw in.*

trāiectus, p. p. of ***trāiciō.***

trāiectus, -ūs, m., *passage, voyage, crossing.*

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw across; pierce, thrust through, transfix.*

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swim across.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., *calm, stillness, quiet.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *over, across, on the other side of, beyond.*

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, adj., *across the Alps, Transalpine.*

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, *climb across, climb over, board* (a ship).

trānseō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itus,** *go across, cross over, cross, pass by, pass through;* of time, *elapse.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry across, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *pierce through, transfix.*

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus, *step across, step over, go cross.*

trānsitus, -ūs, m., *crossing, passage.*

trānslātus, p. p. of ***trānsferō.***

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry across, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., *across the Rhine;* as noun, m. plur., *the people living across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī, n., *crossbeam, rib, thwart, rowing bench* (of a ship).

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *crosswise, transverse.*

Trebius, -ī, *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer of Caesar.

Trebōnius, -ī, m., *Gaius Trebonius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *three hundred.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tremble, tremble with fear, tremble at.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, n., a Gallic tribe near the Rhine.

Tribocēs, -um, or **Tribocī, -ōrum,** m., a German tribe.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune, military tribune.*

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, confer; yield, grant; attribute.*

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax, tribute.*

trīduum, -ī, n., *three days time.*

triennium, -ī, n., *a period of three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *three each, threefold, three at a time, three.*

tripartītus, -a, -um, adj., *divided into three;* **tripartītō,** abl., *in three divisions.*

triplex, -icis, adj., *triple, threefold.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, mournful.*

trīstitia, -ae, f., *sadness, sorrow.*

truncus, -i, m., *trunk* (tree).

tū, tuī, (plur., **vōs, vestrum**), pers. pro., *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, *protect, guard, defend;* **tūtus,** frequently as adj., *protected, guarded.*

tulī, perf. of **ferō.**

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

tum, adv., *then, at that time;* **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *uproar, tumult, noise, confusion, outbreak.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*

tunc, adv., *at that time, then.*

turma, -ae, f., *troop* (of about thirty horsemen), *squadron.*

Turonī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe on the Liger (Loire).

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly* (in appearance), *unbecoming; base, disgraceful, dishonorable.*

turpitūdō, -inis, f., *disgrace, infamy, dishonor.*

turris, -e, f., *tower.*

tūtō, adv., *safely;* comp. **tūtius.**

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure, protected, guarded.*

U

ubi, adv., *where;* conj., *when, as;* **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.

ubīque, adv., *everywhere, anywhere.*

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, *punish, take vengeance on, avenge.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any;* as pron., *anyone.*

ulterior, -ius, adj., *more distant, farther, beyond.*

ultimus, -a, -um [superl. from ***ultrā***], adj., *last, farthest, most remote;* as noun, **ultimī, -ōrum,** m. plur., *the last, those in the rear.*

ultrā, adv., also prep. with acc., *beyond, on the farther side.*

ultrō, adv., *beyond, to the farther side; besides, voluntarily, freely;* **ultrō citrōque,** *to and fro, back and forth.*

ultus, p.p. of ***ulcīscor.***

umbra, -ae, f., *shadow, shade.*

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder* (of a human being).

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*

ūnā [***ūnus***], adv., *along with, together with, at the same time with.*

unde, adv., *from which place, whence.*

ūndecim, indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēvīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *nineteen.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

unguentum, -ī, n., *ointment, salve.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *all together, entire, all.*

ūnus, -a, -um (gen. **ūnīus**; dat. **ūnī**), irr. adj., *one, only one, alone, sole.*

urbānus, -a, -um, adj., *of the city* (Rome).

urbs, urbis, f., *city, town,* meaning especially the city of Rome.

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, *press hard, push, crowd.*

ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstus, *burn.*

Usipetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

ūsque, adv., *all the way, as far as, even; until;* **ūsque ad,** *all the way to, even to.*

ūsus, p. p. of **ūtor.**

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, employment, practice, experience, necessity, need;* **ūsus est,** *there is need* (with abl.); **ex ūsū essē** or **ūsuī esse,** *to be of use, of service, of advantage;* **ūsū venīre,** *to happen, come to pass.*

ut (**utī**), (1) adv., *how? as, just as;* (2) conj., with indic., *as, when;* with subjunctive, *that, in order that, so that;* with words of fearing, *that not;* **ut prīmum,** *as soon as.*

uter, -tra, -trum, adj. and pro., *which* (of two)? *whichever one* (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. and pro., *both, each, either;* plur., **utrīque,** *both parties.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful, helpful, profitable.*

ūtilitās, -ātis, f., *benefit, advantage.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, *use, make use of, employ, enjoy, possess.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides, on each side, from each side.*

utrum, adv., *whether;* also see **uter.**

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

V, Roman numeral *five.*

Vacalus, -ī, m., *the river Waal,* a branch of the Rhine.

vacātiō, -ōnis, f., *exemption, freedom.*

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be empty, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of.*

vadum, -ī, n., *ford, shoal.*

vāgīna, -ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *roam, wander about, rove.*

valeō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be influential, be powerful;* **plūs valēre,** *to be more powerful;* **plūrimum valēre,** *to be very powerful.*

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman nomen.

valētūdō, -inis, f., *health, state of health, ill health.*

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

vallēs, -is, f., *valley, vale.*

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, palisade.*

Vangionēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *diverse, various.*

vās, vāsis, n., *vessel* (household), *kettle.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *devastate, lay waste, ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, waste, desolate; vast, wild.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., *divination, foretelling.*

-ve, conj., enclitic, *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis, n., *tribute, revenue.*

vectīgālis, -e, adj., *tributary.*

vehementer, adv., *violently, powerfully.*

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, *bear, carry;* pass., *be borne, sail, ride* (a horse).

vel, conj., *or;* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or;* adv., *even.*

Velānius, -ī, m., *Quintus Velanius,* one of Caesar's officers.

Veliocassēs, -ium, m. plur., a Belgian tribe.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Senones.

vellus, velleris, n., *fleece.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick, fleet.*

vēlum, -ī, n., *veil, curtain, sail.*

velut, adv., *just as, even as.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., *hunt, chase, hunting;* plur., *hunting expeditions.*

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *offer for sale, sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison.*

veneror, -ārī, -ātus, *worship, revere, honor.*

Venetī, -ōrum, m., a powerful tribe on the northwest coast of Gaul.

Venetia, -ae, f., the country of the *Veneti.*

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *relating to the Veneti, of the Veneti.*

venia, -ae, f., *pardon, favor, forgiveness.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come, go;* **in spem venīre,** *to cherish the hope.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *come often, visit.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe of the Alps.

Verbigenus, -ī, m., name of a Helvetian canton.

verbum, -ī, n., *word;* **verba facere,** *to speak;* **verba dare,** *to outwit, deceive.*

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., a chief of the Arverni, leader of the Gauls in the revolt for independence.

vereor, -ērī, -itus, *fear, be afraid, dread;* **veritus,** p. p. with force of pres. p., *fearing.*

vergō, -ere, *slope, incline.*

vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret,* title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.

veritus, p. p. of ***vereor.***

vērō, adv., *truly, in truth, certainly.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *turn, turn about, change;* in pass., *engage in.*

versus, p. p. of ***vertō.***

versus, prep. with acc., *toward, in the direction of;* adv., *toward.*

versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*

Verticō, -ōnis, m., a Nervian, a friend of the Romans.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn;* **tergum vertere,** *to turn and flee.*

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a Helvetian noble.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real;* **rē vēra,** *really, in truth;* **vērum, -ī,** n., as noun, *the truth.*

verūtum, -ī, n., *spear, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Sequani; now Besançon.

vesper, -erī (no plur.), m., *evening;* **sub vesperum,** *toward evening.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *your, yours,* referring to more than one person.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *step, footstep, footprint, track, trace;* **in vēstīgiō,** *on the spot, immediately.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing, robe, garment.*

vestītus, -ūs, m., *clothing, attire.*

veterānus, -a, -um, adj., *veteran, old.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid.*

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, former.*

vetustus, -a, -um, *old, ancient.*

vēxillum, -ī, n., *flag, banner.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *annoy, harass, ravage.*

via, -ae, f., *road, route, way, march.*

viātor, -ōris, m., *traveler, wayfarer.*

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., *twenty each, twenty at a time, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *twentieth.*

vicis (gen.), f. (defec.), *turn, change;* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, -ae, f., *sacrifice, offering.*

victor, -ōris, m., *victor, conqueror;* used as an adj., *victorious.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

victus, p. p. of ***vincō.***

victus, -ūs, m., *living, life, means of living.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, observe, perceive, see to* (take care); pass., *be seen, seem, appear, seem best.*

Vienna, -ae, f., a leading town of the Allobroges, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch,* one of the four divisions of the night; *guard.*

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *watch, be on guard.*

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

villa, -ae, f., *country house, villa.*

vīmen, -inis, n., *twig* (suitable for weaving).

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus, *bind, tie, fetter.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, overpower, defeat.*

vīnctus, p. p. of ***vinciō.***

vinculum, -ī, n., *chain;* plur., *chains, prison;* **ex vinculīs,** *in* (*from*) *chains.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim; maintain;* **in lībertātem vindicāre,** *to restore to freedom* (*to maintain for*); *inflict punishment.*

vīneā, -ae, f., *vine arbor; shed* (for protection of soldiers while making an assault on a town).

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *injure, abuse; lay waste.*

vir, virī, m., *man, husband.*

vīrēs, see **vīs.**

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden, girl, virgin.*

Viridomārus, -ī, m., a Haeduan noble and leader.

Viridovīx, -īcis, m., a leader of the Venelli.

virītim, adv., *man by man.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe.

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manliness, worth, courage, valor;* plur., *noble qualities, virtues.*

vīs, vīs, f., *might, power, force, violence, attack;* plur., **vīres, vīrium,** *strength, powers;* **vī contendere,** *to employ force.*

vīsus, p. p. of ***videō.***

vīta, -ae, f., *life, mode of living.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid; shun, escape.*

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victūrus, intr., *live, be alive.*

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *living, alive.*

vix, adv., *hardly, barely, scarcely.*

Vocātēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, call to, summon, invite, call by name.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Province.

Volcae, -ārum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Province.

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intr., *fly.*

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish, will.*

volucris, -is, f., *flying creature, bird.*

voluntās, -ātis, f., *wish, will, desire; good will.*

voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure, enjoyment.*

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus,* a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus,* a centurion under Caesar.

vōs, see **tū.**

Vosegus, -ī, m., the Vosges mountains between the Rhine and the Moselle.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice; speech, utterance;* plur., *words.*

vulgō, adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere.*

vulgus, -ī, n., *crowd, multitude; the common people;* with **mīlitum,** *the common soldiers.*

vulnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ***vulnerō.***

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound.*

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, feature, face, expression.*

INDEX

Ablative
absolute, 21–22, 410, 791, 880
translation of, 446
accompaniment, 866
accordance, 724, 886
agent, 867
attendant circumstance, 887
cause — translation of, 881
characteristic, 883
description, 100, 271, 883
quality, 883
comparison, 879
degree of difference, 884
locative, 689
manner, 872
material, 871
means or instrument, 39, 466, 600, 877
means — translation of, 600
place from which, 870
place in which, 868
price, 885
separation, 873, 874
source or origin, 875
special verbs, 491, 888
specification or respect, 106, 191, 882
time, 32, 571, 878
with prepositions, 876
Accusative
two accusatives, 843, 844
with compounds, 839, 840
direct object, 838
extent in degree, 841
extent in time and space, 228, 842
place to which, 719, 845
subject of infinitive, 846
ad, idiomatic use, 296, 321
Adjectives
and adverb, 895
agreement of, 891
irregular, 174
partitive use, 893
predicate use, 894
as substantive, 892
Adjective clauses, 949
Adverbial clauses, 950
Antequam, mode with, 935
Appositive
defined, 833
appositional gen., 654, 857

Causal clauses with
cum, 930
quod, 929
relative, 931
Complement
infinitive, 222
subjective, 833
Concession
clauses of, 945–947
Conditions
contrary to fact, 944
ideal, 943
of fact, 942
classified, 943
kinds, 941
nature of, 940
with *si*, *nisi*, etc., 939
simple, 942
unreal, 944
Cum
in causal clauses, 197
in concessive clauses, 947
customary action, 559
in temporal clauses, 936
with indicative, 148, 672
with subjunctive, 181–183, 339, 440

Dates, 889–890
Dative
apparent agent, 130, 853
expressions of nearness, 428

indirect object, 754, 847
with certain adjectives, 427, 855
with compounds, 453, 849
with gerundive, 528
intransitive verbs, 828
possessor, 385, 852
purpose, 45, 290, 854
reference, 528, 618, 850, 851
separation, 851
service, 854
with special verbs, 660
Deponent verbs, 170–171
abl. with *utor*, etc., 172
Direct discourse defined, 779, 963
Dum in temporal clauses
meaning *while*, 760

Genitive (general rule), 856
with adjectives, 864
appositional, 654, 857
of description, 730, 861
of gerund and gerundive with *causa*, 690
of material, 858
with verbs of memory, 865
objective, 577, 666, 860, 864
partitive, 57 (see gen. of the whole)
possession, 859
with *potior*, 171
predicate use, 862
quality, 730, 861
subjective, 860
of the whole, 583, 863
Gerunds
purpose, 484
uses, 161–162, 980
Gerundive
construction, 163, 984
with *curo*, *do*, etc., 982
of deponents, 984
for gerund, 983
with *mei*, *tui*, etc., 984
as participle, 982
as predicate adjective, 982
of purpose, 136, 164, 472
uses, 981

Hendiadys, 990

Imperative mode
present tense, 785, 958
indirect form, 970
Impersonal verbs
intransitives in the passive, 333
passive of intransitive verbs, 333
Implied command in subjunctive, 748
Indefinite pronouns, 904
Indicative mode
use of, 907
tenses of, 908–913
Indirect discourse
commands, 748, 970
defined, 964
in Latin, 971
subordinate clauses, 118, 260, 974
tenses of subjunctive, 90
translation of the subjunctive, 416, 422, 973
Indirect questions, 89–90, 277, 969, 975
Indirect statement, 51, 154–156, 327
subordinate clauses, 460, 636, 974
translation of, 973
Infinitive
as appositive, 247
historical, 962
in indirect statement, 540
as object, 961
as subject, 589, 960
as substantive clause, 957
future, 63
as complement, 222
as object, 215, 961
substitute for fut. pas., 742
uses, 959
Invitus, use, 235
Ipse, 901

Locative, 869

Nē, with verbs of fearing, 766

Nominative Case
subject, 834, 960
subject of his. inf., 836
subjective complement, 835
Noun Clauses, 951–952

Parenthetical
clauses in indirect discourse, 974
Participles
as adjectives, 976
equivalent to clauses, 254
nature of deponents, 978
perfect passive, 977
as adjective, 502, 976
of deponents, 534, 978
tenses, 977
uses of, 254, 979
Partitive
genitive, 57, 583, 863
ex, 565, 702
Partitive use of adjectives, 893
Periphrastic conjugation
active, 988
passive, 434, 630, 989
Personal pronoun
agreement, 899
omitted, 900
reflexive, 901
Postquam
mode with, 933
Prefixes
con, 403, 508
dis, 263
ex, 508
per, 508
re, red, 308
trans, 241, 378
Priusquam
mode with, 515
Pronouns
agreement of, 899
ambiguity of reflexives, 901
indefinite, 904
interrogative, 903
reflexive, 901
relative, 902

Purpose
clauses, 923
genitive of gerund, 980
gerundive, 983
subjunctive, 678, 923
with supine, 986
Quod
causal — mode with, 478, 929
substantive clauses, 956
Reflexive pronoun, 901
Relative clauses
causal, 931
of purpose, 926
of result, 927
Result: see —
subjunctive in
substantive clause
Sequence of tenses
exceptions, 922
after historical present, 922, note
table of, 922
Subjunctive
by attraction, 112
in causal clauses, 197
in commands, 748
in *cum* clauses, 937, 938
in indirect questions, 89–90, 277, 372
jussive, 606
nature of, 1
with *nōn dubitō*, 68
in noun clauses, 74, 79–80, 366, 736
with *priusquam*, 515
purpose clauses, 5, 13, 923, 925, 926
in result, 14, 612, 927
tenses: present, 3; past progressive, 11; perfect, 78
translating, 2
after verbs of urging and commanding, 203
uses, 914–915
Subordinate clauses
classified, 948
indirect statements, 460, 636

Substantive
clauses as appositive, 736
clauses of implied command, 203, 624, 642, 952
clauses with indirect statement, 957
clauses with *nē*, 766
clauses with *quīn*, 955
clauses with *quod*, 929, 930, 931, 960
clauses of purpose, 397, 642
clauses of result, 209, 648, 955
clauses implying a wish, 953
Suffixes
-āris, 521
-ārius, 345, 521
-āx, 708
-bilis, 497
-ilis, 497
-ium, 359
-ōx, 708
-tās, 546
-tia, 546
-tor and *-sor*, 772
-tūdō, 546
Superlative
translation of, 897
with *quam*, 124
Supine
in *-ū*, 553, 987
in *-um*, 248, 553, 986
Temporal clauses
with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 935
with *cum*, 937
with *dum*, *donec*, etc., 934
nature of, 932
with *postquam*, etc., 302, 933
Tenses in indirect questions, 90
Tenses
of indicative, 908–913
of infinitive, 152–156
participle, 977
sequence of, 922
of the subjunctive, 916–920
Verbs
agreement, 905
impersonal, 906
used impersonally, 906
vocative case, 837